NCVET
कौशल गुणवत्ता प्रगति

Skill India
कौशल भारत-कुशल भारत

सत्यमेव जयते
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
MINISTRY OF SKILL DEVELOPMENT
& ENTREPRENEURSHIP

N·S·D·C
RE IMAGINE FUTURE

FFSC
FURNITURE
& FITTINGS
SKILL COUNCIL
कुशल • सक्षम • आत्मनिर्भर

Participant Handbook

Sector
Interiors, Furniture and Fixtures

Sub-Sector
Furniture Business Development, Installation & After Sales

Occupation
Furniture Installation & After Sales

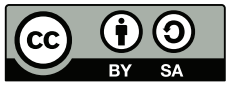
Reference ID: **FFS/Q2201, Version: 3.0, NSQF Level: 4**

Assistant Carpenter

This book is prepared by
Furniture & Fittings Skill Council (FFSC)
Address: 407-408, 4th Floor, DLF City Court, Sikanderpur
Gurgaon 122002, Haryana, India
Email: info@ffsc.in
Website: www.ffsc.in
Phone: +91 124 4513900

All Rights Reserved
First Edition, August 2023

Under Creative Commons License: CC-BY-SA
Copyright © 2024
Attribution-Share Alike: CC BY-SA



This license lets others remix, tweak, and build upon the work even for commercial purposes, as long as they credit you and license their new creations under identical terms. This license is often compared to “copyleft” free and open-source software licenses. All new works based on thes will carry the same license, so any derivatives will also allow commercial use. This is the license used by Wikipedia and is recommended for materials that would benefit from incorporating content from Wikipedia and similarly licensed projects.

Disclaimer:

The information contained herein has been obtained from sources reliable to Furniture & Fittings Skill Council (FFSC). Furniture & Fittings Skill Council (FFSC) disclaims all warranties to the accuracy, completeness or adequacy of such information. Furniture & Fittings Skill Council (FFSC) shall have no liability for errors, omissions, or inadequacies, in the information contained herein, or for interpretations thereof. Every effort has been made to trace the owners of the copyrighted material included in the book. The publishers would be thankful for any omissions in the book being brought to their notice; which will be acknowledged as applicable in future editions of the same. No entity in Furniture & Fittings Skill Council (FFSC) shall be responsible for any loss whatsoever, sustained by any person who relies on this material. The material in this publication is copyrighted. No parts of this publication may be reproduced, stored or distributed in any form or by any means either on paper or electronic media, unless authorized by the Furniture & Fittings Skill Council (FFSC).

> Skilling is building a better India. If we have to move India towards development then Skill Development should be our mission.

Shri Narendra Modi
Prime Minister of India

Certificate

CURRICULUM COMPLIANCE TO
QUALIFICATION PACK – NATIONAL OCCUPATIONAL STANDARDS

is hereby issued by the

FURNITURE & FITTINGS SKILL COUNCIL

for

SKILLING CONTENT: PARTICIPANT HANDBOOK

Complying to National Occupational Standards of
Job Role/ Qualification Pack: 'Assistant Carpenter' QP No. 'FFS/Q2201 NSQF Level 4'

Date of Issuance: August 31th 2023
Valid up to: August 31th 2026

* Valid up to the next review date of the Qualification Pack

Authorized Signatory
(Furniture & Fittings Skill Council)

Acknowledgements

Furniture & Fittings Skill Council (FFSC) would like to express its gratitude to all the individuals and institutions who contributed in different ways towards the preparation of this "Participant Handbook". Without their contribution, it could not have been completed. Special thanks are extended to those who collaborated in the preparation of its different modules. Sincere appreciation is also extended to all who provided peer review for these modules.

The preparation of this manual would not have been possible without the Furniture & Fittings Skill Council (FFSC) Industry's support. Industry feedback has been extremely encouraging from inception to conclusion and it is with their input that we have tried to bridge the skill gaps existing today in the Industry.

This participant manual is dedicated to aspiring youth who desire to achieve special skills which will be a lifelong asset for their future endeavors.

About this book

This Participant Handbook is designed for providing skill training and/or upgrading the knowledge level of the Trainees to take up the job of an "Assistant Carpenter" in the Furniture and Fittings Sector.

This Participant Handbook is designed based on the Qualification Pack (QP) under the National Skill Qualification framework (NSQF) and it comprises of the following National Occupational Standards (NOS)/topics and additional topics.

1. FFS/N2206: Prepare the worksite for on-site operations
2. FFS/N2207: Assist in the fabrication of the products at the worksite
3. FFS/N2208: Assist in the assembly, finishing, and installation of the products at the worksite
4. FFS/N8201: Follow health, safety, and greening practices at the worksite
5. DGT/VSQ/N0102: Employability Skills (60 Hours)

Symbols Used

Key Learnings Outcomes

Unit Objective

Exercise

Tips

Notes

Activity

Summary

Table of Contents

S. No.	Modules and Units	Page No.
1.	**Overview of the Furniture and Allied Industries & Assistant Carpenter Role**	1
	Unit 1.1: Introduction to the Furniture Industry and Its Scope	3
	Unit 1.2: Allied Industries and Their Role in Furniture Manufacturin	9
	Unit 1.3: Interior Design and Furniture Integration	13
	Unit 1.4: Occupational Map of the Furniture Industry	21
	Unit 1.5: Role and Responsibilities of an Assistant Carpenter	27
	Unit 1.6: Career Growth and Work Expectations	36
	Unit 1.7: Regulatory, Trade, and Taxation Awareness	43
2.	**Organizational Structure, Communication, and Digital Literacy**	49
	Unit 2.1: Understanding Organizational Structure and Workplace Protocols	52
	Unit 2.2: Team Goals, Communication, and Coordination	58
	Unit 2.3: Conflict Resolution and Professional Behaviour at Workplace	64
	Unit 2.4: Basic Digital Literacy and Internet Usage	70
	Unit 2.5: Financial Transactions and Online Payments	74
	Unit 2.6: Using MS Office for Workplace Productivity	82
3.	**Raw Materials, Tools, Equipment, and Hardware Handling Techniques**	91
	Unit 3.1: Raw Materials and Timber Classification	93
	Unit 3.2: Introduction to Tools, Equipment, and Machines	101
	Unit 3.3: Safe Handling and Operation of Tools and Equipment	106
	Unit 3.4: Workbench Preparation and Tool Setup	110
	Unit 3.5: Maintenance and Organization of Tools and Workspace	122
	Unit 3.6: Common Hardware Fittings in Furniture Manufacturing	128
4.	**Understanding Drawings and Job Planning**	133
	Unit 4.1: Types and Components of Architectural and Product Drawings	136
	Unit 4.2: Measurement Principles and Calculation Techniques	143
	Unit 4.3: Component Breakdown and Bill of Materials (BOM) Preparation	152
	Unit 4.4: Jig Usage and Marking Techniques	155
	Unit 4.5: Job Card Preparation and Work Execution Planning	160
5.	**Site Recce, Materials, and Measurement Techniques**	167
	Unit 5.1: Tools and Equipment for Site Recce	169
	Unit 5.2: Understanding Agencies and Site Operations	178
	Unit 5.3: Site Recce Checklist and Safety Assessment	184
	Unit 5.4: Drawing Interpretation and Layout Marking	188
	Unit 5.5: Site Measurement and Documentation	196
6	**Joinery, Fabrication, and Assembly of Components**	201
	Unit 6.1: Product Fabrication and Material Planning	204
	Unit 6.2: Types of Joints and Their Applications	211
	Unit 6.3: Processes to Build Wood Joints	215
	Unit 6.4: Joinery Techniques and Joint Formation	220
	Unit 6.5: Surface Preparation and Finishing	226
	Unit 6.6: Product Assembly and Installation	232
	Unit 6.7: Quality Inspection and Defect Rectification	240
	Unit 6.8: Documentation and Reporting	244

Table of Contents

S. No.	Modules and Units	Page No.
7.	**Finishing and Installation of Products**	251
	Unit 7.1: Adhesives and Fastening Techniques	254
	Unit 7.2: Clamping and Surface Finishing Methods	261
	Unit 7.3: Cut-outs and Structural Preparations	263
	Unit 7.4: Installation of Product Components and Hardware	268
	Unit 7.5: Final Checks and Hygiene Practices	274
8.	**Health, Safety, and Greening Practices at the Worksite**	279
	Unit 8.1: Personal Hygiene, Dress Code, and Work Ethics	281
	Unit 8.2: Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) and First Aid Readiness	285
	Unit 8.3: Safety Protocols, Fire Evacuation, and Ergonomics	291
	Unit 8.4: Tool Handling, Inspection, and Housekeeping Practices	299
	Unit 8.5: Waste Management and Hazardous Material Handling	302
	Unit 8.6: Material, Energy, and Water Conservation Practices	304
9.	**Employability Skills (DGT/VSQ/N0102) (60 Hours)**	309
	Employability Skills is available at the following location: https://www.skillindiadigital.gov.in/content/list Scan the QR code below to access the ebook	
10.	**Annexure**	311

NCVET
कौशल गुणवत्ता प्रगति

Skill India
कौशल भारत-कुशल भारत

सत्यमेव जयते
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
MINISTRY OF SKILL DEVELOPMENT
& ENTREPRENEURSHIP

N·S·D·C
RE IMAGINE FUTURE

1. Overview of the Furniture and Allied Industries & Assistant Carpenter Role

FFSC
FURNITURE
& FITTINGS
SKILL COUNCIL
कुशल • सक्षम • आत्मनिर्भर

Unit 1.1: Introduction to the Furniture Industry and Its Scope
Unit 1.2: Allied Industries and Their Role in Furniture Manufacturing
Unit 1.3: Interior Design and Furniture Integration
Unit 1.4: Occupational Map of the Furniture Industry
Unit 1.5: Role and Responsibilities of an Assistant Carpenter
Unit 1.6: Career Growth and Work Expectations
Unit 1.7: Regulatory, Trade, and Taxation Awareness

Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this module, the participant will be able to:

1. Describe in detail the scope, size, and economic contribution of the furniture industry in India and abroad, explaining how the sector fits within the larger interior and construction industries.
2. Explain how furniture plays a vital role in enhancing functionality, improving ergonomics, and elevating aesthetic appeal within residential, commercial, and institutional interior spaces.
3. Identify major production trends in furniture design and manufacturing, such as modular furniture, sustainable materials, and smart storage, and explain how consumer preferences are shaping the future of the industry.
4. List the key enabling and support industries that directly contribute to furniture manufacturing, including adhesives, plywood, laminates, foams, screws, hinges, and finishing materials.
5. Describe the specific function of each allied industry in the value chain, such as how adhesives are used for panel bonding, or how laminate sheets are applied for surface finishing in modular furniture.
6. Explain the relationship between the core carpentry unit and the allied sectors by highlighting the interdependency in terms of material sourcing, production timelines, and installation efficiency.
7. Describe how furniture planning is integrated with interior design objectives, and explain the process of matching furniture styles with the overall spatial theme, user needs, and room functionality.
8. Identify the distinctions between loose furniture, modular systems, and built-in units, and describe the role of carpenters in executing these elements on-site or in workshops.
9. List and describe various job roles found across the furniture manufacturing and installation sector, including roles in design, fabrication, finishing, logistics, and customer support.
10. Explain how the occupational structure in the furniture industry allows vertical movement (from assistant to senior roles) and horizontal mobility (shifting between fabrication, finishing, or installation tasks), based on skills and experience.
11. Define the job title, scope of work, and functional responsibilities of an Assistant Carpenter, especially in workshop and on-site environments.
12. List the tools, basic equipment, soft skills, and behavioural traits expected from an Assistant Carpenter in day-to-day operations.
13. Describe what kinds of activities must be done under supervision, and which responsibilities require reporting or escalation to a supervisor or senior technician.
14. Explain workplace expectations such as timely attendance, precision in work, following instructions, maintaining cleanliness, and cooperating with team members and other trades at the worksite.
15. Describe how punctuality, coordination, and professional communication positively influence the working environment and productivity of a carpentry team.
16. Discuss how career growth can be achieved within the furniture industry by pursuing higher-level skill training, developing specialization, or gaining multi-domain exposure across fabrication, assembly, and finishing.
17. Identify relevant codes and standards related to building safety and design that influence the carpentry and interior installation process.
18. Describe the basic procedures and practices for procurement, inventory tracking, and material quality checks that a carpenter must be aware of while working on site or in a workshop.
19. Explain the relevance of trade regulations, such as material import/export restrictions, and how these affect timelines, costs, and material choices in carpentry projects.
20. Describe the essential components of taxation and billing applicable to a furniture job, such as understanding GST, itemized invoices, and labour charges.

Unit 1.1: Introduction to the Furniture Industry and Its Scope

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Describe the national and global scope of the furniture industry and its contribution to economy and employment.
2. Explain how furniture enhances utility, comfort, and design in various interior spaces like homes, offices, and hospitality areas.
3. Identify recent industry trends, including modular systems, ergonomic innovations, and material sustainability.

1.1.1 National and Global Scope of the Furniture Industry and Its Contribution to Economy and Employment

Furniture is an important part of our daily life. We use beds, tables, chairs, cupboards, and sofas in homes, offices, schools, shops, and many other places. The people and companies who make, sell, or install these items are part of the furniture industry. This industry is growing fast in India and around the world. It helps many people get jobs and also supports the country's economy by selling goods and earning money.

How the Furniture Industry Works Around the World

In many countries, furniture is made in big factories using machines. Countries like China, the USA, Germany, and Italy are leaders in making and selling furniture. These countries send furniture to other places by export. This includes wooden, metal, plastic, and soft furniture.

More people are buying modern, smart furniture for their homes and offices. Online shopping is also making it easy for people to buy furniture. Because of this, the global furniture market is growing quickly. Many companies are now using eco-friendly materials and new designs to meet customer needs.

Furniture Industry in India

India also has a big and fast-growing furniture market. Some furniture is made by big factories using machines. Other furniture is made by local carpenters and small businesses. India is known for wooden furniture made from teak, sheesham, mango, and other good quality wood.

Cities like Jaipur, Jodhpur, Saharanpur, and Bangalore are famous for furniture making. The government is helping small businesses and carpenters grow through programmes like Make in India. As more people build homes and offices, the need for furniture is increasing.

Why This Industry Is Important

1. The global furniture market is very big and growing every year

Across the world, people spend more than 600 billion US dollars on furniture. This number is increasing because more people are buying new homes and offices, and they all need good furniture.

2. India is one of the top furniture-making countries

India is ranked among the top 15 furniture producers in the world. This means many other countries also buy furniture made in India, which helps our country earn money and grow stronger.

3. Furniture is sold in many ways, not just in shops

Today, people buy furniture not only from shops and markets but also from online websites. This gives more chances for carpenters and companies to sell their products and reach more customers.

4. The industry provides many types of jobs for workers

Furniture work includes cutting wood, joining parts, polishing, packing, loading, delivery, and installation. This means that not only carpenters but also helpers, drivers, painters, and polishers can earn through this work.

5. It supports small businesses and big factories

From small village workshops to big city factories, everyone can be part of this industry. Local carpenters, who make custom furniture, and big brands, who make large quantities, both get a chance to grow.

6. Exports bring extra money into the country

When Indian furniture is sold to other countries, it helps India earn foreign currency. This is good for the country's economy and also helps make Indian furniture popular around the world.

Fig. 1.1.1: Importance of furniture industry

The furniture industry is not just about making chairs and tables. It is a growing and important part of the economy both in India and the world. It supports millions of workers and helps many families earn money. It helps small carpenters and big factories work and grow together. As more homes and offices are built, this industry will continue to grow and provide many work opportunities. Understanding its scope helps carpenters see how their work fits into a big and successful system.

1.1.2 Role of Furniture in Improving Utility, Comfort, and Design in Homes, Offices, and Hospitality Spaces

Furniture is not just something we use to sit or sleep. It plays a big role in how a space looks, feels, and works. Whether it is a home, an office, a hotel, or a restaurant, furniture helps people use the space better. It adds comfort to our daily life and also makes the place look neat and beautiful. Each type of space needs a different kind of furniture based on its use. A well-furnished place is more useful, more relaxing, and more pleasing to the eyes.

A. Furniture for Utility, Making Spaces More Useful

Furniture helps in using space in the best possible way. In homes, we use beds, tables, and cupboards to store, sit, eat, and sleep. In offices, desks and chairs help us work properly. In hotels or waiting areas, furniture helps people relax while they wait or enjoy services. Without furniture, empty rooms cannot be used for any purpose.

B. Furniture for Comfort, Helping People Feel Relaxed

Good furniture is made to support our body well and help us stay comfortable. A soft sofa, a strong chair, or a proper height table makes work and rest easier. In homes, people need comfort after a long day. In offices, workers need chairs that support their back and arms. In hotels and restaurants, guests should feel relaxed and enjoy the environment. Comfortable furniture makes people feel happy and stress-free.

C. Furniture for Design, Making Spaces Look Attractive

Furniture also improves how a place looks. A beautiful sofa, a modern table, or stylish chairs can make a room look smart and clean. In shops and restaurants, design is important to attract customers. In homes, furniture reflects the taste and personality of people. Matching furniture with wall colours, lights, and curtains helps in creating a stylish and well-planned space.

Ways Furniture Enhances Interiors

1. **In Homes**

   Furniture is used for daily living. It makes it easy to sleep, eat, store things, and relax. Beds, sofas, tables, and shelves make every room useful and tidy.

2. **In Offices**

   Chairs, desks, and storage units help people work for long hours with less body pain. Meeting tables and visitor chairs make the space ready for business use.

3. **In Hospitality Areas (Hotels, Restaurants, Lounges)**

   Soft seating, stylish dining sets, and lounge furniture create a good first impression and keep guests comfortable during their stay.

4. **In Public Spaces**

   Waiting chairs, benches, and counters are placed to help visitors sit and wait in comfort, like in hospitals, banks, or stations.

5. **In Learning Places**

   Desks, benches, and storage furniture help students sit properly and store books. It makes the classroom neat and easy to use.

Furniture is not just about filling space. It helps make places more useful, more comfortable, and more beautiful. In every type of place home, office, or hospitality good furniture improves how people live, work, or relax.

Fig. 1.1.2: Furniture enhances home interiors

It supports the body, helps manage space, and adds style to any room. As an assistant carpenter, understanding the purpose of furniture helps you plan and install the right type of furniture in the right way, making each space better for the people who use it.

1.1.3 Recent Trends in the Furniture Industry: Modular Designs, Ergonomic Comfort, and Sustainable Materials

The furniture industry is changing fast to meet the needs of modern life. People now want furniture that saves space, is easy to move, helps them stay comfortable, and also takes care of the environment. Because of this, new trends like modular furniture, ergonomic furniture, and sustainable materials are becoming popular. These ideas help people live better and also give more work to carpenters and furniture makers who understand these trends.

I. Modular Furniture: Flexible and Space-Saving

Modular furniture is made using parts that can be moved and joined in different ways. People can change the setup of their furniture easily depending on the size of the room or their needs. This type of furniture is perfect for small homes and offices where space is less but comfort is still needed. It is also easy to pack and move.

Fig. 1.1.3: Modular furniture

1. **Easy to Move and Adjust**

   Modular furniture is made of parts that can be taken apart and joined again. This makes it easy to move or shift pieces from one place to another without heavy lifting.

2. **Helps Use Small Spaces Well**

   In small houses or offices, modular furniture can be changed as per need. A single piece can serve more than one purpose like a bed that becomes a sofa.

3. **Reduces the Need to Buy More Furniture**

   Because modular furniture can be arranged in new ways, people do not have to buy new items every time they change rooms or needs.

4. **Useful in Modern Homes and Offices**

   Today, many flats, studios, and offices use modular furniture to save space and make rooms look neat and organised.

II. Ergonomic Furniture: Designed for Comfort and Health

Ergonomic furniture is made to support the body and reduce pain or tiredness. It is specially designed for people who sit or work for long hours, like in offices or home workspaces. It helps in keeping the back straight, reducing pressure on the neck, and improving posture.

Ergonomic Furniture: Designed for Comfort and Health	**Chairs and Tables That Can Be Adjusted** These products are made in such a way that their height, angle, and shape can be changed to suit the user's body size and comfort.
	Supports Body in a Natural Way Good ergonomic chairs support the lower back, neck, and arms, which helps people avoid body pain during long hours of sitting.
	Helps People Work Comfortably for Longer Time When furniture is comfortable, it becomes easier to focus on work without feeling tired or stiff.
	Useful in Workplaces, Schools, and Home Offices Offices, computer labs, and even study corners at home now use ergonomic chairs and desks to help users stay healthy.

Fig. 1.1.4: Features of ergonomic furniture

III. Sustainable Furniture: Better for the Environment

Sustainable furniture is made in a way that is safe for nature. It uses recycled materials, avoids harmful chemicals, and lasts longer. Today, many people want eco-friendly furniture that looks good and also helps protect the planet.

Fig. 1.1.5: Sustainable furniture

1. **Uses Recycled Wood and Metal**

   Furniture is now often made using waste wood, metal parts, or other materials that are reused. This reduces the use of new raw materials.

2. **Made with Fast-Growing Natural Materials**

   Materials like bamboo or cork grow quickly and are used in place of slow-growing trees, making them a better choice for nature.

3. **Avoids Harmful Chemicals and Paints**

   Many new furniture pieces are made using safe polish and paint that do not harm people or pollute the air inside the room.

4. **Lasts for a Long Time and Reduces Waste**

   Strong and durable furniture does not break easily. This means it does not need to be thrown away or replaced often, helping reduce garbage.

The furniture industry is moving in a smart and healthy direction. Modular furniture helps in saving space and allows easy movement. Ergonomic furniture supports the body and keeps people healthy at work or home. Sustainable furniture uses safe, natural, or recycled materials to protect the environment. As an assistant carpenter, knowing these trends will help you build modern furniture that people want and need in today's world.

Unit 1.2: Allied Industries and Their Role in Furniture Manufacturing

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. List key allied industries such as laminates, plywood, adhesives, foams, and describe their integration into carpentry workflows.
2. Explain how interdependencies with these sectors impact material sourcing, production planning, and final installation.

1.2.1 Important Allied Industries and Their Use in Carpentry Work

In furniture making, carpenters do not work alone. Many other industries support carpentry by making important materials. These are called allied industries. They make products like plywood, laminates, adhesives, and foam, which are used in almost every furniture project. Carpenters depend on these materials to build strong, neat, and comfortable furniture. Without these allied industries, good quality furniture cannot be made.

Role of Allied Industries in Furniture Making

These industries supply the materials that carpenters use to finish their work. A carpenter may cut wood and build the frame, but needs plywood for panels, laminates for surface finishing, adhesives to join parts, and foams for cushioning. Each of these industries plays a small but very important role in the full carpentry process.

Main Allied Industries in Furniture Manufacturing

1. **Plywood Industry**

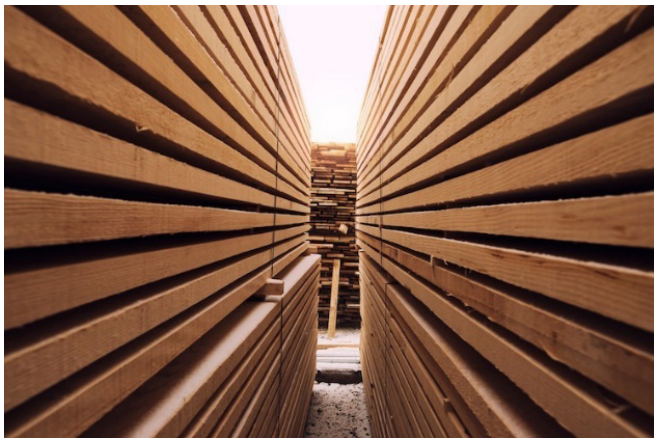


Fig. 1.2.1: Plywood industry

Plywood is made by sticking thin layers of wood together. It is strong, lightweight, and cheaper than solid wood. Carpenters use it to make cabinets, shelves, partitions, and other furniture items.

2. **Laminates Industry**

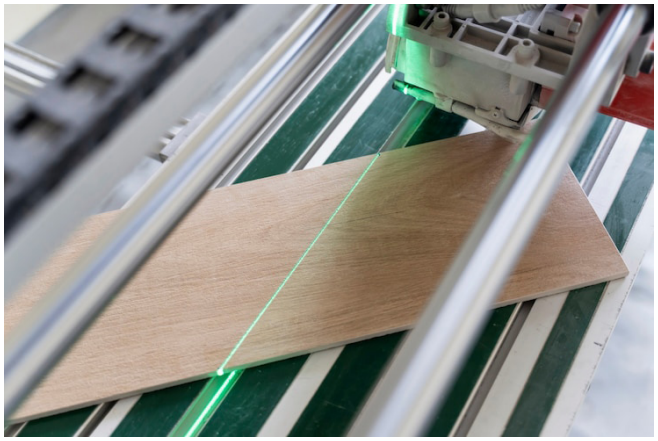


Fig. 1.2.2: Laminates

Laminates are thin sheets that are pasted on top of plywood or boards. They come in many colours and designs. Laminates make furniture look attractive and are also easy to clean.

3. **Adhesives and Glue Industry**

Fig. 1.2.3: Adhesives and glue

This industry makes different types of glue that help join wood, boards, laminates, and other parts. Adhesives make the joints strong and long-lasting without the need for nails or screws everywhere.

4. **Foam and Cushioning Industry**

Fig. 1.2.4: Foam and cushioning industry

Foam is used in chairs, sofas, beds, and backrests. It adds softness and comfort to furniture. This industry supplies different types of foams in various sizes and densities.

5. **Hardware and Fittings Industry**

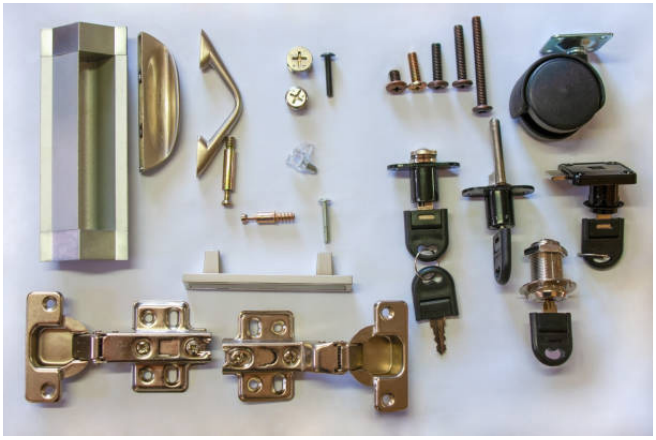


Fig. 1.2.5 Hardware and fitting industry

Handles, hinges, drawer channels, knobs, and locks come from this industry. These fittings help in the smooth use of furniture and make the final product complete.

How These Materials Fit into Carpentry Workflow

i. Plywood is cut and fitted into the furniture frame for making panels and sides.

ii. Laminates are pasted over plywood using glue to give a smooth and decorative surface.

iii. Adhesives are applied to join wooden parts and fix laminates tightly.

iv. Foam is added in seating furniture like chairs or sofas before covering with fabric.

v. Hardware items are fitted after finishing work to complete the furniture piece.

Carpenters need the support of many other industries to finish their work properly. Plywood, laminates, adhesives, foam, and hardware all come from allied industries and are used every day in furniture making. These materials help make furniture strong, stylish, and comfortable. As an assistant carpenter, knowing about these materials and how they are used will help you work better and faster with your team.

1.2.2 Impact of Allied Industry Interdependence on Material Sourcing, Work Planning, and Installation

In the furniture-making process, carpenters work closely with other industries. These industries supply important materials like plywood, laminates, glue, foam, and hardware. These are not just extra items they are necessary for completing any furniture. Because carpenters depend on these industries, they must plan their work based on how and when these materials arrive. This connection is called interdependence.

Why Interdependence Matters in Carpentry

If any material comes late or is not available, the carpenter's work may stop. If low-quality items are used, the final furniture may not last long. So, carpenters must keep track of how much material is needed, when it will arrive, and how it will be used. This helps in smooth production and quick delivery to the customer.

How Interdependence Affects the Work Process

1. Material Sourcing Depends on Timely Supply

Carpenters cannot begin work unless materials like plywood, glue, and foam are received on time. If the supplier delays, the project also gets delayed.

2. Planning Needs to Match Material Availability

If some materials are out of stock, carpenters may have to change their work plan. For example, if laminates are not available, finishing work cannot begin. This creates confusion and slows down progress.

3. Quality of Material Affects Final Work

If the glue is weak or the laminate is not sticking well, the furniture will not last long. So, carpenters must use materials from trusted industries to ensure strong and neat finishing.

4. Installation Is Delayed Without Hardware or Foam

The last step of furniture making is installation. If hinges, handles, or foam are missing, the product cannot be fixed at the customer's site. This may lead to customer complaints.

5. Good Coordination Helps Save Time and Cost

When carpenters and suppliers work together smoothly, there are fewer mistakes. The team can plan better, reduce waste, and finish work on time.

Fig. 1.2.6: Affects of interdependence in work processes

Furniture making is not just about cutting and fixing wood. It also depends on materials from other industries. Carpenters must work in close coordination with plywood makers, laminate suppliers, glue factories, and hardware sellers. These interdependencies affect the full process from planning and starting work to finishing and installing the final product. Knowing this helps carpenters avoid delays, use good materials, and deliver better results to customers.

Unit 1.3: Interior Design and Furniture Integration

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Explain the importance of aligning furniture design with interior layout, space utilization, and client preference.
2. Identify how styles such as minimalist, traditional, or industrial influence furniture form, colour, and finish.
3. Distinguish between built-in, modular, and loose furniture and their role in different settings.
4. Describe how carpenters collaborate with interior designers during project execution.

1.3.1 Why Furniture Design Must Match Room Layout, Space Use, and Client's Choice

Furniture plays a very big role in how a room looks, feels, and works. If furniture is placed without thinking about the size of the room or the way people will use the space, it can cause many problems. People may not be able to move freely, the room may look crowded, or the furniture may not match the client's liking. That is why it is very important to make sure that the furniture design matches the interior layout of the room, uses the space properly, and also fits with the client's needs and taste. This planning must be done before the furniture is made or installed.

Furniture Should Match the Room's Shape and Layout

Every room has a different size and shape. Some rooms are square, some are long, some have pillars, and some have windows or doors in the middle of the wall. Before planning furniture, it is important to study the full layout of the room. For example, if a cupboard is placed in front of a window, it will block sunlight. If a large table is placed too close to the door, it may stop people from entering or walking easily.

Fig. 1.3.1: Furniture matching the room layout

Carpenters must check where the electrical sockets are, how much wall space is available, and where the open areas are. This helps in deciding the best place for each piece of furniture. The goal is to make the room look clean, organised, and comfortable to use.

Using Available Space in a Smart and Useful Way

Good furniture design is not only about looks; it is also about using the room space wisely. A small room cannot handle heavy or wide furniture. It will make the room feel tight and hard to use. In small bedrooms, beds with storage drawers or wall-mounted shelves are good ideas. In large rooms, furniture must be balanced and should not look too small or scattered.

Fig. 1.3.2: Using available space efficiently

If the furniture is made as per the room size, it becomes easier to move, clean, and use the space. For example, having enough walking space between a bed and a cupboard makes daily life more comfortable. Good space planning also helps reduce accidents and makes cleaning easier.

Understanding and Following the Client's Preference

Every person has a different choice when it comes to furniture. Some like simple and modern designs. Others may prefer wooden, traditional, or heavy-style furniture. Some want light colours like white or beige, while others may ask for dark colours like brown or black.

A carpenter must always listen carefully to what the client says. If the furniture design does not match the client's lifestyle or taste, they may not be happy with the final work. For example, in a home with small children, the client may want round edges and extra storage. In an office, the client may ask for clean and formal-looking furniture. Following the client's choice is important to build trust and avoid rework.

Why Matching Design, Space, and Preference Is Important

1. **Ensures the Furniture Fits the Room Perfectly**

   When furniture is designed after checking the room layout, it fits in the given space without any problem. There is no need to cut or shift the item later.

2. **Makes the Room Comfortable to Live or Work In**

   People can move freely without bumping into things. The space feels open, clean, and safe.

3. **Satisfies the Client's Style and Needs**

   Clients feel happy when their ideas are followed. This builds a good relationship and brings more work in the future.

4. **Reduces the Chances of Mistakes or Waste**

   Planning in advance helps avoid errors like wrong size or wrong colour. This saves money, time, and effort.

5. **Improves the Look and Feel of the Whole Interior**

   When furniture is made with proper planning, it matches the walls, lights, curtains, and other things in the room. This makes the whole space look beautiful and balanced.

Matching furniture design with the room layout, space availability, and the client's choice is a very important part of carpentry. It helps make the furniture more useful, safe, and good-looking. Carpenters should always check the full room plan, take measurements, and talk to the client before making or fixing any item. This helps in doing the work right the first time and makes sure the final result is perfect for the user.

1.3.2 How Different Furniture Styles Affect Shape, Colour, and Finishing Work

Furniture is made in many different styles. Some people like simple and clean designs, while others like strong and heavy designs. A few people prefer rough and raw-looking furniture. These are called different furniture styles, such as minimalist, traditional, and industrial. Each style has its own look, shape, and finishing. These styles help show the mood or feeling of a room. It is important for carpenters to understand these styles because it helps them make furniture that matches the client's choice and room design.

Understanding the Look and Feel of Each Style

Every style changes how the furniture is made its shape, its colour, and the type of polish or coating used. Some styles use soft and light colours, while others use bold or dark shades. Some furniture pieces are smooth and shiny, while others may have a rough, unfinished look. Carpenters must learn these differences to make sure their work matches the design style expected by the customer.

Main Furniture Styles and Their Features

I. **Minimalist Style (Simple and Clean Look)**

Fig. 1.3.3: Minimalist style of furniture

This style uses very simple shapes without extra decorations. The focus is on clean lines and open space. Colours are usually soft like white, light grey, or beige. The surface finish is smooth and flat. Furniture in this style is useful but not heavy. It is used in modern homes and small apartments.

II. Traditional Style (Heavy and Decorative Look)

Fig. 1.3.4: Traditional style of furniture

Traditional furniture has carved designs, curved legs, and thick wooden parts. The colours are usually dark like brown, maroon, or deep gold. Finishing includes glossy polish, often with wood grains showing. It gives a royal or classic look and is used in large homes or old-style houses.

III. Industrial Style (Raw and Rough Look)

Fig. 1.3.5: Industrial Style of furniture

This style mixes wood and metal. It often uses black iron, raw wood, and exposed screws or joints. The colours are dull like black, grey, or faded brown. Finishing is matte, and sometimes it looks unfinished on purpose. This style is popular in cafes, offices, and loft spaces.

How Style Affects Furniture Work

1. **Form (Shape and Design)**

   Minimalist furniture has flat and straight lines. Traditional furniture has detailed and rounded shapes. Industrial furniture has a mix of square metal frames and natural wood planks.

2. **Colour Choice**

   Minimalist designs use white, grey, or soft colours. Traditional designs use dark shades of brown or red. Industrial designs use grey, black, or mixed natural colours.

3. **Surface Finish**

   Minimalist style uses a plain, smooth surface. Traditional style uses glossy polish or varnish. Industrial style often has matte or semi-rough surfaces with metal parts left visible.

4. **Material Use**

   Minimalist style uses MDF, plywood, and laminate. Traditional style uses solid wood. Industrial style uses wood plus iron or steel pipes.

Different furniture styles create different looks and feelings in a room. Minimalist style gives a clean and modern look, traditional style gives a rich and old-world feel, and industrial style gives a rough, strong look. Each style changes the shape, colour, and finish of the furniture. As an assistant carpenter, knowing these styles helps you understand what the client wants and how to build furniture that fits their space perfectly.

1.3.3 Types of Furniture: Built-in, Modular, and Loose and Where They Are Used

Furniture is made in different ways depending on where and how it will be used. Some furniture is fixed to the wall, some is made in parts that can be arranged, and some can be moved around easily. These are called built-in furniture, modular furniture, and loose furniture. Each type has a special use and is chosen based on the room size, design, and client need. Understanding the difference helps carpenters suggest the right furniture for homes, offices, or hotels.

What Built-in, Modular, and Loose Furniture Mean

These three types of furniture are not just different in look they also change how a room is used. Some types save space, while others are good for moving or changing the room setup. Carpenters must know the use, benefits, and fixing methods of each type.

Main Types of Furniture and Their Features

Built-in Furniture (Fixed in One Place)

Fig. 1.3.6: Built-in furniture

Built-in furniture is attached to the wall or floor. It cannot be moved easily. Examples include wall-fitted wardrobes, kitchen cabinets, or bathroom storage. It is made to fit perfectly in the given space and is strong and long-lasting.

Modular Furniture – Made in Small Parts

Fig. 1.3.7: Modular furniture

Modular furniture is made in parts or blocks that can be joined together. It can be changed or shifted without breaking. Examples include modular kitchen sets, office desks, or display units. It saves time and fits well in both small and large spaces.

Loose Furniture (Easy to Move and Replace)

Fig. 1.3.8: loose furniture

Loose furniture is not fixed. It can be moved or changed at any time. Examples include chairs, tables, sofas, and beds. It is used in most homes, hotels, and living rooms. It is good for changing the layout or look of a room.

Use of Each Type in Different Places

A. Built-in Furniture

Used in kitchens, wardrobes, storage rooms, and places where furniture must stay fixed for many years. It saves space and looks neat but cannot be shifted.

B. Modular Furniture

Used in modern homes, offices, and shops. It is easy to install and change. It helps in adjusting the furniture when space or needs change. It is useful for rented homes or growing families.

C. Loose Furniture

Common in living rooms, bedrooms, dining areas, and hotels. It gives a free and relaxed look. It is easy to replace or repair. It is also useful when people want to change room styles often.

Built-in, modular, and loose furniture have different features and uses. Built-in is fixed and strong, modular is flexible and space-saving, and loose is easy to move and replace. Each type is chosen based on how the space will be used. As an assistant carpenter, knowing these types helps you give the right suggestions to clients and make the best use of space, time, and material in every setting.

1.3.4 Working Together, How Carpenters and Interior Designers Coordinate on Projects

In many furniture and interior projects, carpenters do not work alone. They often work with interior designers who make the overall plan for the space. Interior designers decide how the room will look, where furniture will go, what colours and materials will be used, and how space should be used properly. Carpenters take these ideas and turn them into real furniture. That is why good teamwork between the carpenter and designer is very important during any project.

Why Collaboration Is Needed

An interior designer may have a vision for the whole room where each item should be placed, what material should be used, and what design style fits best. But these ideas cannot be brought to life without the skill of the carpenter. Carpenters use their hands and tools to build what the designer has imagined. Both must talk, understand each other, and solve any problems together to make the client happy.

Ways Carpenters and Designers Work Together

1. **Understanding the Design Plan**
   Before starting work, the carpenter studies the drawings and layout plans made by the designer. These plans show measurements, shapes, furniture styles, colours, and materials. Carpenters ask questions to understand the details clearly.

2. **Giving Feedback on Practical Work**
   Sometimes, the designer's idea may be difficult to make in real life. The carpenter can suggest changes in size, fitting method, or material to make the design easier and stronger. This helps avoid waste and saves time.

3. **Choosing Materials Together**
   Designers suggest the look, but carpenters know which material is good for strength and use. Both discuss and agree on plywood, laminate, hardware, and polish. This teamwork helps in choosing the best option for looks and quality.

4. **Taking Site Measurements Together**
   To avoid mistakes, carpenters and designers often visit the site together. They check space, height, wall level, sockets, and other details. This helps in planning better and avoids confusion later during fixing.

5. **Solving Problems During Installation**
   If there is a change in the site condition or the client wants a small change, the carpenter and designer discuss and fix it quickly. This keeps the work moving smoothly and avoids delays.

Fig. 1.3.9: Reasons carpenters and designers work together

Benefits of Good Collaboration

1. **Reduces Mistakes and Rework**

   When carpenters and designers work as a team, the chance of wrong sizes, mismatched colours, or poor finish is less.

2. **Saves Time and Cost**

   Proper planning between both helps finish work faster and avoids waste of material.

3. **Gives Better Quality and Look**

   The final furniture looks exactly as imagined by the designer and works well, as built by the carpenter.

4. **Keeps the Client Satisfied**

   When both the designer and carpenter listen to the client and work with care, the client is happy and may give more work in future.

A good project needs both smart planning and skilled hands. Interior designers plan the look and layout, while carpenters turn those plans into real furniture. By working together, asking questions, sharing ideas, and solving problems, they can complete the work faster, better, and with fewer errors. As an assistant carpenter, it is important to communicate well with the designer and follow the plan with care. This makes the final result successful for everyone involved.

Unit 1.4: Occupational Map of the Furniture Industry

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Describe job roles across functions like cutting, shaping, assembly, finishing, logistics, and after-sales installation.
2. Explain how a carpenter can grow vertically to supervisory roles or horizontally across fabrication, finishing, or installation.

1.4.1 Understanding Job Roles in the Furniture Industry – From Cutting to After-Sales Work

The furniture industry has many people working in different steps. Making furniture is not the work of just one person. It starts with cutting the material and ends with installation at the client's place. In between, there are many tasks like shaping, joining, polishing, packing, transporting, and fixing. Each task is done by a person with a special skill. All these workers and helpers form a team that completes the project. Knowing each job role helps an assistant carpenter understand where they fit and how to grow in the industry.

Steps in the Furniture-Making Process and Who Does What

Furniture is made step-by-step. Each function is handled by a trained worker. These roles may be done by different persons in big factories or by the same team in small workshops. Below is a clear explanation of the major functions and the people involved.

Main Job Roles in the Furniture Industry

1. **Cutting Staff (Material Cutters or Panel Cutters)**

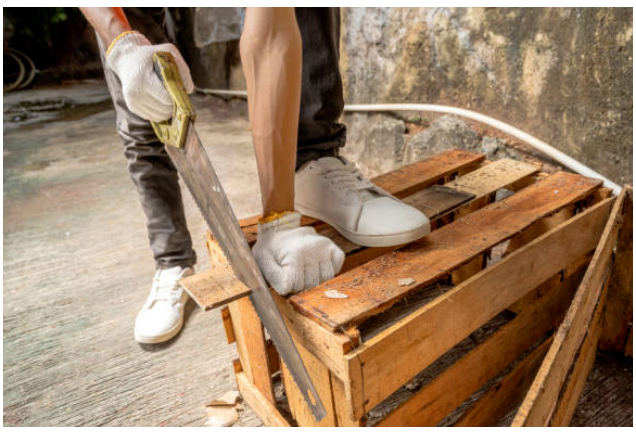


Fig. 1.4.1: Cutting staff

These workers handle cutting of plywood, MDF, or other boards. They use machines like panel saws, circular saws, or table saws to cut sheets as per the required size. Their job is to make precise cuts without wasting material.

2. **Shaping Workers (Edge Shapers or CNC Operators)**

Fig. 1.4.2: Shaping workers

This role includes giving the right shape to the cut material. It may include edge rounding, groove making, or pattern cutting using routers or CNC machines. Shaping workers must follow the drawing or template exactly.

3. **Assembly Workers (Furniture Assemblers or Fitters)**

Fig. 1.4.3: Assembly workers

These workers join the cut and shaped pieces to build the full furniture item. They use tools like screwdrivers, drills, clamps, and adhesives. They must follow correct angles, sizes, and fixing techniques to make sure the item is strong and balanced.

4. **Finishing Staff (Polishers or Surface Finishers)**

Fig. 1.4.4: Finishing staff

After furniture is built, it is cleaned, sanded, and polished. This team applies laminate, paint, polish, or veneer as per the design. Their job is to make the surface smooth, shiny, and attractive. They must also make sure there are no marks, scratches, or uneven polish.

5. **Logistics Staff (Packers and Delivery Handlers)**

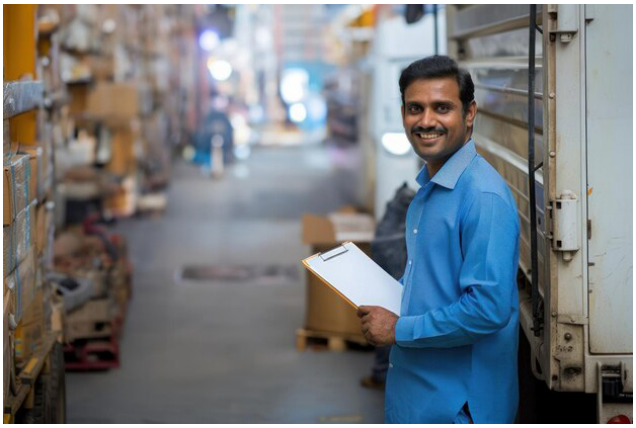


Fig. 1.4.5: Logistics staff

Once the furniture is ready, it is packed properly to prevent damage during transport. Logistics workers load the items, carry them to the site, and unload them safely. They also handle the movement of tools and materials between factory and site.

6. **After-Sales and Installation Workers (Installers or Site Technicians)**

Fig. 1.4.6: After-Sales and installation workers

These workers go to the customer's place to fix the furniture properly. They use layout markings and drawings to place the items in the right spot. They also solve small fitting issues and explain usage to the customer. Their job is to give a clean and neat final finish at the site.

Why Each Role Is Important

i. Cutting staff prepare the base materials with accurate sizes.

ii. Shaping staff make the design ready as per drawing.

iii. Assembly workers bring everything together to form a complete unit.

iv. Finishing workers give a beautiful look and protect the product.

v. Logistics workers ensure safe delivery without damage.

vi. Installation workers complete the final step and make the customer happy.

The furniture industry is like a chain where each worker has a special role. From cutting wood to final installation, every job needs care and skill. Understanding these job roles helps an assistant carpenter know the full picture of how furniture is made and delivered. It also helps them grow by learning other functions and becoming a more skilled and useful team member.

1.4.2 How a Carpenter Can Grow into Higher Roles or Learn Different Types of Work

A carpenter's career does not stop at basic cutting and fixing tasks. With time, learning, and hard work, a carpenter can move to better roles or learn different types of jobs in the same industry. This growth can happen in two ways. One is called vertical growth, where the carpenter gets a higher role with more responsibility like team leader or site supervisor. The other is called horizontal growth, where the carpenter learns new types of work such as finishing, fabrication, or installation. Both types of growth help the carpenter become more skilled, earn better, and build a stronger career.

Vertical Growth, Moving Up in Position and Responsibility

Vertical growth means moving to a higher job level. It brings more respect, more responsibility, and better income. As carpenters become more skilled, they start handling bigger tasks, guiding helpers, and managing full projects.

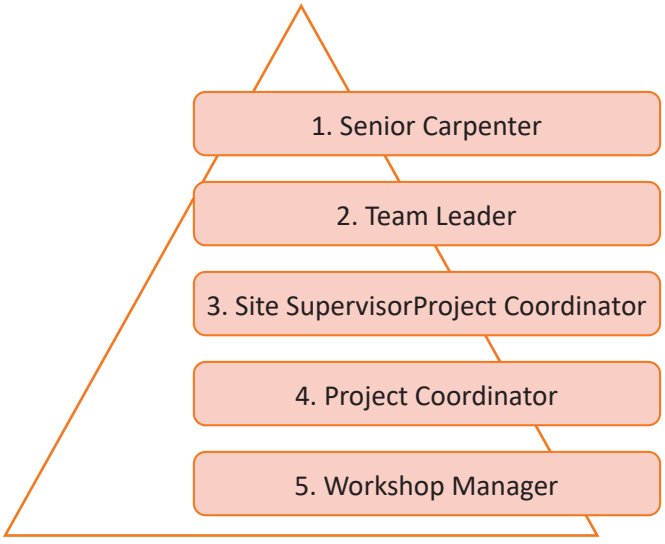


Fig. 1.4.7: Vertical growth, moving up in position and responsibility

1. **Senior Carpenter**

   A carpenter with good experience can take up difficult tasks, guide helpers, and make sure the job is done right. They become a role model for new workers.

2. **Team Leader**

   This role involves managing a group of carpenters or helpers, dividing the tasks, and making sure the work is finished properly and on time.

3. **Site Supervisor**

   A supervisor looks after the whole site. They check if measurements are correct, materials are used properly, and work is safe and clean.

4. **Project Coordinator**

   A carpenter who is good at speaking and planning can coordinate between the designer, client, and workers. They manage schedules and solve work problems.

5. **Workshop Manager**

   This person looks after the tools, workers, material stock, and deadlines in a workshop. They ensure smooth daily operations.

Horizontal Growth, Learning New Types of Work in the Same Level

Horizontal growth means the carpenter learns new types of jobs in the same industry. This makes them more flexible and ready for different kinds of projects.

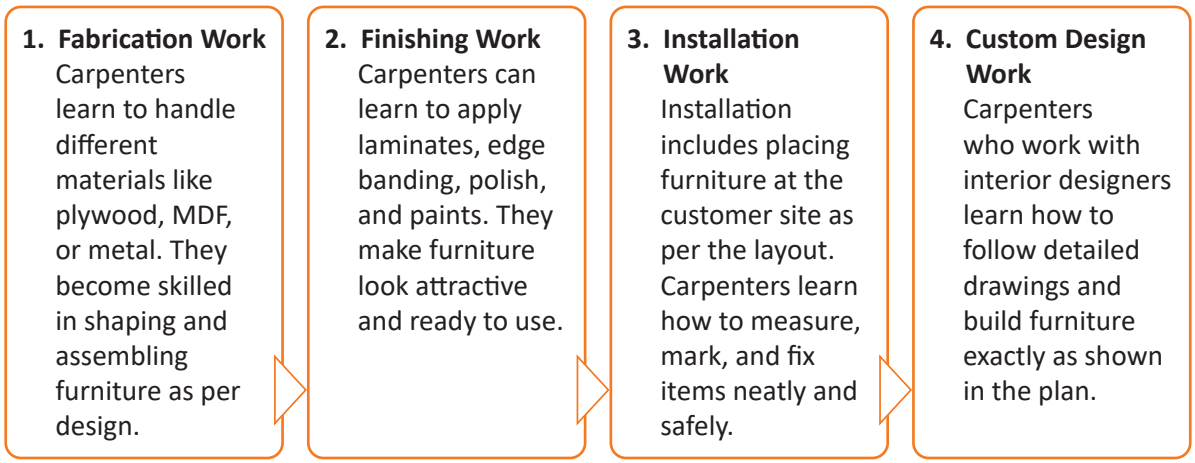


Fig. 1.4.8: Horizontal growth, learning new types of work in the same level

Benefits of Career Growth in Carpentry

1. **More Responsibility and Respect**

   Carpenters in higher roles are trusted with planning and decision-making. They guide others and are respected for their skills.

2. **Better Earnings and Steady Work**

   Skilled carpenters earn more and are called more often for work because of their wide knowledge.

3. **Higher Job Security and Demand**

   Carpenters who can handle multiple tasks are useful in any kind of project, making their job more secure.

4. **More Opportunities in New Projects**

   Large companies and projects look for carpenters with both experience and leadership. Career growth opens doors to such chances.

5. **Confidence and Skill to Solve Problems**

   With more knowledge, carpenters feel confident in handling work problems and making smart choices on-site.

6. **Pathway to Start Own Work or Business**

   Experienced carpenters can also start their own workshop or team, which allows them to earn more and become self-employed.

Growth in the carpentry field can happen in two ways moving up to bigger roles or learning new skills in different types of work. Both are important for personal development, better income, and job security. As an assistant carpenter, you should keep learning, be open to new tasks, and take responsibility. This will help you build a strong and successful career in the furniture industry.

Unit 1.5: Role and Responsibilities of an Assistant Carpenter

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Describe the typical day-to-day duties of an Assistant Carpenter in a workshop and on-site.
2. Identify essential tools, materials, and PPE used in entry-level carpentry tasks.
3. Recognize the importance of discipline, teamwork, and communication for effective task completion.
4. Understand what tasks must be supervised and which require escalation to a senior.

1.5.1 Daily Work of an Assistant Carpenter in Workshop and On-Site Projects

An Assistant Carpenter plays an important role in furniture making and installation. They help senior carpenters, follow instructions, and do many support tasks during the day. Their duties may change depending on whether they are working in a workshop or at a client site. In both places, they must stay alert, handle tools properly, and follow safety rules. Knowing their daily tasks helps them stay organised and complete work on time.

Duties in the Workshop

In the workshop, most of the work is about preparing furniture parts, organising materials, and supporting carpenters during cutting, shaping, or assembly. The assistant also helps in keeping the area clean and safe.

1. **Organising Tools and Materials**

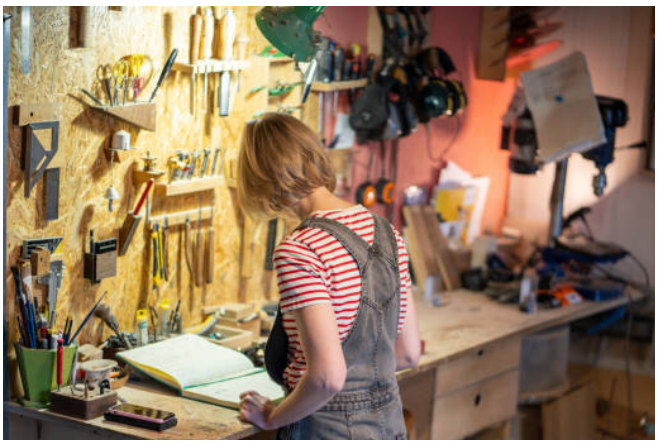


Fig. 1.5.1: Organising tools sytematically

The assistant checks if all tools are available and in good condition. They also bring plywood, hardware, glue, and fittings as needed by the main carpenter.

2. Marking and Measuring Boards

Fig. 1.5.2: Marking and measuring boards

Under guidance, the assistant uses measuring tapes, set squares, and pencils to mark plywood or boards before cutting.

3. Supporting During Cutting and Shaping

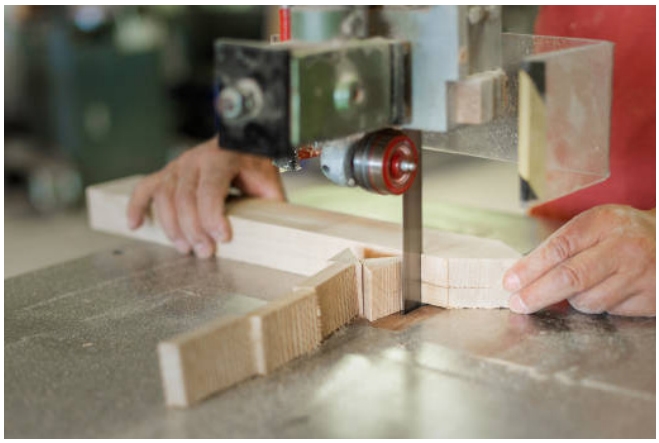


Fig. 1.5.3: Supporting during cutting and shaping

They help hold the material steady while the carpenter uses the machine. They also collect the cut pieces and arrange them properly.

4. Helping in Assembly Work

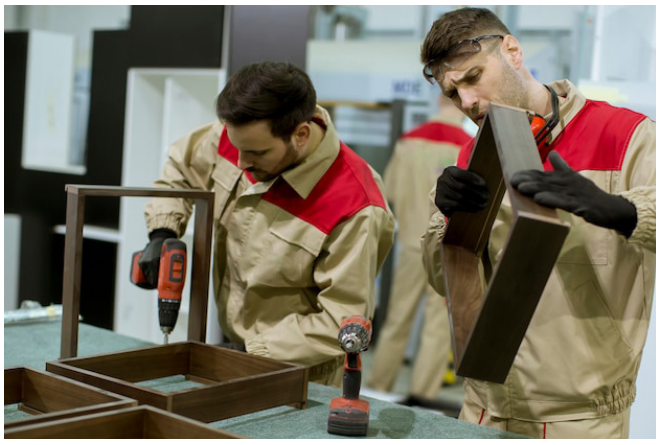


Fig. 1.5.4: Helping in assembly work

Assistants give screws, clamps, glue, and other items during joining. They may also help in drilling or applying adhesive when needed.

5. **Cleaning and Arranging the Work Area**

   After work, they clean the area, collect waste material, and put tools back in place. This helps in keeping the workspace safe and ready for the next job.

Duties at the Client Site

At the site, the Assistant Carpenter works on installation tasks, transporting materials, and final touch-ups. They work closely with the team to complete furniture fitting as per layout.

1. **Carrying Tools and Furniture Parts**

   They help move the packed furniture, tools, and fittings from the vehicle to the right floor or room.

2. **Unpacking and Arranging Items**

   They unpack furniture carefully and arrange parts as per the drawing or layout shared by the supervisor.

3. **Assisting During Installation**

   Assistants hold the furniture while the senior carpenter fixes it. They may also mark positions, hand over tools, or support in tightening screws and fittings.

4. **Fixing Small Parts**

   Under supervision, they may be allowed to install knobs, hinges, or handles on doors or drawers.

5. **Cleaning the Area After Work**

   After installation, they help in collecting waste, wiping surfaces, and clearing the site before handover.

Additional Duties (Workshop and Site Both)

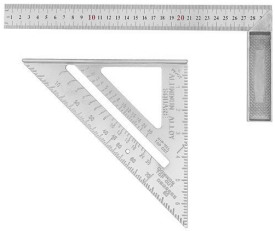
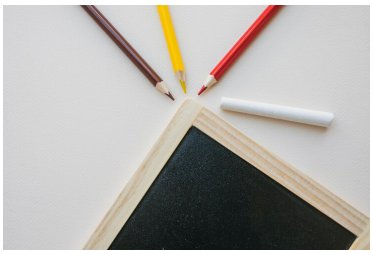
- Wearing safety gear like gloves, shoes, and helmets when needed. Listening to safety instructions and keeping tools in safe condition.
- Taking daily instructions, informing about missing items, and giving updates about completed tasks.
- Assisting in checking stock of glue, screws, laminates, etc., and informing when items are low.

The daily work of an Assistant Carpenter is full of small but important tasks. Whether they are in a workshop or on-site, they help in every step from preparing parts to final fixing. They must work with care, stay alert, and support the team. When they do their duties well, the whole project moves smoothly. This builds their skills and prepares them for bigger roles in the future.

1.5.2 Basic Tools, Materials, and Safety Gear Used by Assistant Carpenters

An Assistant Carpenter must know how to work with the basic tools, materials, and safety gear that are used in day-to-day carpentry work. These items are the foundation of all furniture-making and installation tasks. Without proper tools and materials, the work cannot be done smoothly. Also, using the right safety gear called PPE (Personal Protective Equipment) is very important to avoid accidents. Knowing how to identify and use these things is the first step for anyone starting a career in carpentry.

Essential Hand Tools Used in Carpentry

Sl. No	Name of Tool	Description	Image
1	**Measuring Tape**	A long metal strip that rolls into a small case. It is used to measure the size of plywood, boards, or spaces before cutting. Accurate measurement is very important for perfect fitting.	
2	**Steel Scale and Set Square**	These tools are used to draw straight lines and perfect right angles. They help the carpenter mark cutting lines correctly on wood or board.	
3	**Pencil and Chalk**	These are used to mark points, lines, or symbols on wooden surfaces. It helps in showing where to cut, drill, or fix parts.	
4	**Screwdriver Set**	A tool with different heads that is used to insert or remove screws. It is needed while fixing handles, locks, hinges, or channels.	
5	**Claw Hammer**	This hammer has two sides — one for hitting nails into wood, and the other for pulling them out. It is commonly used for fitting and adjusting wood pieces.	

6	**Hand Saw**	A simple saw used to cut small wooden pieces or trim edges. It is useful when machine cutting is not possible or for minor adjustments.	
7	**Chisel and Mallet**	Chisels help in making holes, grooves, or corners in wood. A mallet is a wooden hammer used to gently hit the chisel without damaging it.	
8	**Drilling Machine (Handheld)**	A small electric tool used to make round holes in wood or boards. These holes are used to insert screws or fix other hardware.	

Table 1.5.1: Hand tools commonly used in carpentry

Common Materials Used by Assistant Carpenters

1. **Plywood and MDF Boards**

   Flat wooden sheets made by joining layers. These are the main base for making furniture like cupboards, tables, or beds. They are strong, easy to cut, and available in many sizes.

2. **Wooden Planks or Blocks**

   Solid wooden pieces used for making frames, legs, or extra support in furniture. They give strength and shape to the furniture.

3. **Laminates and Edge Band Tape**

   Laminates are thin sheets pasted on furniture to give colour and shine. Edge band tapes are pasted on the edges of boards to cover rough sides and make them smooth.

4. **Glue or Adhesives**

   Sticky liquids used to join two surfaces like wood and laminate. Good quality glue makes strong joints without the need for screws everywhere.

5. **Screws, Nails, and Hinges**

   Screws and nails hold furniture parts together. Hinges are metal parts used to fix doors so they can open and close properly.

6. **Drawer Channels and Handles**

   Channels help drawers slide in and out smoothly. Handles are fixed on doors or drawers for easy pulling and good appearance.

Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) for Safety

Sl. No	Name of Tool	Description	Image
1	**Safety Gloves**	Worn on hands to protect from cuts, glue, and sharp edges. They help in carrying boards or using tools safely without injury.	
2	**Safety Shoes**	Strong shoes that protect the feet from falling tools or sharp items. They are very important when lifting heavy materials or working in busy areas.	
3	**Dust Mask**	Worn over the nose and mouth to stop sawdust or harmful air from entering the lungs. It is especially useful when cutting or sanding wood.	
4	**Safety Goggles**	Transparent glasses worn to protect the eyes from dust, wood chips, or flying bits while cutting or drilling.	
5	**Ear Plugs (If Using Machines)**	Small rubber or foam plugs used to reduce machine noise. They protect the ears when working with loud machines for a long time.	

Table 1.5.2: Various PPE equipments

For entry-level carpentry work, an Assistant Carpenter must learn how to use basic tools like tape measures, screwdrivers, chisels, and saws. They should also know how to handle common materials like plywood, glue, and fittings. Most importantly, they must always wear proper safety gear to avoid injury. Knowing and using these tools, materials, and PPE helps the carpenter do the job safely, correctly, and confidently. This is the base for learning advanced skills and becoming a trained furniture professional.

1.5.3 Why Discipline, Teamwork, and Communication Are Important in Carpentry Work

In carpentry work, many people have to work together to complete a task. A single furniture piece goes through many steps from cutting and shaping to polishing and installation. If one person is late, careless, or doesn't follow instructions, the work slows down or gets delayed. That is why every Assistant Carpenter must practice discipline, show team spirit, and maintain clear communication with others. These three qualities are not only important for finishing tasks on time, but also help in building trust and respect at the workplace.

What Discipline Means in Carpentry Work

Discipline means working with care, seriousness, and regular habits. It is the basic quality needed to become a trusted worker.

1. **Reaching the worksite or workshop on time every day**

   Coming late can delay the whole team's work. Being on time shows responsibility and sets a good example.

2. **Wearing proper work clothes and PPE without being told**

   Wearing gloves, shoes, and uniform daily keeps the worker safe and makes them look professional.

3. **Following every instruction carefully**

   Whether it's measuring, cutting, or fixing, the Assistant Carpenter must listen and do the task step-by-step without rushing.

4. **Avoiding bad behaviour or arguments during work**

   Shouting or fighting creates problems for the whole team. Staying calm and focused keeps the work going smoothly.

Why Teamwork Is Important in Furniture Projects

Teamwork means supporting others and working together like one unit. It is needed every day because furniture tasks are not done alone.

1. **Helping during lifting, holding, or moving large furniture parts**
   Some items are heavy and need two or more people. Helping others shows team spirit and prevents injuries.

2. **Sharing tools and space with others on the team**
   Giving and taking tools respectfully avoids fights and builds a friendly environment at the worksite.

3. **Understanding each person's role in the task**
   When each worker knows their own duty and respects others' roles, the full job runs without confusion.

4. **Supporting the team during finishing and deadlines**
   When the project is about to finish, everyone must work together to meet the deadline and keep the client happy.

Fig. 1.5.5: Importance of teamwork in furniture projects

How Good Communication Helps at Work

Communication means sharing messages clearly and listening to others. It helps everyone stay on the same page and avoid mistakes.

1. **Listening carefully to the senior carpenter or supervisor:** Important instructions like size, design, or layout should be listened to with full attention.
2. **Asking questions if the task is not clear:** Instead of guessing, the Assistant Carpenter should ask questions. This saves time and avoids errors.
3. **Sharing progress and problems honestly:** Telling the team what is finished and where there is a problem helps them plan the next step better.
4. **Speaking politely and clearly with team members:** Respectful communication builds trust and allows people to work together peacefully.

Discipline, teamwork, and communication are the most important habits for any Assistant Carpenter. These are not tools, but they help finish every job in the right way. A disciplined worker comes on time, follows rules, and respects others. A good team member helps and supports others during work. Clear communication helps avoid mistakes and keeps everyone informed. When these three habits are followed, the work becomes faster, smoother, and more successful both for the team and the customer.

1.5.4 Knowing When to Ask for Supervision or Escalate to a Senior

An Assistant Carpenter is still learning many things on the job. They help in daily work, follow instructions, and support the senior carpenter. However, not all tasks should be done alone. Some tasks need to be checked or watched by a supervisor. Some problems or mistakes must be escalated that means informed to a senior instead of trying to fix them alone. Knowing which task needs supervision and which problem should be escalated helps the assistant work safely and avoid damage or accidents.

Tasks That Must Be Done Under Supervision

These are the jobs that should only be done when a senior carpenter or supervisor is nearby. These tasks may need special tools, exact measurement, or careful fixing. If done without proper guidance, it can lead to errors or injuries.

Fig. 1.5.6: Task done under supervision

1. **Cutting with Power Tools or Machines**

   Using machines like circular saws, jigsaws, or routers should be done only in the presence of a trained senior. Wrong use can cause injury or wrong cutting.

2. **Joining Heavy or Large Furniture Parts**

   Big panels or table tops must be handled under guidance so they are not damaged or fixed incorrectly.

3. **Drilling and Fixing Hardware**

   Fixing locks, channels, and hinges requires correct marking and placement. These must be checked by a senior before final fixing.

4. **Applying Polish or Laminate Sheets**

   Finishing work like polish or laminate needs correct steps. A senior should guide to ensure the surface is clean and air-bubble free.

5. **Site Marking Based on Drawing**

   Assistant carpenters can help in marking but the final measurements and layout must be confirmed by the senior carpenter.

Tasks or Situations That Must Be Escalated to a Senior

Sometimes problems happen that are not part of daily routine. These situations must be informed to the senior carpenter or supervisor quickly. Trying to fix them alone can make the problem worse.

Tasks or Situations That Must Be Escalated to a Senior	**Wrong Material Delivered or Missing Items** If plywood, screws, glue, or fittings are not as per the list or are damaged, it should be informed immediately. Delays can affect work progress.
	Layout or Measurement Does Not Match Site If the drawing does not match the space on site, the assistant must stop and ask the senior to recheck and decide the next step.
	Damage or Mistake During Work If a board breaks, a hole is made in the wrong place, or something gets scratched, the assistant must report it honestly without hiding it.
	Tool Malfunction or Electrical Issues If any tool is sparking, making noise, or not working properly, the assistant should switch it off and call the senior never try to open or repair it.
	Unsafe Work Conditions or Accidents If something dangerous is seen (like loose wiring, water near a socket, or a minor accident), the assistant should inform immediately so safety steps can be taken.

Fig. 1.5.7: Tasks or situations to be forwarded to a senior

Every Assistant Carpenter must understand that they are still in a learning stage. Some tasks need supervision for safety and quality. Some problems must be escalated to seniors without delay. Doing everything alone without checking can cause mistakes, injuries, or damage to the furniture. Knowing when to ask for help or guidance shows responsibility, honesty, and professionalism and it helps the work get done correctly and safely.

Unit 1.6: Career Growth and Work Expectations

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Explain the working conditions, schedules, and workplace behaviour expected from a carpentry professional.
2. Discuss how continuous learning, certification, and task ownership can open opportunities for role enhancement.
3. Identify ways to improve work output through time management, safety adherence, and quality focus.

1.6.1 What a Carpenter Should Know About Work Conditions, Timing, and Behaviour

Carpentry is a physical job that needs energy, patience, and discipline. Carpenters often work in busy areas like workshops or building sites. They handle machines, tools, glue, and wood every day. They must also follow proper timing and show good behaviour at the workplace. This includes coming on time, helping others, working safely, and listening to instructions. Learning about the work environment, schedule, and behaviour helps a carpenter do well in every project and earn respect from the team.

A. Working Conditions in Carpentry

1. Standing, Bending, and Moving All Day

Carpenters do not sit in one place. They often work while standing or bending for many hours. They may have to lift boards, walk around, or climb small ladders to reach areas.

2. Handling Dust, Noise and Tools

Fig. 1.6.1: Handling dust, noise and tools

Carpentry creates dust and noise due to cutting, drilling, and polishing. Carpenters must work with saws, glue, nails, and drills, even in noisy or dusty surroundings.

3. **Working Indoors and Outdoors**

   Some carpentry work is done inside workshops with machines, while other work is done at sites like homes, shops, or offices. The assistant must be ready to work in different weather conditions and places.

4. **Physical and Team-Based Work**

Fig. 1.6.2: Physical and team-based work

Most furniture tasks need physical strength and teamwork. Assistants must carry items, hold parts, or support the team during heavy tasks or installations.

B. Expected Work Schedules

1. **Early Start to the Day**

Fig. 1.6.3: Early start to the day

Carpentry work usually begins early in the morning around 9:00 a.m. or even earlier. Coming late can delay the full team's work.

2. **8 to 10 Hours of Work Every Day**

   A normal workday includes 8–10 hours with breaks for lunch and rest. Sometimes the work may continue for longer if the project is urgent.

3. **Extra Time During Deadlines**

   If a project must be finished quickly, the assistant may have to stay after normal hours or come on weekends to help the team complete the task.

4. **Daily Updates to Senior or Supervisor**

Fig. 1.6.4: Daily updates to senior or supervisors

The assistant must tell the senior carpenter or site in-charge about what was done during the day and what is pending. This helps in better planning for the next day.

C. Workplace Behaviour Expected from Carpenters

1. **Reporting on Time with Proper Uniform**

   A professional carpenter comes to work on time, wears the right clothes, and brings their tools. This shows they are serious and ready to work.

2. **Listening and Following Instructions Carefully**

   Carpenters must pay close attention to what the senior or supervisor says. Even small mistakes in measurement or fixing can lead to rework.

3. **Keeping Tools and Work Area Clean**

   At the end of the day, tools must be put back in place, and dust or scrap must be cleaned. This avoids accidents and keeps the area safe and neat.

4. **Talking Respectfully to Everyone**

   Whether talking to team members, supervisors, or clients, carpenters should use polite words and avoid shouting, arguing, or using bad language.

5. **Following All Safety Practices**

   Wearing gloves, helmets, and shoes, and using tools properly is very important. A careless worker can harm themselves or others.

A good carpenter not only works with tools and wood but also shows responsibility, respect, and discipline at the workplace. They must understand where they are working, follow time schedules, and behave properly with everyone. These habits help them grow in the industry and earn more trust from seniors, clients, and teammates. Learning to work in the right way is just as important as learning to use tools.

1.6.2 How Learning, Certification, and Taking Responsibility Help Carpenters Grow

In the furniture industry, skill and knowledge are both important. A carpenter who keeps learning new things and takes full responsibility for his work is more likely to grow faster in his career. This means learning modern techniques, using advanced tools, and understanding new materials. Getting certified by a training body also proves that the carpenter is trained and serious about his work. Also, when a carpenter does his tasks without waiting for others to remind him, it shows leadership. All these things help him move to higher roles or even take on special jobs.

I. Why Continuous Learning is Important

1. Helps Learn New Tools and Methods

In the furniture and carpentry industry, new tools, machines, and technologies are being introduced every year. These include advanced cutting tools, modern joinery equipment, battery-operated machines, and measuring devices like digital levels or laser distance measurers. By staying updated and learning about these tools regularly, a carpenter can use them more efficiently and safely. Proper knowledge of the latest tools not only improves the speed of work but also enhances the accuracy and quality of the finished product. This learning helps reduce errors, improve customer satisfaction, and make the carpenter more valuable at the workplace. For example, using a modern edge-banding machine correctly can save hours of manual finishing and give a neater look to the product.

2 Keeps the Carpenter Ready for Any Type of Project

Furniture requirements today are diverse and constantly changing based on customer preferences, trends, and space utilization needs. Some projects may involve traditional solid wood work, while others may demand modern materials like MDF, PVC boards, aluminum sections, or modular fittings. A carpenter who updates their knowledge regularly is better prepared to work with these materials and adjust to different working conditions. By learning about modern adhesives, lightweight boards, water-resistant laminates, or eco-friendly finishes, the carpenter becomes capable of delivering furniture for homes, offices, schools, or retail shops. This versatility increases job opportunities and builds a good reputation in the market.

3. Improves Confidence and Problem-Solving

Learning continuously allows the carpenter to understand the complete process of furniture making in depth from planning and material selection to final finishing. This deep understanding helps in identifying issues early, finding suitable solutions, and making quick decisions on-site. For example, if there is an alignment problem while installing a modular cabinet, a skilled and confident carpenter can resolve it using accurate measurement techniques and tools instead of waiting for help. This problem-solving ability comes from knowledge and practice. With increased confidence, the carpenter can take up more challenging tasks, lead a small team, or even communicate better with clients and supervisors.

II. Why Certification Helps in Getting Better Jobs

1. Shows That You Are a Trained and Skilled Worker

A certificate from a training center, ITI, or skill development program proves that you have been trained by professionals. This gives employers more trust in your ability.

Fig. 1.6.5: Certifications

2. Makes You Eligible for Better Job Roles

Many companies ask for certified workers, especially for site-level or team roles. With certification, you may get selected for bigger tasks or roles.

3. Adds Value to Your Resume and Experience

Having certificates makes your profile look professional. It shows that you are serious about your work and want to improve.

III. How Task Ownership Helps in Career Growth

1. Shows That You Are Responsible and Trustworthy

When a carpenter completes his tasks on time, without waiting for reminders, it shows that he is serious about his work. This makes the supervisor trust him more.

2. Improves Work Quality and Team Respect

Fig. 1.6.6: Improves work quality and team respect

A person who owns his job checks his work, avoids mistakes, and helps the team. This improves the overall quality of work and earns respect from others.

3. **Leads to Bigger Roles in the Future**

   When a carpenter keeps taking responsibility for his work, he is soon given more tasks like helping juniors, explaining site plans, or leading a small team.

A carpenter who wants to grow in his career must keep learning, earn certificates, and take ownership of his tasks. These habits not only make him better at his job but also open the door to better job roles, higher pay, and more respect. Companies look for workers who are skilled, responsible, and ready to learn. So, regular learning and honest work can turn an assistant into a leader.

1.6.3 How Carpenters Can Improve Their Work Through Time, Safety, and Quality

Carpentry work needs to be done carefully and correctly. But it also has to be finished on time. To do this, a carpenter must plan his time well, follow all safety steps, and always focus on doing good-quality work. These three things time, safety, and quality help a carpenter work faster, avoid mistakes, and give better results. When these are followed regularly, the carpenter becomes more efficient, the work site stays safe, and customers feel happy with the final product.

Managing Time to Get More Work Done

Start the Day with a Clear Work Plan
Before beginning the job, the carpenter should look at the task list and decide what needs to be done first. A planned day helps save time and keeps the work going smoothly.

Avoid Wasting Time on Non-Work Activities
Talking too much, taking long breaks, or waiting for instructions without asking wastes time. Staying focused during work hours helps complete more tasks in less time.

Finish Small Tasks Without Delay
Quick and simple jobs, like cleaning tools or preparing materials, should not be left for later. Doing them on time keeps the work area ready and saves effort.

Fig. 1.6.7: How to manage time to get more work done

Following Safety Rules to Avoid Delays and Injuries

1. **Wear All Safety Gear While Working**

   Gloves, helmets, shoes, and goggles help protect the carpenter from accidents. A safe worker stays healthy and does not miss work due to injuries.

2. **Use Tools the Right Way**

   Tools like saws and drills must be handled carefully. Misuse can damage the tool or hurt the person. Using tools properly saves time and avoids repairs.

3. **Keep the Work Area Clean and Safe**

   A clean space is easy to move around in. It also prevents falls, cuts, or accidents. A safe site allows faster and smoother work for everyone.

Focusing on Quality to Reduce Rework

Measure and Mark Materials Properly
Taking the right measurements and marking clearly before cutting helps avoid mistakes. This ensures parts fit well, and no material is wasted.

Check Your Work Before Moving to the Next Step
After finishing a task, the carpenter should look again to see if it is done correctly. Fixing a small mistake early is better than redoing a big part later.

Use the Right Materials and Follow Instructions
Good-quality materials and correct steps help make strong and neat furniture. Rushing or skipping steps to save time often leads to poor results and complaints.

Fig. 1.6.8: Ways to focus on quality to reduce rework

A carpenter can become faster, safer, and better at work by managing time well, using safety gear properly, and always aiming for high quality. These habits help reduce delays, avoid rework, and complete the job on time. When a carpenter follows these ways, he becomes more dependable and is more likely to get bigger jobs and grow in his role.

Unit 1.7: Regulatory, Trade, and Taxation Awareness

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Identify key regulations such as fire safety, load-bearing rules, and finishing material norms that affect carpentry work.
2. Explain basic concepts of taxation (GST), import/export restrictions, and invoice generation in a small furniture project.

1.7.1 Important Rules That Carpenters Must Follow at Work

In carpentry work, it is not enough to just make strong and neat furniture. There are also some important rules that every carpenter must follow. These rules are made for safety, strength, and quality. They help keep the worksite safe, the furniture strong, and the materials safe to use. Some of these important rules include fire safety, load-bearing guidelines, and rules about the materials used for painting, polishing, or covering surfaces. Following these rules also helps avoid fines or problems with clients.

Why Fire Safety Rules Are Important?

a. **Keep Materials Away from Fire Risk**

Many materials like plywood, laminates, polish, and glue catch fire easily. So, carpenters must store and use them far away from flames or sparks.

Fig. 1.7.1: Fire safety rules

b. **Use Fire-Resistant Materials When Needed**

In hotels, offices, or kitchens, some furniture must be made with fire-resistant boards or coatings. These slow down fire and give people time to escape.

c. **Have Fire Safety Tools at the Site**

Fire extinguishers or sand buckets should be kept near work areas. All workers should know how to use them in case of emergency.

What Load-Bearing Rules Mean for Furniture

a. **Make Strong Furniture for Heavy Use**

Furniture like beds, tables, or wall-mounted cabinets must be designed to carry weight safely. Using strong joints and quality boards helps avoid breaking.

Fig. 1.7.2: Following load-bearing rules

b. **Follow Thickness and Support Guidelines**

If a drawing says to use 18mm plywood with extra supports, follow it exactly. Cutting corners to save time or money may lead to accidents later.

c. **Test Before Final Installation**

For some heavy-use furniture, it's good to test the strength by applying weight before final fixing. This ensures the item will not fail during use.

Norms for Using Paint, Polish, and Covering Materials

Fig. 1.7.3: Standard practices for paints

1. **Use Non-Toxic Finishing Materials Indoors**

Polishes or paints used inside homes or offices should not have strong or harmful smells. They should meet safety standards for indoor air.

2. **Avoid Using Banned Chemicals**

Some older polishes or thinners contain dangerous chemicals. Carpenters should only use products allowed by the government or the client.

3. **Apply Finishes in Well-Ventilated Areas**

   When using strong-smelling materials, make sure windows are open or exhaust fans are used. This keeps workers safe from harmful fumes.

Carpenters must know and follow basic rules related to fire safety, strength of furniture, and finishing materials. These rules protect the people using the furniture, the workers on-site, and the reputation of the company. By understanding and following these rules, a carpenter works more safely, gains trust, and avoids problems during or after project completion.

1.7.2 Basic Understanding of Tax, Rules for Buying/Selling, and Invoices in Carpentry Projects

When working on a furniture project, especially for clients or small businesses, it is important to understand a few basic business concepts. These include GST (Goods and Services Tax), rules for importing or exporting furniture materials, and how to prepare a proper bill or invoice. Even if a carpenter is not handling these directly, knowing them helps in working better with suppliers, contractors, and customers. It also helps the carpenter grow professionally in the future.

What is GST and Why It Matters?

In the carpentry and furniture business, understanding GST, Goods and Services Tax is very important. GST is a type of tax that is applied when goods or services are sold or purchased. For carpenters and workshops, this means that whenever materials like wood, plywood, laminates, hardware, or even a finished piece of furniture are sold, GST may be added to the bill. This tax is collected by the government and is a part of the total price that the customer pays.

The amount of GST charged depends on the kind of product being sold. For example, if a carpenter buys raw wood from a supplier, the GST rate on that wood might be low. On the other hand, if the product is a finished item like a polished table or a complete modular wardrobe, the GST rate is likely to be higher. Even luxury fittings or branded hardware attract a higher percentage of tax. That is why it becomes important for people in this trade to know the correct GST rates for different types of items. It helps in calculating the right selling price and ensures that there are no errors in billing or pricing.

For carpenters or furniture makers who do small local work, GST may not always be necessary. However, for those who run workshops, sell products to shops or companies, or handle large-scale projects, GST registration becomes important. Once registered, the business receives a GST number from the government. This number is printed on the invoice whenever a sale is made with tax included. Having this number allows the carpenter or business owner to collect GST legally and also to get tax credit on the materials they purchase. This is especially helpful when buying expensive items like boards, machines, or hardware in bulk.

Rules for Import and Export in Furniture Work

1. **Import Rules Apply to Foreign Materials**

   Sometimes special furniture parts, hinges, or materials come from outside India. These may have extra import duties or rules. Carpenters should check this if working with such items.

2. **Export Rules for Selling Furniture Abroad**

   If the finished furniture is being sent outside India, there are certain packaging and billing rules. These must be followed to avoid delays or rejection at borders.

3. **Some Items May Be Restricted or Need Special Permission**

   Wood from certain trees or items with chemicals may not be allowed for export or import. It's important to ask the supplier or client about legal permissions in such cases.

Why Invoices Are Important in a Furniture Project

1. **Invoice is a Bill That Lists Work Done and Amount Charged**
   It shows what items were made or installed, how much they cost, and what taxes (like GST) were added. It helps in clear communication between client and carpenter.

2. **Invoice Helps Keep Payment Records**
   A copy of the invoice is useful if there is a delay in payment or any confusion about rates. It is also helpful during audits or when applying for loans or government support.

3. **Details Included in a Good Invoice**
   A good invoice should include:

   - Name and contact of the carpenter or workshop
   - List of work done or materials used
   - Quantity and rate
   - GST if applicable
   - Total amount and payment method

Fig. 1.7.4: Importance of invoices in furniture project

A basic understanding of tax (GST), rules about importing and exporting materials, and invoice creation is helpful even for a carpenter. These skills help in doing honest, clear, and professional work. It builds trust with clients, avoids mistakes, and supports the carpenter's future growth if they decide to run their own workshop or business.

Scan the QR codes or click on the link to watch the related videos

https://youtu.be/VxX43jRXE-_A?si=CQPjXcs-U8tRHmIMW

national and global scope of the furniture

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4tuNDgFmVhU

importance of aligning furniture design with interior layout

https://youtu.be/q7_YLxQt8RI?si=3Fninx-SQu_H6bTx

day-to-day duties of an Assistant Carpenter in a workshop

NCVET
कौशल गुणवत्ता प्रगति

Skill India
कौशल भारत-कुशल भारत

सत्यमेव जयते
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
MINISTRY OF SKILL DEVELOPMENT
& ENTREPRENEURSHIP

N·S·D·C
RE IMAGINE FUTURE

2. Organizational Structure, Communication, and Digital Literacy

FFSC
FURNITURE
& FITTINGS
SKILL COUNCIL
कुशल • सक्षम • आत्मनिर्भर

Unit 2.1: Understanding Organizational Structure and Workplace Protocols
Unit 2.2: Team Goals, Communication, and Coordination
Unit 2.3: Conflict Resolution and Professional Behavior at Workplace
Unit 2.4: Basic Digital Literacy and Internet Usage
Unit 2.5: Financial Transactions and Online Payments
Unit 2.6: Using MS Office for Workplace Productivity

Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this module, the participant will be able to:

1. Explain the different types of organizational structures that exist in carpentry, furniture manufacturing, and installation companies, such as flat structures in small workshops or hierarchical structures in larger firms.
2. Describe the internal workflows, roles, and responsibilities within an organization, including who reports to whom, how communication flows, and what types of tasks require escalation to supervisors.
3. Understand and follow established workplace protocols including dress code, attendance, cleanliness, safety behaviour, and adherence to organizational values and policies.
4. Demonstrate awareness of professional behaviour in the workplace, including maintaining hygiene, respecting team norms, and contributing to a cooperative work environment.
5. Explain the process through which team goals are set and communicated in a carpentry or installation setting, including understanding how individual roles contribute to collective performance.
6. Identify strategies for effective team coordination, including delegation of tasks, cross-functional support, and the importance of timely updates during joint work assignments.
7. Communicate clearly and effectively with team members, seniors, or clients using verbal and non-verbal methods that reflect respect, accuracy, and intent.
8. Recognize common workplace conflicts such as miscommunication, disagreements, or role overlap and describe non-confrontational ways to address and resolve such issues constructively.
9. Use appropriate tone, language, and posture when speaking to co-workers and supervisors, particularly in diverse or mixed-experience teams.
10. Demonstrate active listening, patience, and empathy as essential components of positive workplace behaviour, particularly when taking instructions or giving feedback.
11. Identify basic computer hardware components (e.g., CPU, monitor, mouse, keyboard) and explain how each part contributes to the functioning of a digital workstation.
12. Operate a computer for basic job tasks, including opening folders, viewing files, launching applications, and safely shutting down systems.
13. Use the internet to perform work-related searches, such as watching training videos, viewing furniture designs, or checking installation methods.
14. Access and use email platforms to send/receive communication, follow professional email etiquette, and retrieve instructions shared in digital form.
15. Describe the various methods used for financial transactions in carpentry and furniture-related work such as cash payments, UPI, bank transfers, and POS terminals.
16. Explain how to safely and securely perform online transactions using mobile payment applications or websites, including verifying details before submitting payment.
17. Execute a basic online payment step-by-step for a hypothetical work-related purchase (e.g., material bill or tool rental) while ensuring privacy and accuracy.
18. Describe the purpose and core functionalities of common MS Office applications such as Word for documentation, Excel for tabulation, and PowerPoint for visual presentation.

19. Create simple workplace documents such as material lists, job cards, invoices, or presentation slides using MS Office tools as part of routine carpentry operations.
20. Use MS Office tools to generate structured reports, summarize team progress, present project layouts, or share written updates with a supervisor or customer.

Unit 2.1: Understanding Organizational Structure and Workplace Protocols

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Explain the difference between flat, functional, and hierarchical organizational structures used in carpentry and installation businesses.
2. Describe the typical reporting chain, escalation hierarchy, and workflow protocols followed at a furniture manufacturing or site operation unit.

2.1.1 Types of Work Structures in Carpentry and Furniture Companies

In carpentry and installation businesses, people work in teams to complete big and small projects. The way these teams are arranged in a company is called the "organizational structure." This structure decides who gives instructions, who reports to whom, and how the work moves from one person to another. Different companies may follow different structures based on their size, work style, and number of workers. The most common types are flat, functional, and hierarchical structures. Each type has its own style of working, and knowing the difference helps carpenters adjust better at the workplace.

Flat Organizational Structure

Flat Organizational Structure

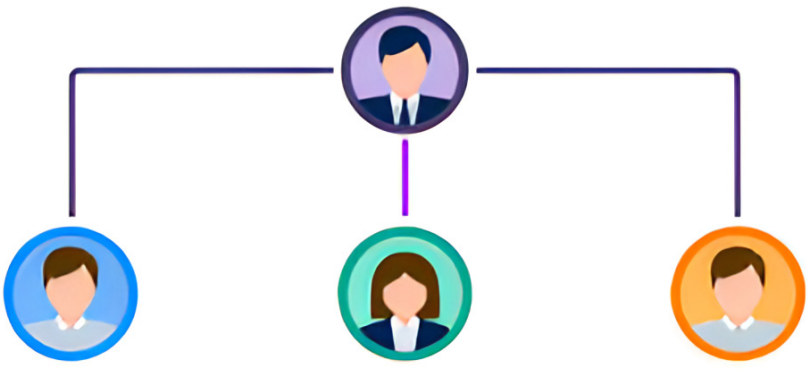


Fig. 2.1.1: Flat organisation structure

1. **Simple Team Without Many Levels**

   In a flat structure, there are very few levels of management. Everyone in the team works closely with the owner or supervisor. This is common in small furniture workshops or family-run carpentry units.

2. **Easy and Fast Communication**

   Carpenters can directly talk to the owner or manager and get quick answers or instructions. This saves time and makes the work go smoothly.

3. **More Freedom for Workers**

   Workers in flat structures often manage their own tasks and take more responsibility. This helps them learn faster but also requires self-discipline.

Functional Organizational Structure

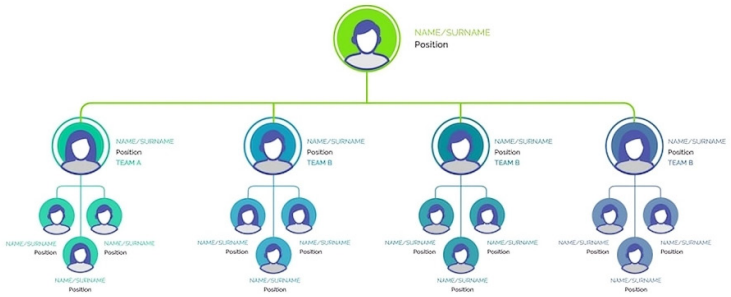


Fig. 2.1.2: Functional organisation structure

1. **Work is Divided by Type of Job**

   In this setup, people are grouped based on their job role, like cutting, assembling, polishing, or installing. Each group has a leader who reports to the main head.

2. **Clear Expertise and Role Clarity**

   Each team focuses on its own skill. For example, the cutting team only prepares boards, while the finishing team handles polishing and painting.

3. **Good for Medium-Sized Companies**

   This structure works well for businesses with more workers and many tasks. It helps keep work organized and improves quality.

Hierarchical Organizational Structure

Fig. 2.1.3: Hierarchical organisation structure

1. **Many Levels of Supervisors and Workers**

   In this structure, work flows from top to bottom. A senior manager gives instructions to team leads, who then guide junior carpenters. This is common in large companies or construction firms.

2. **Strong Control and Discipline**

   Each level has clear responsibilities. Workers report to their immediate supervisor. This ensures discipline and timely work completion.

3. **Slower but Structured Communication**

   Since there are many layers, getting approvals or changes may take time. But it also avoids confusion and mistakes in big projects.

Understanding the type of work structure in a company helps carpenters know who to report to, who to take instructions from, and how to work in a team. Whether the structure is flat, functional, or hierarchical, each has its own style. When carpenters adjust well to the structure, it becomes easier to complete tasks on time and grow in their role with confidence.

2.1.2 Work Process and Reporting System at Furniture Sites and Workshops

In a furniture workshop or installation site, work is carried out by different team members who must follow a clear process. Each person has a specific duty, and all tasks must be completed in a step-by-step manner. To manage this properly, companies follow a fixed reporting chain and workflow protocol. This helps in planning, daily progress, solving problems, and ensuring that the project is completed on time and with good quality. Understanding how this system works is very important for any Assistant Carpenter.

I. Reporting Chain in Workshop and Site Work

Fig. 2.1.4: Reporting chain in workshop and site work

1. **Assistant Carpenter Reports to Carpenter or Section Head**

   An Assistant Carpenter usually works under the guidance of a senior carpenter or team head. The assistant updates the senior about daily work, asks questions if anything is unclear, and follows instructions related to measurement, cutting, fixing, or polishing.

2. **Carpenter or Team Head Reports to Site Supervisor or Foreman**

   The team head manages a group of 3 to 6 carpenters and assistants. They make sure all team members are doing their work correctly and report daily progress to the site supervisor. They also manage materials, tools, and small troubleshooting.

3. **Supervisor Reports to Project Manager or Company Head**

   The supervisor looks after the entire site and makes sure that all teams are working as per the plan. They report the full site progress, delays, and material usage to the project manager. The project manager then handles the budget, timelines, and client communication.

II. Escalation Hierarchy, How to Report a Problem at Work

Step 1: Tell the Immediate Senior First

If there is a problem like tool damage, measurement mistake, or broken material, the Assistant Carpenter must first inform the team head. Most small problems can be solved at this level itself.

Step 2: If Unresolved, Inform the Site Supervisor

If the issue needs material replacement, change in layout, or drawing clarification, and the team head cannot solve it, then the site supervisor should be informed. The supervisor can take bigger decisions or arrange expert help.

Step 3: For Serious Issues, Reach the Project Manager

In cases like worker injury, electrical fault, major design error, or timeline delay, the matter should be immediately escalated to the project manager. This ensures that safety and quality are not compromised.

III. Workflow Protocols Followed at the Site or Workshop

- **Daily Tasks Are Planned and Noted in a Job Card**

  At the start of each working day, every Assistant Carpenter receives a job card that clearly lists all the tasks assigned for that day. This may include activities like measuring and cutting wood, preparing materials, installing fittings, or polishing finished products. The job card helps the carpenter understand what needs to be done and in what sequence. It also mentions important details such as required tools, deadlines, or specific client instructions if any.

  By following the job card carefully, the carpenter can organize the day efficiently. It acts as a guide that reduces the chances of forgetting a step or duplicating work. Supervisors also use these job cards to check progress, assign new tasks, or adjust work schedules. If the job card is filled honestly and regularly, it becomes a helpful tool for planning the entire project and tracking how much work is being completed on a daily basis.

- **Standard Sequence of Work Is Followed for Each Task**

  Every carpentry task must follow a fixed sequence to ensure that the work is done in a logical and high-quality manner. For example, when making a cabinet, the correct order would be measuring, marking, cutting the panels, edge finishing, assembling the structure, adding hardware like hinges or locks, and finally polishing or painting the unit. Skipping or reordering steps can result in poor finish, loose fittings, or material wastage.

  The Assistant Carpenter is trained to follow these steps systematically. Each action builds on the previous one, and failing to maintain this flow can lead to safety hazards or functional issues. Supervisors closely monitor the work process to make sure all steps are being followed properly. This not only improves work accuracy but also makes it easier to troubleshoot problems if something goes wrong later.

Tools and Materials Must Be Used Properly

Carpenters are expected to use tools responsibly and only for the purpose they are meant for. For instance, a hand saw should not be used for cutting metal or plastic, and drilling machines should not be used near wet surfaces. Each Assistant Carpenter is given specific tools during the shift and must ensure they are returned in good condition. If a tool is damaged, it must be reported immediately so that repairs or replacements can be arranged without delay.

Fig. 2.1.5: Using tools responsibly

Materials like plywood, adhesives, screws, or laminates should be used carefully to avoid wastage. Unnecessary cutting or mistakes in measurement can lead to loss of expensive materials. To control this, carpenters must plan their work, measure twice before cutting, and use leftover pieces wisely. If more supplies are needed for a task, a proper request must be made through the team leader rather than taking materials directly from the store without recording it.

Safety Gear and Clean Workspace Protocols

Every Assistant Carpenter must wear the required Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) such as safety gloves, helmets, goggles, and safety shoes before starting any task. These safety items help prevent injuries from tools, falling objects, or flying wood chips. PPE is not optional it is a mandatory part of workplace safety and must be worn throughout the shift, especially when using power tools or working at heights.

Fig. 2.1.6: Wearing required PPE while working

Maintaining a clean and organized work area is also very important. After the task is completed or during break times, all tools must be cleaned, wires must be coiled neatly, and dust or wooden scraps must be collected and placed in designated bins. This reduces the risk of slips, electric shocks, or tool damage. A clean workspace also makes it easier for the next team to begin work without delay or confusion.

5. Clear Reporting of Task Completion and Pending Work

Once a task is completed, the Assistant Carpenter must update the status either on the job card or by informing the team leader. If the task is delayed due to material shortage, tool damage, or any unforeseen reason, this should also be communicated clearly. Prompt reporting avoids miscommunication and helps supervisors plan how to manage the rest of the project without losing time.

Marking task updates in a shared system such as a whiteboard or work log helps everyone in the team stay aware of ongoing progress. It prevents overlapping of roles and ensures that the next person in the chain can start their task on time. Transparent communication also builds trust within the team and allows the supervisor to provide help where needed, whether it's reallocating resources or arranging backup tools.

A clear and well-followed reporting and workflow system keeps the workplace organized and efficient. It helps every Assistant Carpenter know whom to report to, how to escalate issues, and what steps to follow while doing their job. When such a system is in place, problems are solved quickly, tasks are finished on time, and the entire team works smoothly without delays or mistakes. This also builds discipline, teamwork, and professionalism at the site.

Unit 2.2: Team Goals, Communication, and Coordination

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Explain how team goals are communicated and aligned with overall project timelines in a carpentry team.
2. Identify ways to coordinate effectively with colleagues, such as tool sharing, sequencing tasks, and resolving overlaps.
3. Demonstrate how to relay job requirements or updates to teammates and supervisors through clear, concise instructions.
4. Discuss how shared objectives and open communication promote accountability and reduce errors at the worksite.

2.2.1 How Team Goals and Project Timelines Work Together

In a carpentry project, many people work together to finish tasks like cutting, fixing, and polishing furniture. Each worker or team is given specific goals to complete. These goals are not random they are part of a larger plan called the project timeline. The timeline shows how much work must be done each day, week, and month to finish everything on time. To avoid mistakes or delays, the team leader or site supervisor shares these goals clearly with all team members and explains how each person's work fits into the bigger plan.

Fig. 2.2.1: Aligning team goals and project timelines

When all carpenters know what they have to do, and when it must be done, they can plan their work better. This keeps the worksite organized and helps in completing the furniture without wasting time or materials. It also ensures that one team's delay does not affect the work of another team.

How Team Goals Are Shared and Followed

1. **Daily Job Briefings Are Conducted Every Morning**

   The team head or supervisor meets the team at the start of the day to explain the work that must be done. This includes which tasks are priority, who is responsible for what, and by when it should be completed.

2. **Work Is Divided Based on Skills and Experience**

   Tasks are given according to each carpenter's skill level. For example, cutting and measurement may be given to more skilled workers, while helpers support in material movement or cleaning. This keeps the workflow smooth.

3. **Progress Charts and Job Cards Are Used for Tracking**

   A progress chart or job card is often used to show what has been finished and what is still pending. Team members check this to stay updated and align their work with the overall plan.

4. **Supervisors Monitor Time and Output Regularly**

   Supervisors walk around the site to check if workers are doing their tasks as per the plan. If any delay happens, they discuss the issue with the team and try to solve it without affecting the rest of the project.

5. **If Timelines Change, Teams Are Informed Quickly**

   Sometimes, the project deadline is updated due to material delays or client requests. In such cases, the supervisor immediately informs the team and gives them new daily goals to stay on track.

In any carpentry project, it is very important that all team members understand what they need to do and when they must complete it. This is only possible when team goals are clearly explained and connected to the overall project timeline. When every carpenter follows the same plan and completes their part on time, the full project can be completed without stress, confusion, or delay. Good communication and shared goals are the building blocks of smooth teamwork.

2.2.2 How to Work Well with Team Members on a Carpentry Site

In a carpentry team, many workers do different tasks some are cutting wood, others are fixing furniture, and some are doing finishing. If team members do not work together properly, there can be confusion, tool fights, repeated work, or delays. That's why coordination is very important. Coordination means planning your work with others, so that everyone gets the job done in the correct order, at the right time, and with the right tools. Good coordination also helps avoid damage, injury, and arguments at the site.

When carpenters learn to share tools, follow work steps, and solve small problems together, the team becomes stronger and faster. It saves time, reduces mistakes, and makes the work environment friendly and safe.

Ways to Coordinate Effectively on the Job

Ways to Coordinate Effectively on the Job	
	Share Tools Without Delay or Conflict On a busy site, not everyone has their own set of tools. Workers must take turns using common tools like drills, saws, or screw-drivers. Sharing them without fighting or delay shows respect and keeps work going smoothly.
	Plan Work in the Right Sequence Tasks must be done in the correct order. For example, wood must be measured and cut before it can be joined. If one team starts painting before joining is done, it creates problems. Talking with others and agreeing on the right steps helps avoid confusion.
	Talk Before Starting Work in the Same Area If two workers are working close to each other, they must speak first and agree on space and time. This prevents bumping into each other or damaging finished work. It also avoids delays caused by one person blocking another's work.
	Mark and Reserve Tools After Use After using a tool, it should be cleaned, marked, and returned to its place. This helps others find it easily. Writing your name on shared tools or using color tags helps avoid mix-ups or arguments.
	Help Others if You Finish Early If your task is complete and someone else needs help, offer support. This improves team bonding and speeds up project completion. Helping does not mean doing the full work, but even small support like holding wood or passing tools makes a big difference.
	Speak Politely and Solve Problems Quickly If any clash happens like two people needing the same tool at the same time talk calmly and find a solution. Fighting or blaming slows the work and affects team spirit. A polite word can solve problems faster than anger.

Fig. 2.2.2: Ways to coordinate effectively on the job

Working together is the heart of carpentry success. By sharing tools, planning tasks in order, and solving overlaps through communication, carpenters can finish the job faster and better. A well-coordinated team wastes less time, makes fewer mistakes, and enjoys the work more. Respecting each other's space, time, and tools creates a strong team environment and leads to smooth and safe work on site.

2.2.3 How to Share Work Instructions and Updates Clearly

In carpentry work, many tasks are connected. One person's work depends on what the other has finished. So, it is very important to share job updates and instructions clearly. If instructions are not shared properly, teammates may get confused, do the wrong work, or waste time. Even small mistakes in communication can delay the entire project or cause safety risks. That's why carpenters must learn how to give short, simple, and clear messages about what is to be done, what is finished, or what problems have come up.

Fig. 2.2.3: Discussing and sharing task instructions

Clear communication also helps in reporting to supervisors. When carpenters share the correct progress or problems on time, the supervisor can make better decisions. It also shows that the worker is serious about their job and knows how to work well in a team. There are several ways to share job instructions and updates properly:

Use Simple and Direct Sentences

When telling someone what to do, don't use long or confusing words. Say things in short, clear steps like "Cut this plank to 4 feet," or "Fix this drawer after I drill the holes." This avoids misunderstanding and saves time.

Repeat Key Details to Be Sure

After you give an instruction, repeat the most important part like the size, number, or location. For example, say "Measure 6 feet yes, six feet from the corner." This confirms that the other person heard it right.

Speak at the Right Time and Place

Don't shout instructions from far away or when the machine is running. Wait for a quiet moment or move closer. This makes sure your message is actually heard and understood.

Point or Show When Needed

Sometimes words are not enough. Pointing to the exact spot or using hand signs helps. For example, show where the screw must go instead of just saying "over there." This is useful when workers speak different languages or there is noise around.

Inform the Supervisor with Quick Summary

When updating your supervisor, give a short and clear report like "I finished fixing the cabinet doors. Now moving to the next bedroom." This keeps them informed and shows you are following the plan.

Tell About Problems Early

If you face any issue like missing material or wrong measurements tell the team leader immediately. Say what the problem is, where it is, and how it affects the next step. This helps them solve it before it causes bigger delays.

Good communication is not only about talking it is about making sure the other person understands clearly. In a carpentry team, sharing work instructions or updates in simple, short, and correct words helps everyone work better. Whether speaking to a teammate or reporting to a supervisor, your message must be easy to hear, understand, and follow. This saves time, reduces errors, and builds strong teamwork at the site.

2.2.4 Why Team Goals and Open Communication Help Avoid Mistakes

In any carpentry project, everyone works together to finish the job on time and with good quality. This is only possible when all team members understand the same goal. A shared objective means that everyone knows what needs to be done, how it should look, and when it should be finished. When all workers follow the same goal, they work in the same direction and support each other.

Good communication also plays a big role. If workers talk openly about what they are doing, what they need, or what problem they are facing, then fewer mistakes happen. When there is silence or confusion, it leads to wrong work, waste of material, or safety issues. So, both shared goals and open talks help in building responsibility and reducing errors.

How Team Goals and Communication Help at the Site

How Team Goals and Communication Help at the Site	**Everyone Knows What to Do** When the supervisor shares a common goal with all workers, each person understands their job clearly. For example, if the goal is to finish two wardrobes in one day, every team member works according to that plan. This avoids double work or missed steps.
	Work Gets Divided Properly If the team talks openly, they can plan who will cut, who will fix, and who will polish. This saves time and ensures everyone is busy with the right task. There is no confusion or waiting around.
	Mistakes Are Found Early If someone spots a problem like a wrong size cut or missing part—they can immediately tell others. This stops the mistake from continuing. The team can fix it early and avoid wasting time or material.
	Team Members Help Each Other Shared goals build teamwork. If one person is struggling, others step in and support because they care about finishing the task together. This makes the team stronger and more reliable.
	Better Planning and Time Use When everyone knows the goal and talks openly, they can plan better. For example, one team can start polishing while another finishes cutting. This keeps the work going without breaks or delays.
	Everyone Takes Responsibility When workers understand the main goal and their role in it, they feel responsible for doing their job well. They become more careful, follow instructions properly, and make fewer errors.

Fig. 2.2.4: How team goals and communication help at the site

A successful carpentry team works like one unit. When everyone knows the goal and keeps talking openly, the work becomes smoother and better. Shared objectives make people more responsible, and open communication helps solve problems quickly. Together, they reduce errors, save time, and build a safe, happy, and high-performing team at the worksite.

Unit 2.3: Conflict Resolution and Professional Behavior at Workplace

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Identify typical workplace conflicts in carpentry settings, including tool sharing, task overlap, and miscommunication.
2. Demonstrate calm and respectful language, posture, and tone while resolving conflicts.
3. Explain how professionalism such as punctuality, reliability, and respect reduces chances of conflict escalation.
4. Describe how active listening and empathy foster smoother work relationships and better team dynamics.

2.3.1 Understanding Common Conflicts at a Carpentry Site

In a carpentry site or workshop, many workers work together on different tasks. These tasks are often connected, and workers use shared tools and spaces. Because of this, small problems or misunderstandings can sometimes happen between team members. These are called workplace conflicts. If not managed early, such conflicts can lead to delays, mistakes, or an uncomfortable work environment.

It is important for every Assistant Carpenter to know what kinds of conflicts may come up during the job. Understanding these situations helps you stay calm, solve problems quickly, and maintain a good relationship with others. Knowing the cause of conflict is the first step in preventing it.

Types of Conflicts Seen in Carpentry Workplaces

Tool Sharing Issues
In many cases, workers need to share tools like drills, saws, or measuring tapes. Conflicts happen when someone takes a tool without asking, damages it, or keeps it for too long. This creates delay for others and may lead to arguments or blame.

Task Overlap and Confusion
When two or more workers are given the same task without clear division, they may clash while working in the same area. For example, if two people start fixing different parts of the same wardrobe without planning, they may block each other or undo each other's work.

Miscommunication Between Workers
Sometimes, team members do not clearly say what they are doing, what materials they need, or what problem they are facing. This can lead to mistakes. For example, one worker may think a cabinet is ready for polishing, but it's not properly fixed yet. Such miscommunication causes frustration and errors.

Different Work Speeds or Styles
Every worker may not work at the same speed or follow the same method. If someone works too slow or too fast without matching the team's pace, it can cause tension. Faster workers may feel held back, and slower ones may feel pressure or stress.

Not Following Instructions Properly
If someone does not listen to the team leader's instructions or tries to do things their own way, it creates problems for the whole team. This shows disrespect and leads to confusion in the workflow.

Personal Behavior or Attitude Problems
Some conflicts happen not because of work but because of personal behavior. A rude tone, poor listening, or lack of respect can cause fights. Professional behavior means being polite and helpful, even when you disagree.

Fig. 2.3.1: Different types of conflicts in carpentry workspace

Workplace conflicts in carpentry are common, but they can be managed easily if everyone understands the causes. Sharing tools properly, dividing tasks clearly, and keeping good communication with teammates help prevent many issues. When conflicts are handled early and professionally, the team works better and the job gets done faster and with fewer mistakes.

2.3.2 How to Talk and Behave Calmly During Workplace Conflicts

In any carpentry team, disagreements or small arguments can happen. But the way we talk and behave during a conflict shows how professional we are. Using calm language, a respectful tone, and good body posture helps solve problems without making them worse. If you stay cool and polite, the other person will also calm down, and both of you can find a solution together.

Fig. 2.3.2: Talking and discussing calmly while working

As an Assistant Carpenter, your goal is not just to do the work, but also to work well with others. Conflicts can slow down the job and spoil the work environment. That's why learning how to respond politely and professionally during such situations is an important skill.

Staying Respectful and Calm During a Conflict

Handling conflict respectfully is a key part of working well with others, especially in a team environment like a carpentry workshop or installation site. The first step is to use simple and polite language. Instead of shouting or blaming others, speak clearly and gently. Phrases like "Let's talk about it" or "Maybe we can find a solution" show that you want to solve the problem rather than create more trouble. Along with your words, your tone also matters. Keeping your voice calm and steady even if the other person is upset can help bring peace to the situation and avoid further escalation.

Your body language plays a big role too. Stand in a relaxed posture, without crossing your arms or pointing fingers. These gestures can look aggressive. Keep your hands at your sides or use gentle movements while speaking. Making respectful eye contact also shows that you are listening and care about what the other person is saying. Just avoid staring or looking angry, as it can make the other person uncomfortable. During a disagreement, it is also very important to listen patiently. Let the other person speak without interrupting. Nod occasionally to show that you are paying attention. Once they finish, you can calmly share your point of view. This respectful exchange builds understanding and trust.

Fig. 2.3.3: Staying calm and polite during conflicts

When discussing a problem, focus on finding a solution instead of blaming someone. Avoid saying things like "You are wrong" or "You always do this." Instead, say "What can we do to fix this?" or "Let's try another way." Looking for solutions creates teamwork, while blaming only increases the conflict. If the argument becomes too heated, it is perfectly okay to suggest a short break. Taking five or ten minutes to calm down allows both people to return with a clearer mind and a better chance of solving the issue. In this way, Assistant Carpenters can handle workplace disagreements calmly, protect team harmony, and continue their work without stress or confusion.

Conflicts can happen, but they can also be solved with the right attitude. Speaking politely, using a calm tone, and showing respectful body language help create peace and solve problems faster. As an Assistant Carpenter, your good behavior during conflicts will earn respect from teammates and help the work go smoothly. Always choose respect over reaction.

2.3.3 How Professional Behaviour Helps Prevent Bigger Conflicts

At a carpentry worksite or workshop, problems can quickly grow if workers are careless, late, or rude to each other. But when everyone follows professional behaviour, small issues stay small and do not become big fights. Being professional means acting in a responsible, respectful, and disciplined way while doing your job.

As an Assistant Carpenter, showing professionalism every day builds trust with your team. It helps create a positive environment where people feel safe and respected. When everyone behaves well, the team works faster, finishes better, and faces fewer problems.

Different Professional Ways to Reduces Conflicts

Ways Professional Behaviour Reduces Conflict					
Being Punctual Builds Trust	**Reliability Reduces Misunderstanding**	**Respect Prevents Arguments**	**Following Instructions Avoids Confusion**	**Taking Responsibility Shows Maturity**	**Helping Teammates Creates a Friendly Atmosphere**
Arriving on time shows that you respect the team and the job. If you are always late, others may feel angry or stressed, especially if their task depends on you. Being punctual avoids such tension and keeps the work running smoothly.	When you finish your tasks properly and on time, your teammates know they can count on you. If you often forget or delay your work, others may become upset and think you are careless. Being dependable makes teamwork stronger and reduces complaints.	Treating others with kindness and politeness helps avoid fights. Even when someone makes a mistake, speaking to them gently and respectfully keeps the situation calm. Respectful communication builds good relationships and avoids shouting or blame.	If you listen carefully to your supervisor and follow the given instructions, the team works as one unit. Disobeying orders or doing work your own way can confuse others and start conflicts.	When you admit your mistake and fix it, it shows that you are mature and serious about your work. Blaming others or hiding errors can start fights. Taking ownership helps in solving the issue quickly.	Offering help when others are stuck or sharing your tools shows that you care about the team. Such acts reduce stress and build cooperation. In a friendly team, even small problems are solved without anger.

Fig. 2.3.4: Different professional ways to reduces conflicts

Professionalism is not just about how well you work it's also about how you treat others. By being punctual, dependable, and respectful, you stop small issues from becoming big problems. These habits make you a valued member of your team and help the whole worksite stay peaceful, safe, and productive.

2.3.4 Listening and Understanding Others for Better Teamwork

In a carpentry team, everyone depends on each other to finish the work on time and with good quality. To do this well, all team members must understand each other clearly. Two important skills that help are active listening and empathy. These help you know what others are saying, how they feel, and how to respond in a helpful way.

When you listen carefully and try to understand another person's situation or feelings, it builds trust. This avoids confusion, fights, or delays. Workers feel valued when they are heard, and they are more willing to support one another. A team with good understanding always works better and faster.

How Active Listening and Empathy Help in the Workplace

Fig. 2.3.5: Active listening

1. **Active Listening Avoids Misunderstanding**

   When you listen with full attention, you don't miss important information. It helps you follow instructions properly and avoid mistakes. Nodding, asking questions, or repeating key points shows you are really listening.

2. **Empathy Builds Stronger Bonds**

   Empathy means trying to understand how the other person feels. If a teammate is upset, tired, or facing a problem, being kind and understanding improves your relationship. It shows that you care not just about work, but also about the person.

3. **Reduces Repeated Conflicts**

   If a problem happens, active listening helps you hear the full story without interrupting. When you show empathy, the other person feels respected. This reduces shouting or blame and allows quick solutions.

4. **Improves Cooperation in Daily Work**

   When team members feel heard and respected, they are more willing to help each other. For example, a worker who feels understood may offer to share tools or assist with a difficult task. This smooth cooperation helps the team move as one.

5. **Creates a Positive Work Atmosphere**

   When everyone listens and cares, the workplace feels safe and friendly. People smile more, talk openly, and support each other. This keeps stress low and makes the team stronger.

6. **Helps Solve Problems Before They Grow**

   If someone is unhappy but doesn't say it, problems can grow silently. But active listening and empathy can uncover such hidden issues early. Talking things through calmly avoids bigger trouble later.

Good teams are built on good understanding. When you listen carefully and care about how others feel, your work relationships improve. This leads to better teamwork, fewer problems, and a happy workplace. As an Assistant Carpenter, these skills will help you succeed every day on the job.

Unit 2.4: Basic Digital Literacy and Internet Usage

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Identify the main parts and functions of a computer system and demonstrate basic file operations like opening, saving, and organizing folders.
2. Use the internet for work-related activities such as searching furniture tutorials, downloading product manuals, and browsing technical videos.

2.4.1 Using a Computer for Basic Work Needs

In many carpentry jobs today, knowing how to use a computer is helpful. Even if your main work is with tools and wood, sometimes you need to check a drawing, view instructions, or save a photo of your work. Learning the main parts of a computer and how to handle basic file operations makes it easier to stay organized. You can open documents, save your work, and keep your project files in order. This helps reduce mistakes, saves time, and improves communication with your team or supervisor.

Main Parts of a Computer and Their Functions

S. No.	Component	Description	Image
1	**Monitor**	The monitor is the screen or display of the computer. It shows pictures, text, files, folders, and tools. Layout drawings and measurement sheets are visible here, helping users see and check their work.	
2	**Keyboard**	The keyboard is used to type letters, numbers, and symbols into the computer. It helps in naming files, entering measurements, or searching for drawings. Each key has a unique function.	
3	**Mouse**	The mouse is a hand-held device used to move the pointer on the screen. It is essential for opening files, moving folders, and selecting tools through clicking and dragging.	

S. No.	Component	Description	Image
4	**CPU**	The CPU (Central Processing Unit) is the brain of the computer. It processes all commands and controls actions like typing, clicking, and file opening. Without it, the computer cannot function.	
5	**USB Ports**	These are small slots on the CPU used to connect pen drives or external devices. They allow easy file transfer of layouts, images, or invoices to and from other computers.	

Table 2.4.1: Components of a computer

Basic File Operations for Carpentry Work

1. **Opening a file helps you view saved work**

   You can open a saved layout drawing or document by moving your mouse to the file and double-clicking it. This shows you the file content so you can read or update it as needed. Opening files helps you get back to your earlier work quickly.

2. **Saving a file protects your work from getting lost**

   After making any changes or writing something, you must save it so it stays on the computer. You do this by clicking "File" and selecting "Save." If it's a new file, click "Save As" to give it a proper name. This helps avoid repeating work or losing data.

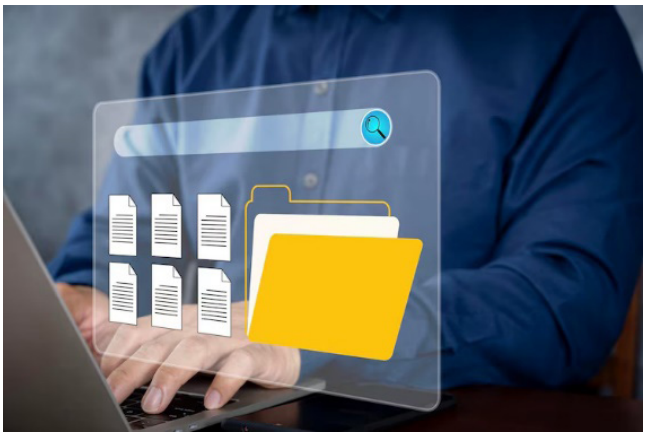


Fig. 2.4.1: Basic file operations

3. **Creating folders helps you organize your files neatly**

   Making folders with names like "Kitchen Project" or "Client Drawings" allows you to group similar files together. It becomes easy to find what you need without wasting time. This is like keeping all screws in one box and all nails in another.

4. **Renaming files makes them easy to recognize**

   Giving files clear names such as "Wardrobe_Dimensions" or "Client_Budget_April" helps everyone understand what's inside without opening each file. It saves time and avoids confusion when many files are saved on the computer.

5. **Copying or moving files lets you store or shift them easily**

   You may need to copy files to a pen drive or move them into a different folder. You can right-click a file, choose "Copy" or "Cut," then go to the new location and click "Paste." This helps you share work, make backups, or shift files as needed.

Even basic knowledge of computers helps Assistant Carpenters handle work in a smarter and more organized way. By understanding how to use a monitor, keyboard, and mouse, and how to open, save, and arrange files, you can manage your tasks better. It also prepares you to work smoothly with others in a digital workplace.

2.4.2 Using the Internet for Carpentry Learning and Support

The internet is a helpful tool for carpenters to improve their knowledge and skills. By using it properly, you can learn new techniques, understand different tools, and stay updated with the latest trends. Whether working in a workshop or on-site, the internet gives quick answers, step-by-step videos, and access to useful documents. With basic internet knowledge, you can solve problems faster and do your job better.

i. **Searching for Furniture Tutorials**

   You can search for free tutorials online that show how to make furniture items like tables, chairs, cabinets, and wardrobes. These tutorials often include step-by-step instructions, pictures, and videos that explain each stage of the process. Watching these tutorials helps you learn new styles and techniques that you may not have seen in your regular work. It's also useful if you forget a step or want to try a different method.

ii. **Downloading Product Manuals**

   Sometimes, you need to use a new tool or install a special type of furniture fitting. The product manual explains how to use the tool safely or install the item correctly. You can download these manuals from the company's website or through links shared by your supervisor. Once downloaded, you can read them offline as well. This reduces mistakes and helps you use the tools as per guidelines.

iii. **Browsing Technical Videos**

   There are many videos on YouTube or other platforms that show carpentry tricks, machinery operations, or furniture installations. These videos help you understand complex tasks by showing the process live. For example, you can watch how to correctly use a laminate roller or how to measure accurately before drilling. Such videos build your confidence and allow you to work smarter and more efficiently.

iv. **Learning from Trusted Sources**

   When using the internet, it is important to visit trusted websites like well-known hardware brands, tool manufacturers, or carpentry training channels. These sources give correct and safe information. Avoid websites that look confusing, have too many ads, or ask for payments without giving any value. Your supervisor may also guide you to reliable sources to follow.

v. Saving Useful Information

You can save important links, videos, or documents on your phone or computer for future use. This allows you to check them again when needed. For example, if you are doing furniture installation at a client's site and need to recheck how a drawer channel is fixed, you can quickly open the saved video.

The internet is not just for entertainment it is a powerful tool to support your carpentry work. By searching tutorials, downloading manuals, and watching videos, you can improve your skills, work safely, and solve problems faster. Using the internet the right way makes you more prepared and confident in your job.

Unit 2.5: Financial Transactions and Online Payments

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. List various payment methods used in site-level purchases or reimbursements including UPI, cash, and mobile wallets.
2. Explain basic digital transaction safety steps such as app verification, password protection, and secure networks.
3. Demonstrate a complete transaction process from scanning a code to confirming and saving a receipt—for recordkeeping.

2.5.1 Common Payment Methods Used at the Worksite

In carpentry work, especially at installation sites or workshops, buying materials or getting reimbursed for small expenses is a regular activity. To manage these payments smoothly, workers should know about different payment methods used for daily transactions. These include both traditional and digital methods like cash, UPI, and mobile wallets. Knowing how to use these options safely helps carpenters handle work-related money matters easily and keeps records clear.

Cash was the most commonly used method earlier, but now digital payments are increasing at the worksite due to speed, safety, and easy tracking. Many vendors and suppliers now prefer online transactions because they don't need to carry loose change or maintain long registers. Even workers can use these tools for small purchases like screws, adhesives, or fasteners, and later share the payment proof with the supervisor for reimbursement.

S. No.	Payment Method	Description	Image
1	**Cash**	Cash is still commonly used for small and quick purchases, especially at local markets or hardware shops that do not accept digital payments. It's important to count carefully and collect a proper bill as proof.	
2	**UPI (Unified Payments Interface)**	UPI allows instant mobile payments using apps like Google Pay, PhonePe, or BHIM. Users can scan QR codes or enter UPI IDs. A digital receipt is generated and can be shared for records.	UPI UNIFIED PAYMENTS INTERFACE

S. No.	Payment Method	Description	Image
3	**Mobile Wallets**	Apps like Paytm, Amazon Pay, and MobiKwik act as digital wallets. Money can be added and used for smaller purchases where bank apps may not work or for convenience.	
4	**Bank Transfers**	NEFT or IMPS transfers are used for larger payments, such as ordering furniture or paying suppliers. Though slightly slower, they are secure and preferred for high-value transactions.	
5	**Debit Cards**	Debit cards connected to bank accounts can be used at shops with swipe machines. This is a convenient cashless option for planned purchases at hardware or furniture stores.	

Table 2.5.1: Various payment methods used at worksite

Understanding different payment methods helps carpenters manage daily work expenses smartly. Whether it is cash for local shopping or UPI for instant payments, using the right method saves time, keeps records clean, and builds trust with suppliers. It also helps workers get quick reimbursements and maintain transparency at the worksite.

2.5.2 Digital Safety Measures for Secure Online Payments

In today's carpentry work environment, digital transactions are becoming common, especially at construction or furniture installation sites. Workers and supervisors often use mobile phones and apps to pay for materials, transport, or even worker allowances. While digital payments are fast and easy, they also come with some risks if not used carefully. That's why learning about digital safety is important for everyone involved in site-level purchases or financial tasks.

Digital safety is all about protecting your money and personal information while using online or mobile payment methods. Just like you lock your toolbox at the end of the day, you must also protect your mobile phone, apps, and passwords from misuse. A single mistake like using a fake app or entering your password in an unsafe place can lead to money loss or fraud. Learning and following basic digital safety habits helps you carry out safe transactions and build trust within your team or organization.

1. App verification

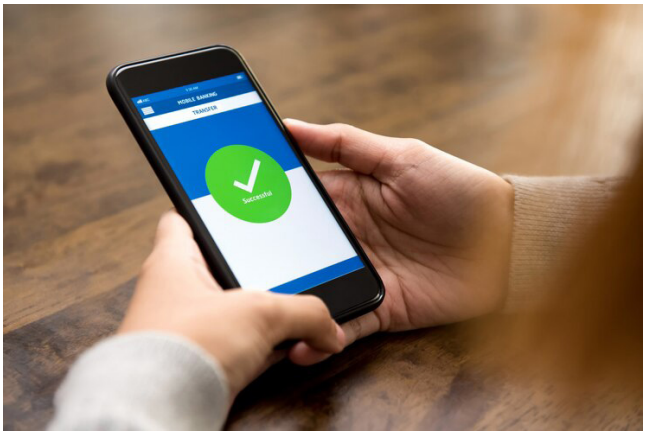


Fig. 2.5.1: Downloading apps from verified app stores only

Before downloading any mobile payment application like Google Pay, PhonePe, or Paytm, it is important to make sure that it is the genuine and official version. Many fake apps look similar to real ones and try to steal your information. To avoid this, only download apps from trusted sources like Google Play Store (for Android) or Apple App Store (for iPhones). Check the app's name, logo, and developer details before installing. Also, read reviews and ratings to know if others have safely used it. A verified app is regularly updated and supported by the company, which means fewer chances of bugs or security issues.

2. Password protection

Fig. 2.5.2: Password protection

Your phone and digital wallet must be protected with a strong password, PIN, or lock screen. This acts as a barrier to keep strangers or thieves from accessing your financial information. Always use a password that is not easy to guess avoid using birthdates or simple numbers like 1234. If your phone supports it, use fingerprint or face unlock for added security. Never share your UPI PIN or app password with anyone, even if they are your co-workers. If you feel someone else has seen your password, change it immediately. Remember, just like you keep your locker key safe, your digital password also needs the same care.

3. Secure networks

Fig. 2.5.3: Using secure network

Using a secure internet connection is very important while making payments. Avoid using free or public Wi-Fi networks in cafes, markets, or at random places for online transactions. These networks may be unsafe, and hackers can use them to steal your data. It is better to use your own mobile internet or a trusted Wi-Fi network, like the one provided by your office or supervisor. If you ever feel the network is slow or acting strangely, stop the transaction and try again later. Secure networks keep your information hidden from others and reduce the chances of fraud or failed payments.

4. Confirm recipient before paying

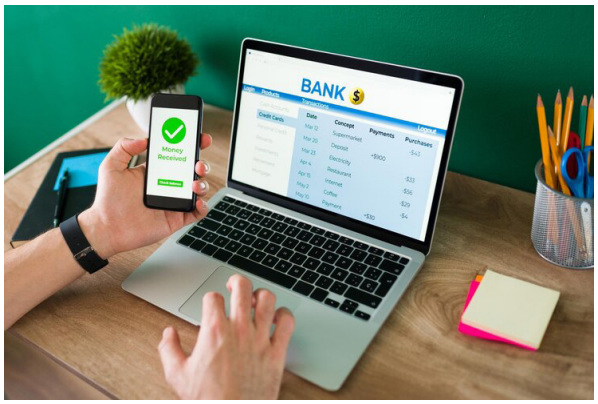


Fig. 2.5.4: Confirm recipient before paying

Whenever you are paying someone using their phone number or QR code, take a few seconds to check the name that appears on the screen before pressing “Pay.” Sometimes, QR codes can be tampered with or numbers may be typed wrong. Verifying the name helps make sure your money is going to the right person. If the name looks strange or unexpected, cancel the transaction and recheck with the seller or your supervisor. This simple step saves you from sending money to the wrong person and facing delays in getting it back.

5. Log out and lock your app

Fig. 2.5.5: Log out and lock your app

After completing any payment, always close or log out of the payment app if you are sharing the phone with someone. Even if it's your own device, get into the habit of exiting the app after use. Some apps may stay open in the background, and if someone picks up your phone, they might access your account. Locking your app with a password or PIN adds a second layer of protection, just like locking a drawer after keeping money inside.

Digital safety is not only for experts or tech-savvy people it is a necessary habit for every carpenter and site worker using online payments. By making sure the app is genuine, your password is strong, and your internet connection is secure, you can protect your money and avoid digital fraud. These simple steps help you use technology with confidence and keep your records clean and trustworthy.

2.5.3 Steps to Complete a Safe and Successful Digital Payment Transaction

In many carpentry and site-related jobs, there are times when payments have to be made quickly for buying hardware, settling transport bills, or paying a helper. Instead of cash, most people now prefer using mobile payment apps because they are fast, easy, and can be done from anywhere. One of the most common ways to pay is by scanning a QR code. But doing this correctly and keeping a record is very important. This avoids mistakes, builds trust, and helps you maintain proof of payment for future reference or reimbursements.

The following steps explain how to complete a digital payment from beginning to end from scanning a code to saving the receipt.

Step 1: Scan the code

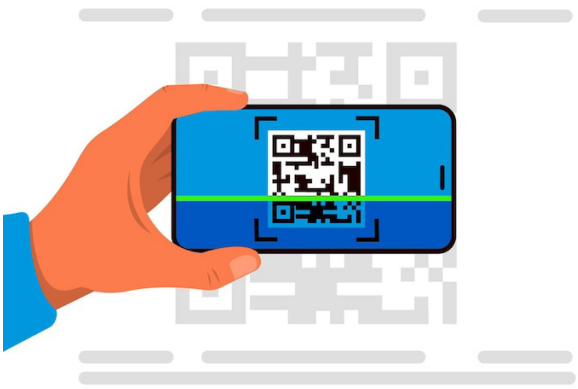


Fig. 2.5.6: Scan the code

Open your payment app such as Google Pay, PhonePe, Paytm, or BHIM UPI on your mobile phone. Look for the option that says “Scan QR Code” or “Pay.” Point your phone’s camera at the QR code given by the shopkeeper, vendor, or supplier. Make sure the code is clear and not damaged. Hold your phone steady until the code is scanned automatically. If the code doesn’t scan, clean the lens, move closer, or ask for another code. Never use a QR code shared as a screenshot or forwarded in a message unless it is confirmed by a trusted source.

Step 2: Verify recipient details

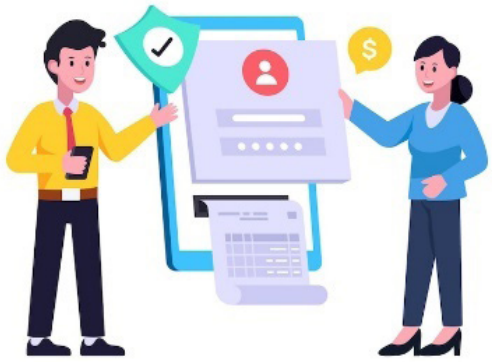


Fig. 2.5.7: Confirm recipient details

After scanning the QR code, the app will show the name of the person or business you are about to pay. Take a few seconds to read and confirm this name. For example, if you are buying plywood from ‘Ajay Timber Mart,’ the name should match on your screen. If it shows a different name or anything suspicious, stop and ask the vendor to confirm. This step is very important to avoid paying the wrong person. A simple mistake in name-checking can lead to money loss and confusion.

Step 3: Enter the amount

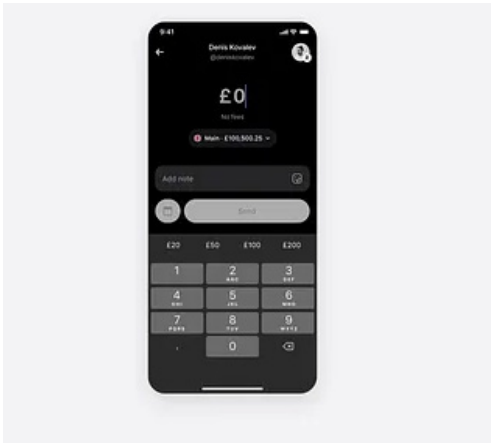


Fig. 2.5.8: Enter the amount

Next, you will be asked to enter the payment amount. Type the correct amount you need to pay. Double-check it before moving ahead. If there are any discounts or changes in the price, make sure you update the amount accordingly. Avoid rounding off blindly enter the exact rupee value as agreed. This helps maintain a clear record, especially when you show the receipt later for reimbursement or project expenses.

Step 4: Add a note (optional but helpful)

Most payment apps allow you to add a note, such as “plywood,” “door hinges,” or “transport.” Writing this short message helps you remember what the payment was for when you look back later. It is also useful when your supervisor or accounts team checks your spending report. Though optional, this habit adds clarity to your transaction records and avoids confusion in future.

Step 5: Confirm and authenticate

After entering the amount and note, press the “Pay” button. The app will ask for your UPI PIN or password. This step is to verify that only you are making the payment. Carefully type the PIN without showing it to anyone nearby. Once you enter the correct PIN, the app will process the payment and show a confirmation screen.

Step 6: Save or screenshot the receipt

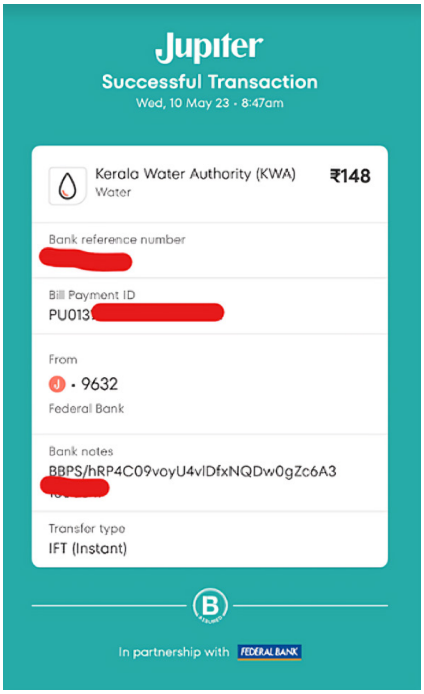


Fig. 2.5.9: Save or screenshot the receipt

When the payment is done, the app will display a receipt. It shows the amount paid, time, date, recipient’s name, and transaction ID. Take a screenshot of this screen or press “Save Receipt” if the app gives that option. You can also find this receipt later under your “Transaction History” in the app. Keeping this record is very important for your own tracking and for showing proof if asked by your supervisor, accounts officer, or vendor.

Step 7: Share or submit the receipt

If the payment was made on behalf of your team or company, send the receipt through WhatsApp, email, or any approved app to your manager or project in-charge. This completes your responsibility and shows that you handled the funds correctly. If you are maintaining a digital folder, save the receipt with a proper name like “Cabinet_Fittings_27May.”

Doing a digital transaction is not just about sending money. It is about doing it correctly, checking every step, and keeping a proper record. By following these detailed steps scanning the QR, confirming the name, entering the right amount, and saving the receipt you not only make a successful payment but also show that you are responsible and professional. These habits build trust and make it easier to manage project expenses.

Unit 2.6: Using MS Office for Workplace Productivity

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Identify how Word, Excel, and PowerPoint support furniture-related documentation and communication.
2. Create a simple Word document for writing a job brief or task list with formatting features.
3. Use Excel to create a material tracking sheet with basic formulas and borders.
4. Generate a PowerPoint presentation summarizing a furniture layout proposal using templates and inserted images.
5. Save, name, and organize files properly for easy access and future use.

2.6.1 Using MS Office Tools in Furniture Work

In today's work environment, basic knowledge of computer applications is important even in hands-on jobs like carpentry. Tools like MS Word, MS Excel, and MS PowerPoint are not just for office workers. They help Assistant Carpenters manage documents, share information, and communicate clearly with supervisors, team members, or clients. These tools support daily work in many ways, from creating simple checklists to showing ideas through slides.

Furniture-related work often involves planning, estimation, progress reporting, and coordination with multiple people. Written communication becomes necessary, especially when working on large projects or with teams spread across different locations. In such cases, MS Office tools help make that communication clear, neat, and easy to understand. These tools also help store records safely and reduce mistakes caused by missing or unclear information.

Word for Letters, Reports, and Checklists

Fig. 2.6.1: MS Word

MS Word is used to type and format written content. Assistant Carpenters can use it to create work instructions, material lists, and safety checklists. It is also useful for writing short reports about work progress or site visits. Formatting tools like bold, underline, and bullet points make the document neat and easy to read. It is also helpful for creating official letters, quotation requests, or daily work logs that need to be printed or emailed.

Excel for Measurement Logs and Cost Estimates

Fig. 2.6.2: MS Excel

MS Excel is useful when working with numbers. Carpenters can use it to maintain measurement logs of plywood sheets, calculate the number of fittings required, or track expenses for materials. Excel helps in creating neat tables that can automatically calculate totals, saving time and reducing errors. It can also be used to track daily attendance or delivery status of hardware items. The use of formulas and charts helps present the data clearly and make fast decisions.

PowerPoint for Presenting Designs or Project Ideas

Fig. 2.6.3: MS Powerpoint

MS PowerPoint is helpful when carpenters need to explain furniture designs, work plans, or project stages to clients, supervisors, or other team members. It allows images, text, and diagrams to be shown on slides in a sequence. This is useful during design presentations or review meetings. Visual tools like photos, arrows, labels, and titles help make communication clear, especially when describing furniture layout, finishes, or space planning ideas.

MS Office tools make it easier for Assistant Carpenters to manage their work professionally. Word helps with writing documents, Excel makes number work simple, and PowerPoint is great for sharing ideas visually. Learning these tools can save time, improve clarity, and increase your value on any project or team. Even basic usage of these applications builds strong communication skills that help carpenters grow in their career.

2.6.2 Creating a Job Brief or Task List in MS Word

In carpentry work, it is important to clearly share what work needs to be done, by whom, and in what order. A job brief or task list helps the team understand their duties for the day or week. Using MS Word to prepare this kind of document is simple and very useful. It allows you to write down clear instructions, organize work items neatly, and highlight important points using formatting tools. Even if you don't type fast or know many computer tricks, you can still create a useful and neat document using basic features of MS Word.

A job brief is usually a small note or instruction sheet that tells what type of furniture work is to be done, which tools or materials are needed, where the work will happen, and the expected timelines. A task list is a breakdown of work items like measuring, cutting, fixing that are listed one after another, sometimes along with who is responsible. By using bold text, bullet points, and underlining, you can make your job brief easy to read for everyone, whether it's your supervisor, co-worker, or helper.

1. **Open MS Word and Start with a Title**

   Start by opening MS Word on your computer or laptop. At the top of the page, write a clear title like "Job Brief – Bedroom Cabinet Installation" or "Daily Task List – 12th June." This tells the reader what the document is about. Make the title bold and increase the font size to make it stand out. You can center-align it to give a neat appearance.

2. **Write Work Details in Short Paragraphs**

   Below the title, start writing the job details in short paragraphs. Begin with the type of work, such as "Installation of wall-mounted cabinets in the master bedroom." Then write the location, materials required, number of workers, and expected finish date. You can underline headers like "Work Area," "Tools Required," or "Expected Finish Time" to make the sections easy to find.

3. **Create a Bullet Point Task List**

   After writing the job details, create a task list using bullet points. Click on the bullet icon in MS Word and list each task one by one. Example:

   - Measure the wall length and height
   - Mark cabinet alignment using chalk
   - Drill support brackets into wall
   - Fix cabinet frame and panels
   - Clean the site and pack tools

   Make sure the list is in proper order. Use bold formatting to highlight urgent tasks, such as safety checks or material pick-up. This way, workers can quickly spot what needs extra attention.

4. **Use Formatting to Improve Clarity**

   To make the document easier to read, use formatting tools like:

Bold text for key instructions or task names	Underline for section titles like "Tools Needed" or "Team Assigned"	Italics to show side notes or reminders like "Handle glass panels with care"	Indentation to align the text neatly

Fig. 2.6.4: How formatting enhances clarity

   Also, keep your font size between 11 and 12 for the main text, and use a simple font like Calibri or Arial for better readability.

By learning how to use MS Word to create job briefs and task lists, Assistant Carpenters can organize their work better, avoid confusion, and help their team stay focused. A well-written document with clear formatting becomes a useful guide during busy work hours. This small skill makes a big difference in managing tasks and building professional habits on the worksite.

2.6.3 Using Excel for Tracking Carpentry Materials

In any carpentry or furniture-making project, keeping track of materials is very important. It helps ensure that you have the right items in the right quantity at the right time. If material is missing or not tracked properly, the project can get delayed. Excel is a very useful tool to solve this problem. It helps create a clean and simple tracking sheet where you can list materials, quantities, costs, and how much has been used. This makes your work more organized and reduces chances of confusion.

With Excel, you can also use basic formulas like addition or subtraction to quickly calculate totals or balance quantities. Even someone with basic computer skills can make and use such a sheet effectively. Once created, this material tracking sheet can be updated daily to keep everything on record.

1. **Open Excel and Create Column Headings**

   Open MS Excel and click on a new blank sheet. At the top row, you can write the column headings. Some useful headings are:

   a. **Item Name:** Write the name of the material like plywood, nails, glue, etc.

   b. **Unit:** Mention the unit of measurement like sheets, litres, or packets.

   c. **Quantity Purchased:** Write how many units were bought.

   d. **Quantity Used:** Note how many have already been used at the site.

   e. **Balance Left:** This will show how many are still available.

   f. **Rate per Unit:** Mention the cost of each unit.

   g. **Total Cost:** This shows total amount spent on that material.

   Each heading should be written in bold for clear visibility. You can also highlight the heading row using a light background color to separate it from other rows.

2. **Fill in the Rows with Material Details**

   Under each column, start filling in the material details. For example:

Item Name	Unit	Quantity Purchased	Quantity Used	Balance Left	Rate per Unit	Total Cost
Plywood	Sheet	20	12	8	₹600	₹12,000

Fig. 2.6.5: Fill in the rows with material details

   Add each new item in a separate row. You can include as many items as needed. Update the sheet regularly as materials are used or new stock arrives.

3. **Use Formulas to Auto-Calculate Values**

   In Excel, you can use simple formulas to save time and reduce errors.

   - To calculate Balance Left, use a formula like:

     =C2-D2 (if C2 is “Quantity Purchased” and D2 is “Quantity Used”)

   - To calculate Total Cost, use a formula like:

     =C2*F2 (Quantity Purchased × Rate per Unit)

   Type these formulas once, and then copy them for other rows. Excel will automatically calculate values for each material row. This makes it easier to check totals without doing manual math.

4. **Apply Borders for a Clean Look**

   To make your sheet look neat and easy to read, apply borders. Select the whole table, right-click, and choose “Format Cells.” Under “Borders,” select the outline and inside borders. This adds visible lines around each box and makes the table more professional. You can also align numbers to the center or right side of the cell for a tidy appearance.

   Using Excel for material tracking helps Assistant Carpenters stay organized and professional. It reduces mistakes, saves time, and gives a clear picture of what material is in stock and what needs to be arranged. By learning to use basic Excel formulas and formatting, carpenters can manage project resources better and support the team’s work more effectively.

2.6.4 Creating a PowerPoint Presentation for a Furniture Layout Proposal

In many carpentry or furniture installation projects, you may need to show your furniture design and placement ideas to clients, team members, or supervisors. A PowerPoint presentation is a helpful way to do this. It allows you to display your ideas clearly using text, pictures, and neat slide layouts. With basic knowledge of PowerPoint, you can create a simple presentation that shows where furniture will go, what materials will be used, and how the final space will look. This makes communication easier and more professional.

Using templates and inserting images or layout drawings makes the proposal more attractive and easier to understand. Even simple PowerPoint skills can help an Assistant Carpenter explain project plans clearly.

1. **Choose a Suitable Template**

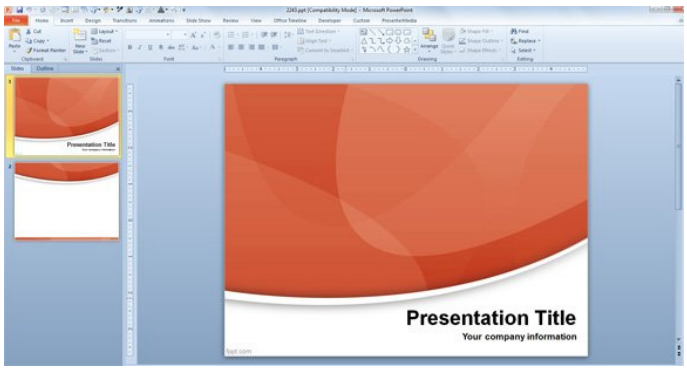


Fig. 2.6.6: Choosing appropriate template

Open MS PowerPoint and select a ready-made template that matches your style and purpose. Templates are slide designs already made for you. They include title slides, content slides, and layout options.

i. Choose a clean and professional template that uses light colors for easy reading.

ii. Use the title slide to write the name of your proposal, like "Furniture Layout Plan for 2BHK Apartment."

iii. Add your name, date, and the client's name to the title slide.

2. Create Content Slides with Layout Details

Now start adding new slides that explain the layout plan. You can use different slide layouts for each part of the proposal.

i. Slide for Room-wise Layout

Add separate slides for each room (bedroom, living room, kitchen). Write short descriptions like "King-size bed with side tables near the window wall."

ii. Slide for Materials Used

List furniture items with materials (plywood, laminate, etc.). This helps clients understand what is being used.

iii. Slide for Timeline or Cost Estimate

If needed, include when the work will be done and a rough cost. Keep your points short and simple, using 3–4 lines per slide or bullet points.

3. Insert Layout Images or Sketches

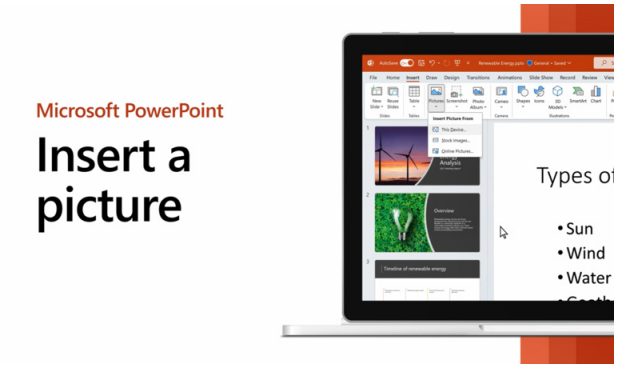


Fig. 2.6.7: Inserting picture into the PPT

Adding pictures is very important in furniture presentations. It makes it easier to show how the space will look after installation.

i. Click on "Insert" and choose "Picture" to add images.

ii. You can insert floor plans, furniture layout diagrams, or sample furniture photos.

iii. Label important areas like "Dining Area," "TV Unit," or "Storage Zone" using text boxes.

If you don't have professional designs, even hand-drawn sketches or mobile-clicked layout plans can be scanned or clicked and added.

4. Use Slide Titles and Transitions

Make each slide easy to follow by giving a clear title, like "Living Room Plan" or "Material List." Titles help people know what each slide is about.

i. Use slide transitions (simple ones like “Fade” or “Wipe”) to make the presentation smooth.

ii. Avoid using too many animations, as they can be distracting.

5. Save and Present Your Work

After completing the slides, go to “File” → “Save As” and give your file a name like “2BHK Furniture Layout Proposal.” Choose the format .pptx or .pdf for sharing.

You can present it on a screen, send it over email, or print the slides for discussion with clients or team members. Keeping the presentation ready in advance shows your planning skills and improves your chances of getting approval or feedback.

Making a simple PowerPoint presentation allows Assistant Carpenters to show their ideas in a clear and professional way. It builds confidence, improves communication with clients, and helps the whole team understand the plan better. By using ready templates, adding layout images, and writing short descriptions, you can make impressive presentations without any design training.

2.6.5 Saving and Organizing Files for Easy Access

In carpentry and furniture-related work, you may create many files such as layout drawings, job briefs, material sheets, photos, or client documents. If these files are not saved with proper names or stored in the right folder, it becomes very hard to find them later. Organizing your digital files is as important as keeping your physical tools and materials in the right place. Good file management helps you work faster, avoid mistakes, and stay professional when sharing work with your team or clients.

Whether you are using a computer, laptop, or smartphone, saving and organizing files with clear names and folders ensures everything is easy to access when needed.

1. Save Files Correctly

Saving your work means keeping a copy of what you have done so far. If you don’t save, you might lose all your work due to a sudden power cut or error.

i. After working on Word, Excel, or PowerPoint, press Ctrl + S to save the file quickly.

ii. Always save your files before closing the software.

iii. Use “Save As” if you want to save a new copy or save in a new folder.

2. Give Clear File Names

A good file name tells you what the file contains without opening it. Avoid names like “Doc1” or “New File.”

i. Include the project name, date, and purpose in the file name.

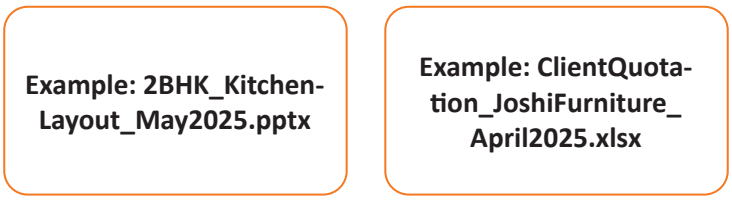


Fig. 2.6.8: Clear file names example

ii. Use underscores (_) or hyphens (-) instead of spaces to keep the name readable.

iii. Do not use symbols like / \ : * ? “ < > | because they are not allowed in file names.

3. Create and Use Folders

Folders help you keep related files together. Think of folders as toolboxes each folder stores a particular set of files.

i. Make a folder for each client or project.
   - Example: Client_Joshi/, Project_GardenOffice/

ii. Inside a main folder, make subfolders such as:
   - Drawings, Bills, Photos, Reports

iii. Move each file into its correct folder to keep things organized.

4. Use Dates to Track Versions

Sometimes you update the same file many times. Keeping versions helps you track progress and changes.

i. Add the date at the end of the file name.

Example: MaterialList_15May2025.xlsx

Example: SiteReport_Final_30May2025.docx

Fig. 2.6.9: Mentioning dates in the file name examples

ii. Avoid overwriting older versions unless you are sure they are not needed.

5. Access Files Quickly

When files are named properly and kept in folders, you don't waste time searching for them.

i. Use the search bar in your computer or mobile to find files by name.

ii. Set up shortcuts for folders you use often.

iii. Backup your important files to a pen drive, hard drive, or cloud storage for safety.

Saving, naming, and organizing your digital files properly helps you work faster, avoid confusion, and stay prepared for future use. It's just like keeping your carpentry tools in the right box it makes your work easier and more professional. Good file management builds your reputation and helps in better coordination with teams and clients.

Scan the QR codes or click on the link to watch the related videos

https://youtu.be/rrBvDcM1quc?si-=gab4h4uJt8i7Tbiw

Types of Organisational Structure

https://youtu.be/4kH1o6rShx8?si-=3KE_69ddcXWyb3bk

Conflict Resolution

https://youtu.be/2ugB_KI7ZR8?si=Vo-CTCMUMJbJKjqku

payment methods used in site-level purchases

NCVET
कौशल गुणवत्ता प्रगति

Skill India
कौशल भारत-कुशल भारत

सत्यमेव जयते
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
MINISTRY OF SKILL DEVELOPMENT
& ENTREPRENEURSHIP

N·S·D·C
RE IMAGINE FUTURE

3. Raw Materials, Tools, Equipment, and Hardware Handling Techniques

FFSC
FURNITURE
& FITTINGS
SKILL COUNCIL
कुशल • सक्षम • आत्मनिर्भर

Unit 3.1: Raw Materials and Timber Classification
Unit 3.2: Introduction to Tools, Equipment, and Machines
Unit 3.3: Safe Handling and Operation of Tools and Equipment
Unit 3.4: Workbench Preparation and Tool Setup
Unit 3.5: Maintenance and Organization of Tools and Workspace
Unit 3.6: Common Hardware Fittings in Furniture Manufacturing

Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this module, the participant will be able to:

1. Identify various raw materials used in the furniture industry, such as hardwoods (teak, oak), softwoods (pine), plywood, medium-density fibreboard (MDF), and particle board, and understand their availability in the market.
2. Describe the physical and functional properties of each material type including texture, strength, flexibility, moisture resistance, and workability, and relate these to their usage in different furniture components such as frames, tops, and panels.
3. Classify timber based on grain, source, and strength, and link their application to structural roles (e.g., legs, carcass), decorative elements (veneers), or functional panels (shelves, partitions).
4. List the categories of tools used in carpentry such as hand tools (saws, hammers), power tools (drills, routers), measuring tools (tapes, squares), and finishing tools (sanders, polishers), and explain their core function.
5. Match specific tools with specific operations such as cutting wood, shaping joints, measuring accuracy, or finishing surfaces, depending on the type of task and material involved.
6. Demonstrate safe handling of tools and machines, including carrying tools properly, switching off when not in use, and using tools in a stable and controlled manner during operations.
7. Identify and use protective guards, tool shields, and safety features present on carpentry equipment to prevent injury, and describe personal protective equipment (PPE) requirements such as gloves, goggles, and shoes.
8. Perform visual and basic technical checks to ensure tools are working correctly, including verifying blades, bits, cords, and switches before beginning a job.
9. Set up a carpenter's workbench by arranging tools, accessories, and workspace components in a clean, safe, and task-oriented layout to support efficient workflow.
10. Demonstrate how to set up and align jigs, clamps, guide rails, and templates before beginning cutting, joining, or shaping work to ensure accuracy and consistency.
11. Describe tool care procedures such as cleaning sawdust and debris after each job, lubricating moving parts, and proper storage of tools to avoid corrosion or damage.
12. Organize the tool area after job completion in a logical order that allows for quick retrieval during the next task, and ensure the workspace is clear of obstructions and waste.
13. Perform a routine tool inspection and report damaged or malfunctioning items to the supervisor, and ensure power cords and electrical connections are secure and safe before use.
14. Identify and name commonly used hardware fittings such as hinges, screws, cam fittings, L-brackets, and drawer sliders used in modular and traditional furniture.
15. Explain the purpose and location of each hardware type in furniture construction and assembly, such as hinges in shutters, cam locks in knock-down panels, or brackets for structural support.
16. Choose and use the appropriate driver bits, screwdrivers, mallets, or jigs to install different types of hardware securely and neatly, based on the furniture product being built or installed.

Unit 3.1: Raw Materials and Timber Classification

Unit Objectives

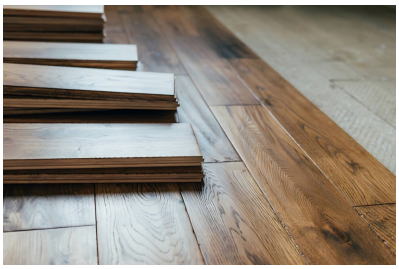
At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Identify different types of raw materials used in furniture making such as hardwoods, softwoods, plywood, MDF, and particle boards.
2. Describe the physical properties, durability, and usability of each material based on its structure and origin.
3. Explain how material choice affects cost, strength, workability, and finish quality in furniture projects.
4. Classify timber types and match them to suitable applications structural framing, decorative surfaces, or core panels.

3.1.1 Common Raw Materials Used in Furniture Making

In the furniture industry, choosing the right raw material is one of the most important steps. Each material has a different look, feel, strength, and cost. Assistant Carpenters must understand the materials they work with to select the best option based on the furniture's use, location, and customer needs. Whether it's a table, shelf, cabinet, or chair, the raw material used affects not only how the item looks but also how long it will last. Knowing the properties of different raw materials helps carpenters make better decisions on-site and in the workshop.

Some materials are naturally found like wood from trees, while others are man-made like plywood and MDF. Some are strong and heavy, while others are light and easier to cut. Carpenters often use a mix of these materials depending on the part of furniture they are making for example, a hardwood frame with plywood shelves or MDF panels with a laminate cover. Understanding each type helps in planning, cutting, joining, and finishing the furniture properly.

S. No.	Type of Wood/Board	Description	Image
I	**Hardwoods**	Hardwoods come from slow-growing trees like teak, oak, sheesham, and walnut. These woods are dense, durable, and strong. They are ideal for furniture parts like legs, frames, and doors. Hardwoods have a rich appearance, are polish-friendly, resistant to damage, and long-lasting.	 Hardwoods

S. No.	Type of Wood/Board	Description	Image
II	**Softwoods**	Softwoods are obtained from fast-growing trees such as pine, cedar, and spruce. They are lighter and easier to work with. These are commonly used for inner frames or non-load-bearing furniture parts and are more affordable than hardwoods.	Softwoods
III	**Plywood**	Plywood is made by gluing thin wood layers with alternating grain directions. This structure makes it strong and flexible. It's widely used in shelves, cabinets, doors, and paneling and is available in different thicknesses and grades.	Plywood
IV	**MDF**	Medium Density Fibreboard (MDF) is manufactured by compressing wood fibers and glue under pressure. It has a smooth finish ideal for painting or laminating. While not as strong as plywood, it is cost-effective and suited for partitions and decorative elements.	MDF
V	**Particle Board**	Particle board is composed of wood chips and sawdust bonded with glue. It is the most economical option and used in low-cost furniture. It is fragile and often laminated to enhance appearance. It requires careful handling due to its lower strength.	Particle board

Table 1.1.1: Different raw materials used in furniture industry

Each raw material used in furniture has its own purpose and benefit. Hardwoods give strength and beauty, softwoods make lightweight furniture, plywood gives stability, MDF is easy to shape, and particle board is useful in budget work. Knowing these materials helps Assistant Carpenters choose wisely based on the job, saving time, money, and effort while ensuring quality and durability.

3.1.2 Understanding Properties and Usability of Furniture Materials

When making furniture, it's important to know how each material behaves. This includes how strong it is, how long it lasts, how easy it is to cut or shape, and where it should be used. These qualities depend on the structure and origin of the material whether it is natural wood or an engineered board. An Assistant Carpenter must match the right material with the job's requirement to make sure the furniture is strong, looks good, and fits the budget.

Each material like hardwood, softwood, plywood, MDF, or particle board has different physical properties. These include how heavy it is, whether it absorbs moisture, how well it holds screws or nails, and whether it is likely to bend or crack. Understanding these qualities helps the carpenter plan better, reduce mistakes, and improve the quality of the final product.

I. Hardwood

a) Physical Properties

Hardwoods are dense and heavy. They have tight grain patterns which give a smooth finish. They usually come from broadleaf trees like teak and sheesham.

Fig. 3.1.1: Hardwood

b) Durability

Highly durable. They resist moisture, insects, and daily wear. Teak and oak are known to last many years without losing strength.

c) Usability

Hardwoods are excellent for high-quality furniture like dining tables, cabinets, and doors. They are harder to cut but perfect for polishing and carving work.

II. Softwood

a) Physical Properties

Softwoods are lighter in weight and have a more open grain. They are softer and come from coniferous trees like pine or fir.

Fig. 3.1.2: Softwood

b) Durability

Moderately durable. They can get scratched easily and need surface protection. Pine may absorb moisture if not sealed.

c) Usability

Easy to cut and nail. Used in frames, internal supports, and temporary furniture. Softwoods are also cheaper and easier to transport.

III. Plywood

a) Physical Properties

Made of thin layers of wood sheets glued in alternate directions, plywood has high strength and doesn't bend easily.

Fig. 3.1.3: Plywood

b) Durability

Very durable if used in dry conditions. Waterproof versions are available for kitchen or bathroom use.

c) Usability

Excellent for cabinet bodies, shelves, and partitions. Smooth surface allows easy lamination and painting.

IV. MDF (Medium Density Fibreboard)

a) Physical Properties

Made from fine wood fibres and glue, MDF is dense and has a smooth texture. It doesn't have natural grains like solid wood.

Fig. 3.1.4: MDF

b) Durability

Low to medium durability. It can swell if it gets wet and does not hold screws as well as plywood.

c) Usability

Great for decorative panels, partitions, and painted furniture. Easy to shape and cut, but needs care during handling.

V. Particle Board

a) Physical Properties

Made from sawdust and glue, it is lightweight and not very strong. Surface is rough unless laminated.

Fig. 3.1.5: Particle board

b) Durability

Least durable. Can break or absorb moisture quickly if not properly sealed.

c) Usability

Used in budget furniture and backs of cabinets or drawers. Must be laminated or painted for appearance and protection.

Every material has its strengths and limitations. Hardwoods are strong and long-lasting but expensive. Softwoods are light and affordable but need care. Plywood offers a balance of strength and cost. MDF is great for design work but must be kept dry. Particle board is cheap but fragile. Choosing wisely based on structure and use helps create good-quality, durable furniture at the right cost.

3.1.3 Why Material Choice Matters in Furniture Projects

In carpentry, choosing the right material is not just about how it looks. It also affects how strong the furniture will be, how easy it is to work with, how long it will last, and how much it will cost. As an Assistant Carpenter, it is important to know that every project has different needs, and selecting the correct material helps complete the work efficiently, safely, and with a good final result.

A material that is strong may be hard to cut. A material that looks smooth may not be very strong. Some materials are cheap but do not last long, while others are expensive but offer great finish and durability. Understanding the balance between these factors helps in making smart decisions during furniture-making.

1. Cost

- Cost is the first thing to consider in any project. Hardwood like teak or oak is expensive but gives strength and a classy finish. On the other hand, particle board is cheap but may not last long.
- Plywood gives a balance between cost and quality, especially for cabinets and partitions.
- If the furniture is temporary or for low-budget use, softwood or MDF can be used to reduce cost.

2. Strength

- Hardwoods are the strongest. They can bear heavy weight, handle rough use, and last for years. That is why they are used in tables, beds, and main doors.
- Plywood also has good strength, especially when used in layers and sealed properly. It doesn't bend easily.
- MDF and particle board are weaker. They may break if heavy objects are placed or if they get wet.
- Choosing a strong material is important for load-bearing furniture or places with high use.

3. Workability

- Workability means how easy it is to cut, shape, and join the material.
- Softwoods and MDF are very easy to work with. They can be cut with simple tools and shaped easily.
- Plywood is also easy to handle but needs care to avoid splitting at edges.
- Hardwoods, though strong, are harder to cut and need more effort and proper tools.
- For curved designs or fine shapes, MDF is often chosen because it gives smooth curves.

4. Finish Quality

- Finish quality depends on the surface texture of the material and how it reacts to polishing, painting, or laminating.
- Hardwoods have a natural grain and polish very well. They look rich and elegant even without lamination.
- Plywood gives a smooth surface for laminates and veneers.
- MDF gives a very even finish when painted, but it does not look good with polish as it has no grains.
- Particle board needs proper surface cover like laminates to look good and last longer.

Fig. 3.1.6: Factors for material choice in furniture projects

The right material brings balance between cost, strength, ease of work, and final look. A carpenter must choose based on the project's purpose strong and rich-looking material for long-term use, or easy and affordable material for short-term or budget work. Understanding these effects helps in better planning and creating quality furniture that satisfies the client's needs.

3.1.4 Classifying Timber Types Based on Application in Furniture

In carpentry, different types of timber are used for different purposes. Not all wood is suitable for all types of work. Some types are very strong and can hold weight, while others are chosen for their smooth look or low cost. By understanding which timber fits which type of job, carpenters can select the right material for the right task. This improves the quality, safety, and look of the final furniture piece.

Timber can mainly be grouped based on its strength, appearance, and internal structure. These groups help in deciding whether the wood should be used for the frame, the surface, or as the middle/core layer of furniture. Using the correct type of timber in the correct place also avoids waste, saves money, and increases the life of the furniture.

I. Structural Framing Timber

Fig. 3.1.7: Structural framing timber

a) **Purpose:** Used for the base structure that holds the furniture together, like legs, frames, and load-bearing sections.

b) **Suitable Timber Types:** Hardwoods such as teak, sal, sheesham, and neem are best suited because they are strong and can carry heavy loads.

c) **Why It's Used:** These woods do not bend or break easily and remain strong over many years. They are also termite-resistant and can handle nails and screws well.

II. Decorative Surface Timber

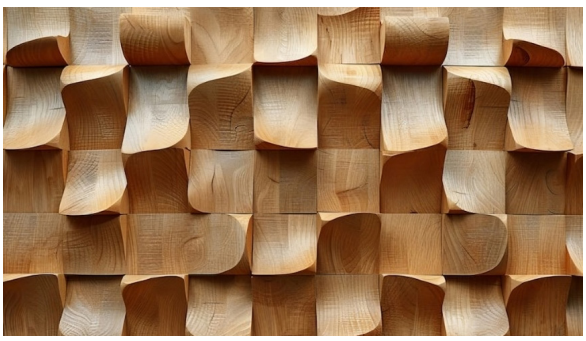


Fig. 3.1.8: Decorative surface timber

a) **Purpose:** Used on the outer layer or exposed parts of the furniture that are seen by users. These parts include table tops, cabinet doors, or front panels.

b) **Suitable Timber Types:** Veneers made from fine hardwoods (like walnut, rosewood), softwoods with attractive grains, or polished plywood.

c) **Why It's Used:** These types give a beautiful finish and smooth texture. They can be polished, painted, or laminated for a classy look. They may not be very strong but improve the appearance of furniture.

III. Core Panel Timber

Fig. 3.1.9: Core panel timber

a) **Purpose:** Used as the inner filling or support panels behind decorative layers in furniture. Core panels do not carry weight directly but provide shape and support.

b) **Suitable Timber Types:** MDF, particle board, and low-grade plywood are often used in the core layer.

c) **Why It's Used:** These materials are cheap and easy to shape or cut. They help reduce the total cost and weight of furniture. When covered with good quality laminates, they serve the purpose well.

Each type of timber has its own strengths. Strong hardwoods go in the frame. Beautiful veneers and surface-quality plywood go on the outside. Cost-effective materials like MDF and particle board go inside. Using the right timber in the right place not only saves cost but also makes the furniture long-lasting, beautiful, and strong. This knowledge helps carpenters deliver better results with smart planning.

Unit 3.2: Introduction to Tools, Equipment, and Machines

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. List categories of carpentry tools such as hand tools, power tools, finishing tools, and measuring instruments.
2. Match specific tools with job tasks like cutting, joining, measuring, or surface preparation.
3. Explain the importance of choosing the right tool based on material, task, and accuracy requirement.

3.2.1 Understanding Carpentry Tools and Their Categories

In the field of carpentry, tools are like trusted partners that help finish each job with accuracy and speed. Every Assistant Carpenter must know the different categories of tools and their purposes to perform tasks efficiently in the workshop or on-site. These tools not only make the job easier but also ensure that the work is done neatly, safely, and within the required time. Whether it's shaping wood, measuring parts, or giving the final polish, each category of tool plays a special role in furniture making and installation.

Hand tools, power tools, finishing tools, and measuring instruments are the four major categories commonly used by carpenters. Each category contains tools that are essential for specific steps of the carpentry process. Knowing their uses helps carpenters pick the right tool for each task, avoid damage to the material, and maintain good quality in the final output. This understanding also helps in caring for the tools, reducing accidents, and improving overall performance.

1. Hand Tools

Fig. 3.2.1: Hand tools

These are simple tools operated by hand without electricity. They include hammers, screwdrivers, chisels, hand saws, and mallets. These tools are often used for basic cutting, fitting, and fixing work where control and precision are needed. They are portable, easy to use, and especially useful in tight or delicate spaces.

2. Power Tools

Fig. 3.2.2: Power tools

Power tools run on electricity or batteries and help complete tasks faster and with less effort. Common power tools include electric drills, circular saws, jigsaws, and electric screwdrivers. These tools are ideal for heavy-duty or repetitive tasks and are commonly used during large furniture assembly or bulk material cutting.

3. Finishing Tools

Fig. 3.2.3: Finishing tools

These tools help improve the final appearance of a wooden product. They include sanders, polishers, files, and scrapers. Finishing tools smooth out rough edges, remove extra material, and give the surface a neat, polished look. They help ensure that the final product is attractive and safe to use.

4. Measuring Instruments

Fig. 3.2.4: Measuring instruments

Measurement tools such as measuring tapes, spirit levels, try squares, and calipers are used to take accurate measurements and check alignments. Correct use of these tools is important for ensuring that furniture parts fit well and the structure is balanced and aligned.

Learning about each tool category helps carpenters stay organized and perform their tasks with confidence. When the right tool is chosen for the right job, the work becomes faster, cleaner, and more professional. It also builds the habit of safety and precision in daily carpentry activities.

3.2.2 Matching Carpentry Tools with Specific Job Tasks

Each step in a carpentry project requires the use of particular tools. Using the correct tool not only makes the task easier but also helps maintain safety and quality. An Assistant Carpenter must clearly understand which tool is suitable for which job whether it's for cutting, joining, measuring, or preparing surfaces. This skill allows work to move smoothly and reduces the chance of errors or tool damage.

When tools are matched correctly with tasks, carpenters can complete jobs more efficiently and confidently. For example, using a proper saw for cutting thick boards ensures clean cuts, while the right screwdriver helps secure fittings tightly. Being able to identify and use task-specific tools also improves speed, accuracy, and the final appearance of the furniture.

S. No.	Category	Description	Image
1	**Cutting Tools**	Cutting tools are used to reduce the size of wood or other materials to the required shape. Hand saws are suitable for straight, manual cuts, while circular saws and jigsaws are better for larger or curved cuts. The sharpness of the blade and the power of the tool affect the speed and quality of cutting.	Cutting tools
2	**Joining Tools**	Joining involves fixing two or more parts together. Common joining tools include screwdrivers, hammers, clamps, and nail guns. Clamps hold pieces in position while glue or screws are applied. Screwdrivers help in attaching hinges or fixing panels, while hammers are used for nails and fitting parts with light force.	Joining tools

S. No.	Category	Description	Image
3	**Measuring Tools**	Measuring and marking tools ensure that furniture is built to correct dimensions. Measuring tapes, try squares, and spirit levels are used before and during work to guide placement and cutting. These tools help reduce waste, avoid fitting issues, and maintain the quality of the final product.	Measuring tools
4	**Surface Preparation Tools**	Before applying polish or paint, the surface must be smooth and clean. Tools like sandpaper, hand files, scrapers, and electric sanders are used for this purpose. These tools remove rough edges, sharp corners, or leftover glue, making the surface even and ready for finishing.	Surface preparation tools

Table 3.2.1: Carpentry tools and their functions

3.2.3 Importance of Choosing the Right Tool in Carpentry

Using the correct tool in carpentry is not just about finishing the job it's about doing it safely, efficiently, and with high quality. Different carpentry tasks involve different materials like hardwood, softwood, plywood, or MDF, and each material reacts differently when cut, shaped, or joined. That's why selecting the right tool is essential. The type of job (cutting, joining, measuring, or finishing) and the level of accuracy required also decide which tool should be used. A wrong tool may spoil the material, reduce work quality, or even cause injury.

Carpenters must understand how to match tools with the work requirements. For example, softwood may be cut with a regular saw, but hardwood may need a more powerful electric saw. Measuring tasks need high precision, so tools like a try square or spirit level are needed instead of rough guessing. The right tool ensures neat work, fewer mistakes, less material waste, and safer working conditions.

A. Based on Material Type

Different materials need different tools because of their thickness, hardness, and finish. For example, hardwoods like teak are dense and need sharp or power-driven cutting tools. On the other hand, MDF or plywood can be shaped easily using regular hand tools. Using the wrong tool on hard materials can damage the tool or result in rough cuts, while soft materials may get chipped or broken if the tool is too aggressive.

B. Based on Task Type

Each carpentry task such as cutting, assembling, sanding, or drilling needs a tool designed for that purpose. For example, a jigsaw is good for curved cuts, while a circular saw is used for long, straight cuts. If you try to use a hammer where a screwdriver is needed, it may damage the fittings. Selecting the right tool based on the task saves time and prevents rework.

C. Based on Accuracy Requirement

Some tasks require very fine measurements and clean cuts, especially in furniture making or fitting joints. For such jobs, tools that offer precision like measuring tape, try square, or laser levels must be used. Using rough tools for precision work can make the furniture look uneven or misaligned. Accurate tools help produce clean, professional-looking results.

D. Impact on Quality and Safety

Right tool selection helps reduce the chance of accidents. Using a weak tool on a hard job may cause the tool to slip or break. Also, correct tools improve work quality, reduce errors, and help in completing tasks faster. They keep the final product strong, neat, and long-lasting.

Choosing the correct tool according to the material, job type, and required accuracy is a basic but powerful skill for every carpenter. It builds trust with clients, ensures better finishing, and keeps the worksite safe and smooth. Every time a tool is picked up, it should be the best fit for the task ahead.

Unit 3.3: Safe Handling and Operation of Tools and Equipment

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Demonstrate proper handling and operation of carpentry tools and machines, following safe usage techniques and posture.
2. Identify safety guards, emergency switches, and personal protection measures required while using powered equipment.

3.3.1 Safe Handling and Operation of Carpentry Tools and Machines

In carpentry work, handling tools and machines safely is not just about avoiding injuries it is also about completing tasks correctly and efficiently. Many accidents on-site happen due to careless usage of tools or improper posture while working. Whether it is a basic hand saw or a heavy-duty cutting machine, understanding how to use the equipment properly ensures longer life of the tool, higher accuracy in work, and personal safety. Every tool has its method of operation, and learning these methods is essential for all Assistant Carpenters.

Using the correct technique reduces strain on the body and prevents fatigue or long-term health issues. Proper posture like standing straight while working on a table, or bending the knees while lifting tools makes a big difference in daily comfort and long-term safety. Machines such as electric drills, routers, or saws require special attention, especially regarding switching on/off, grip, and direction of movement. Safety also includes wearing appropriate Personal Protective Equipment (PPE), cleaning tools after use, and storing them safely to prevent damage or accidents.

Here are some important practices to follow while using carpentry tools and machines

1. **Use tools as per their design**
   Every tool is made for a specific purpose. For example, a hammer is used to drive nails, not to hit hard metal or concrete. Using tools correctly ensures both safety and better performance. Misusing tools can cause them to break or cause injuries to the worker.

2. **Inspect tools before use**
   Before starting any work, always check if tools are in good condition. Look for broken handles, loose parts, or worn-out edges. Using damaged tools can be very risky. Replacing or repairing faulty tools in time helps maintain a safe working environment.

3. **Maintain correct hand grip and body balance**
   Always hold tools firmly with a proper grip and stand in a comfortable position. Keep feet slightly apart for balance, and do not bend your back unnecessarily. A good posture helps prevent muscle strain and keeps the body aligned during long working hours.

4. **Switch off machines when not in use**
   When using power tools, make sure to turn them off and unplug them before cleaning or changing parts. Leaving machines running unattended is a common cause of accidents. Always check that switches are off before plugging in.

5. **Wear safety gear every time**
   Use gloves, safety goggles, helmets, and non-slip footwear while operating machines. These small precautions protect eyes, hands, head, and feet from sharp particles, noise, or falling objects during work.

6. **Clear the working area**
   Make sure the working space is free from extra items, slippery materials, or tangled wires. A clean area helps prevent tripping or accidental contact with machines and improves focus while working.

Fig. 3.3.1 Important practices to follow while using carpentry tools and machines

By practicing these safety measures, carpenters can perform tasks confidently and without fear. Developing good habits in tool usage and posture early on will lead to a longer, injury-free career. Safety is not just the supervisor's duty it is every carpenter's personal responsibility.

3.3.2 Safety Features and Personal Protection in Powered Carpentry Equipment

In carpentry, powered equipment such as electric saws, drills, grinders, and routers help in finishing work quickly and with better precision. However, these machines also carry a higher risk of accidents due to their sharp blades, fast-moving parts, and electrical connections. That is why it is very important to learn about the safety features built into these machines and also follow personal protection rules every time they are used.

Every machine comes with certain safety guards and emergency mechanisms to protect the user. These include blade covers, side shields, emergency stop buttons, and proper wiring to prevent electric shock. Understanding these features helps prevent accidents and keeps the user confident while working. Along with the machine safety, the carpenter must also wear protective gear such as gloves, goggles, ear plugs, and proper clothing to avoid injury. These simple practices make the work environment safer for everyone on the site.

Below are the major safety tools and practices every Assistant Carpenter must follow while working with powered tools:

Safety tools and practices while working with powered tools

Safety guards on machines
Safety guards are metal or plastic covers fitted on machines to cover the moving blades or cutting parts. For example, a circular saw has a blade guard that moves with the blade and covers it when not in use. These guards prevent accidental contact with sharp parts and reduce the chances of cuts or serious injuries.

Emergency switches and stop buttons
Emergency switches are red or big buttons located on the machine body. They are used to stop the machine immediately in case something goes wrong. Knowing where this switch is and how to use it is very important during any unsafe moment. It can save lives by quickly stopping the tool.

Circuit breakers and wiring safety
Some machines have circuit breakers that shut off power when there is overload or short-circuit. Before using a machine, always check that the wires are not damaged and the plug is connected properly. Do not use a machine with loose or burnt wiring. Always report such issues before starting work.

Use of protective goggles and face shield
While using cutting or grinding tools, small particles may fly off and hurt the eyes. Wearing safety goggles protects your eyes from dust, splinters, and flying bits. In some high-risk work, a full face shield may be required for better protection.

Use of gloves and proper clothing
Gloves protect your hands from getting cuts, burns, or splinters. Make sure the gloves fit well and do not get stuck in moving parts. Also, avoid wearing loose clothes or hanging threads while working with machines, as these can get pulled into the tool.

Use of ear plugs or ear muffs
Some power machines make loud noise when in use. Using ear plugs or ear muffs helps protect your hearing over time. This is especially useful in long-duration cutting or grinding tasks.

Footwear and standing posture
Always wear closed, anti-slip shoes while operating machines. Never stand on wet or uneven surfaces while using power tools. Stand firm and keep balance to avoid slipping or falling.

Fig. 3.3.2: Safety tools and practices while working with powered tools

Learning and following these safety steps is part of professional carpentry work. They help in building confidence while using powered tools and reduce chances of accidents. A safe worker is a reliable worker, and using machines with care makes the entire site more productive and secure.

Unit 3.4: Workbench Preparation and Tool Setup

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Describe how to clean and organize the workbench before beginning a job.
2. Arrange tools logically based on the task sequence to avoid clutter and improve speed.
3. Set up clamps, jigs, or supports to hold materials securely during marking and cutting.
4. Demonstrate alignment of measuring tools for consistent reference during layout work.
5. Ensure the working area is safe, well-lit, and clear of obstructions before starting operations.

3.4.1 Preparing and Organizing the Workbench for Carpentry Tasks

A clean and organized workbench is the first step to ensuring safe and efficient carpentry work. When a carpenter begins any task, having a tidy workspace helps prevent accidents, reduces tool searching time, and increases overall productivity. Before starting the day's work, it's important to inspect the workbench, clear away leftover materials, and arrange all necessary tools and supplies properly. This makes the working process smooth and allows the carpenter to focus better on the job at hand without unnecessary delays or risks.

Cleaning the workbench involves removing dust, wood chips, and leftover debris from previous work. Using a brush or a cloth, the surface should be wiped down carefully, especially if adhesives, paint, or polish were used earlier. Ensuring that the surface is clean prevents material damage and keeps tools functioning correctly. Organizing tools in a planned manner is equally important. Each item must have a designated place so that it is easy to find and return after use. This system helps maintain the tools better and reduces wear and tear due to mishandling.

A well-organized bench also ensures that tools and materials do not interfere with one another. For example, sharp tools should be stored safely away from soft materials or cords. Measuring instruments should be placed separately to avoid bending or damage. A thoughtful setup helps save time, as the carpenter doesn't need to stop the job frequently to search for tools or move things around. All this leads to better focus and a faster work pace.

1. Remove Dust and Debris

Fig. 3.4.1: Clearing dust and debris

Before starting the job, the surface of the workbench must be cleared of any sawdust, wooden scraps, or leftover materials. This prevents dirt from affecting new tasks and helps maintain tool performance.

2. **Wipe Surfaces Clean**

Fig. 3.4.2: Wiping the workstation

After removing the larger waste, the workbench should be wiped with a dry or slightly damp cloth. This removes fine particles, glue stains, or polish marks that could interfere with accuracy.

3. **Arrange Tools Systematically**

Fig. 3.4.3: Arrange tools systematically

Tools should be grouped and placed according to their use. Measuring tools, cutting tools, and fasteners must be kept in specific areas so that the carpenter can easily pick and return them.

4. **Check for Space and Safety**

Fig. 3.4.4: Check for space and safety

Ensure that there is enough space on the bench to perform tasks comfortably. Sharp tools should not be left in the open; they must be placed in toolboxes or holders to avoid injury.

5. **Place Materials Neatly**

Fig. 3.4.5: Placing materials in order

Any boards, sheets, or fittings required for the task must be placed flat and in order of use. This avoids confusion and makes it easier to follow the work plan.

Keeping the workbench clean and organized is a habit that supports discipline and quality work. It shows professionalism and care in one's craft. With every tool in its place and no clutter in sight, a carpenter can concentrate better, complete tasks faster, and work in a much safer environment.

3.4.2 Logical Tool Arrangement for Efficient and Clutter-Free Work

Before starting any carpentry job, arranging tools in a logical order is very important. A well-organized tool layout saves time, reduces mistakes, and makes the work area safe. If tools are scattered or placed randomly, it can lead to confusion, slower work, and even accidents. When tools are arranged according to the sequence of tasks, it helps the carpenter move smoothly from one step to the next without wasting time searching for items. This habit builds discipline and increases productivity on the job site.

In carpentry work, different tasks such as measuring, cutting, joining, and finishing happen in a certain order. The tools needed for each step should be placed close together, in the order they will be used. This setup reduces back-and-forth movement and keeps the workbench clutter-free. For example, if you are building a shelf, first you will measure, then mark, cut, join, and finally sand or polish. So your tape measure and pencil should come first, followed by the saw, drill, clamps, and sanding block. Keeping tools in order also helps avoid damage, as delicate tools are not buried under heavier items.

1. Measure and mark tools first

Keep tape measures, pencils, chalk lines, and marking gauges in the front or side of the bench so that they are easily available for the first step.

2. Cutting tools next

Hand saws, power saws, and chisels should come after marking tools. Place them in a safe spot but close enough to reach easily when starting the cutting task.

3. Joining and fastening tools afterwards

Hammers, screwdrivers, drills, nails, screws, adhesives, and clamps should be placed next in the order. This is helpful when fixing parts after cutting.

4. Finishing tools at the end

Sandpaper, polish, brushes, or spray cans should be placed last as they are used only after the main structure is built.

5. Avoid tool overlap

Make sure different types of tools don't lie on top of each other. Each tool should have its own clear space so you can pick it without lifting others.

6. Use tool holders or pouches

Using magnetic strips, toolboxes, or hanging racks can keep tools upright and save table space. This also prevents tools from falling and getting damaged.

Fig. 3.4.6: Efficient tool arrangement for professional workspace

By arranging tools in the right order based on your task flow, you work faster and make fewer mistakes. It also helps you keep your focus on the work instead of searching for tools. Over time, this habit will improve your efficiency and make you more confident at the workplace. A clean, organized, and logical tool setup is a sign of a skilled and professional assistant carpenter.

3.4.3 Setting Up Clamps, Jigs, and Supports for Stable Work Operations

Before starting any marking or cutting work, it is important to make sure that the material stays in one place and does not move. If the board or sheet shifts during cutting, it can lead to mistakes or unsafe situations. That is why carpenters use special tools like clamps, jigs, or work supports. These tools help to fix the material tightly on the bench or work surface so that hands remain safe, and cuts stay accurate.

Clamps, jigs, and supports come in different types. Some are small and hand-tightened, while others are large and can hold big boards. These tools not only improve the safety of the worksite but also increase the speed and neatness of work. When the material does not move, measuring and marking also become easier and more correct.

A. Clamps

Clamps are essential tools that help in firmly securing wood or board pieces to a workbench before beginning any sawing, drilling, or shaping task. They are designed to keep the material from slipping or moving during operations, which ensures both accuracy and safety. Clamps come in various forms such as C-clamps, bar clamps, and spring clamps, each suitable for different job types and material thicknesses.

Fig. 3.4.7: Using clamp to lock material

When a carpenter places a wooden piece on the worktable, using clamps allows it to remain steady, especially during high-pressure tasks like cutting or drilling. This not only improves the quality of the cut but also significantly reduces the risk of injury. Without proper clamping, the material may shift suddenly, causing the tool to slip and potentially leading to dangerous mishaps.

B. Jigs

Jigs are specially designed guiding tools that assist in performing repeated carpentry tasks with consistency. They are often used when the same size of hole, cut, or slot needs to be made several times. For example, if a carpenter has to drill multiple holes at the same distance on a series of boards, using a jig ensures each hole is aligned perfectly without measuring every time.

Fig. 3.4.8: Place jigs for repeating task

By fixing the jig securely to the work surface, the carpenter can place each new piece of material in the same position. This improves speed and uniformity, which is especially important in production work or mass furniture assembly. Jigs not only save time but also help reduce error, fatigue, and material wastage that may arise from manual measurements and marking.

C. Large wooden panels

Large wooden panels or long boards can be difficult to handle during cutting or assembly. If one end is unsupported, it may bend, wobble, or even fall off the table, which can damage the material and create a safety hazard. To manage this, carpenters use adjustable stands or roller supports that keep the entire piece balanced and at the right height.

Fig. 3.4.9: Using supports for longer or wide boards

These supports are placed under the free end of the board while the main part rests on the workbench. This helps distribute the weight evenly and allows for smoother marking and cutting. With proper support, the board does not shift or sag during the task, ensuring cleaner cuts and reducing the chance of material waste or worker injury.

D. Checking grip and balance

After setting up clamps or placing jigs, it is very important to double-check the grip on the material. A quick shake or gentle press on the board can help confirm whether it is securely held. If the piece feels loose or shifts slightly, it means the clamps need to be tightened again to prevent movement during cutting.

Fig. 3.4.10: Check grip and balance before cutting

Proper grip and balance are key to achieving smooth and safe cutting results. If the material moves mid-cut, it can lead to uneven cuts or cause the blade to jam or slip. Rechecking the setup not only prevents errors but also gives the carpenter confidence and control over the tool's movement during operation.

E. Keep hands away from cutting path

Safety is a top priority while working with sharp tools. Once the clamps and jigs are in place, the carpenter must be careful about where their hands are positioned. It is important to ensure that fingers and palms are always away from the path of any cutting tool—whether it's a handsaw, jigsaw, or circular saw.

Fig. 3.4.11: Keep hands away from cutting path

This precaution helps avoid accidental contact with the blade, especially when focusing on maintaining the line of cut. Good practice includes holding the material from the sides or using push sticks when necessary. Maintaining clear hand positions combined with proper setup ensures that the work is done efficiently and with minimal risk.

By setting up clamps, jigs, and supports properly, carpenters can do their marking and cutting work with better control and fewer errors. This practice not only protects the worker but also improves the overall quality and speed of the project.

3.4.4 Aligning Measuring Tools for Accurate and Consistent Layout Work

Before starting any layout task like marking, cutting, or drilling, it is very important to make sure that all measuring tools are aligned properly. If the tools are not used correctly, the marks may go wrong, and the furniture part may not fit in its proper place. That is why alignment of measuring tools is necessary to maintain accuracy and consistency at every step.

Measuring tools such as measuring tape, scale, square, spirit level, and marking gauge help in finding the correct dimensions, angles, and lines. To get the correct results, these tools should always be placed and used from the same fixed reference point, like a wall edge or a corner of a wooden board. This ensures that the markings are straight, equal, and properly placed.

1. **Fix a common starting point**

Fig. 3.4.12: Fix a common starting point

Always begin measuring from a fixed point, like the bottom edge or one side of the board. This common reference point helps maintain the same measurement across the full layout, avoiding confusion or mismatch between parts.

2. **Place the measuring tape straight and flat**

Fig. 3.4.13: Place the measuring tape straight and flat

The tape should be fully stretched and pressed flat against the surface. It should not be twisted or hanging in the air, as this can give wrong readings. Start measuring from the '0' mark, not from the metal hook if it's bent or loose.

3. **Use a square for right angles**

Fig. 3.4.14: Using a square for right angles

A carpenter's square or combination square helps in drawing perfect 90-degree lines for edges or corners. To align it properly, one side of the square should touch the edge of the board firmly while marking.

4. **Check with a spirit level for straightness**

Fig. 3.4.15: Check with spirit levels for straightness

When marking longer pieces or leveling surfaces, use a spirit level to check if the surface is even. The bubble inside the level should be in the center. If it tilts to one side, the surface is sloped and needs to be adjusted.

5. **Double-check before drawing lines**

Fig. 3.4.16: Double-check before drawing lines

After placing the tool in the correct position, check once again before making the final mark. A small mistake in measurement or angle can create big problems during installation.

6. **Mark lightly but clearly**

Fig. 3.4.17: Marking light and clear

Use a sharp pencil or marking tool to draw thin but visible lines. This keeps the wood surface clean and helps avoid errors while cutting. If lines are dark or thick, they may confuse during measurement or spoil the finish.

When measuring tools are aligned correctly every time, the layout becomes accurate and uniform. This reduces waste, saves time during assembly, and helps the carpenter deliver better quality work.

3.4.5 Ensuring a Safe, Well-Lit, and Obstruction-Free Work Area

In carpentry, safety and order are just as important as skill and tools. Before beginning any kind of woodwork whether it's measuring, cutting, assembling, or finishing it is very important to prepare the work area properly. A safe and clean environment allows carpenters to work comfortably without distractions or risks. When the workspace is not ready, small problems like poor lighting, scattered tools, or wet floors can lead to serious injuries or costly mistakes. Therefore, making sure that the work area is clean, well-lit, and free from obstacles is the very first step toward completing the job successfully. This habit builds professionalism and shows that the carpenter is serious about quality and safety.

1. Cleaning the Work Area

- **Clear the bench and floor:** Remove wood dust, waste pieces, packaging, nails, or fasteners lying around. A clean surface allows smooth movement of tools and prevents tripping or slipping.
- **Organize leftover materials:** Place extra wood boards, adhesives, and hardware items back into their storage area. This avoids mixing them with active tools and makes the area less crowded.

2. Providing Proper Lighting

- **Use natural or electric light:** Ensure the bench and tool area are bright enough to see all details clearly. Dim or flickering light can cause mistakes while measuring or cutting.
- **Add extra lights if needed:** If the space is dark, especially during cloudy days or night shifts, use movable LED lights or table lamps aimed at your main working surface.

3. Removing Obstructions

- **Clear walkways:** There should be enough free space to move between the bench, toolbox, and material area. Keep bags, wires, or boards away from walking paths.
- **Tidy up cables and wires:** Use clips or holders to fix long power cords or tool wires. This prevents workers from stepping on them or getting tangled during work.

4. Checking for Safety Hazards

- **Look for water or slippery spots:** Always check the floor. Dry it if it's wet or muddy. Carpentry sites often deal with polish, adhesives, and water, which can create slippery conditions.
- **Keep tools and sharp items safe:** Don't leave cutters, chisels, or screwdrivers lying around. Put them back in the toolbox after use to avoid accidental injury.

5. Arranging Emergency Support

- **Keep a fire extinguisher nearby:** If you're using electrical machines, polish, or thinner, there's always a fire risk. The extinguisher must be kept in an easy-to-reach place.
- **Check the first aid box:** A ready first aid kit with bandages, ointment, and scissors should be on-site in case of cuts, splinters, or burns.

6. Using Personal Protective Equipment (PPE)

- **Wear required PPE:** Start work only after putting on gloves, safety goggles, helmet, and non-slip safety shoes. This protects against dust, falling tools, and sharp wood edges.
- **Check if others are also ready:** If working with a team, make sure everyone has their PPE on before starting any machine or task.

Fig. 3.4.18: Ways to ensure a safe and efficient work area

Why This Is Important?

Preparing the work area before starting carpentry ensures that the job can be done smoothly, safely, and without wasting time. It builds confidence among workers, improves focus, and reduces chances of accidents or tool damage. A good carpenter is not only skilled with tools but also careful about the space they work in. Clean and safe surroundings lead to better quality, more respect on-site, and fewer mistakes.

Unit 3.5: Maintenance and Organization of Tools and Workspace

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Explain regular cleaning, sharpening, and lubricating methods to keep tools functional.
2. Demonstrate how to store tools properly after use to prevent damage and ensure easy retrieval.
3. Conduct basic checks of tool condition and electrical connections before use.

3.5.1 Taking Care of Carpentry Tools (Cleaning, Sharpening, and Lubricating)

Carpentry tools work best when they are kept clean, sharp, and smooth. If tools are not cared for regularly, they can become blunt, rusty, or hard to use. This makes work difficult, reduces quality, and can even cause injury. That is why every carpenter should know how to clean, sharpen, and lubricate tools properly. These small steps protect the tools, save money, and help carpenters work faster and better.

1. Cleaning Tools

Fig. 3.5.1: Cleaning tools after use

Cleaning tools is the first and most basic step in tool care. After using a tool, it often collects dust, glue, or small wood pieces. If this dirt stays on the tool, it can cause rust or blockage. Use a dry cloth or a slightly damp cloth to clean hand tools and measuring tools. For oily or sticky parts, use a mild cleaning spray or a few drops of kerosene. After cleaning, always dry the tool properly before storing it. Do not use water directly on metal tools as it increases the chance of rust.

2. Sharpening Tools

Fig. 3.5.2: Sharpening tools to keep them effective

Cutting tools like chisels, saws, and blades need to be sharp to give clean and accurate results. A blunt tool requires more force and gives rough finishes. Sharpening tools makes the job easier and safer. Sharpening can be done using a sharpening stone, metal file, or grinder machine depending on the tool. Always follow the correct angle while sharpening, especially for blades, to avoid damaging the edge. After sharpening, wipe the blade and store it carefully.

3. **Lubricating Moving Parts**

Fig. 3.5.3: Lubricating moving parts for smooth operation

Many tools have moving parts such as hinges, screws, drill chucks, or adjustable spanners. These parts can get jammed or stuck if not oiled regularly. Lubrication means applying a few drops of machine oil or spray oil to the joints and movable parts. It reduces friction, prevents rust, and makes the tool move smoothly. Be careful not to use too much oil, as it can attract dust.

4. **Safe Storage After Maintenance**

Fig. 3.5.4: Safe storage of tools after maintenance

After cleaning, sharpening, and oiling, always store the tools in a dry and organized space. Use a toolbox, drawer, or hanging board to keep each tool in its place. This avoids misplacing tools and protects them from moisture, which causes rust

5. **Check for Damage**

Fig. 3.5.5: Checking for damage during maintenance

While taking care of tools, always inspect them closely. Look for cracks, dents, loose handles, or bent parts. Early detection of problems helps fix the tool before it becomes unsafe to use. If a tool is damaged beyond repair, it should be replaced.

Why This Matters?

Keeping tools clean, sharp, and smooth makes carpentry safer and more efficient. Tools last longer, give better results, and help carpenters feel confident in their work. Regular maintenance is a habit that every Assistant Carpenter should follow, both in the workshop and at site locations. Clean and well-maintained tools show professionalism and make daily tasks easier to manage.

3.5.2 Proper Storage of Carpentry Tools After Use

After finishing a carpentry job, it is very important to keep all tools in their correct place. Proper storage keeps tools safe, clean, and easy to find the next time they are needed. If tools are left lying around or stored carelessly, they can become damaged, rusty, or lost. They can also cause accidents if someone trips or gets hurt by a sharp edge. Storing tools properly is a simple but smart habit that saves time and money and shows discipline in the workplace.

Proper Storage of Carpentry Tools After Use	**Clean Before Storing** Before putting the tools away, always wipe off dust, glue, or wood pieces. A dry cloth should be used to clean tools, especially blades and metal parts. This keeps tools free from rust and helps them stay in good working condition. Never store wet or oily tools without wiping them properly.
	Use a Toolbox or Tool Board Small hand tools like screwdrivers, chisels, and measuring tape should be kept inside a toolbox. This protects them from falling, getting lost, or being damaged. For workshops, a wall-mounted tool board with hanging hooks is a good option. Each tool has a marked place on the board so that workers can quickly put it back and pick it up when needed.
	Store Power Tools in a Dry Area Power tools like drills, electric saws, and sanders should be stored in dry, dust-free spaces. Use their original box or a shelf with a cover. Keep the cords properly folded and avoid keeping these tools on the floor where moisture or dust can reach them.
	Separate Sharp and Delicate Tools Sharp tools like blades and cutters should be stored separately or inside protective covers. Delicate tools such as spirit levels or laser measurers should be wrapped in cloth or kept in padded boxes to avoid scratches or breakage.
	Label and Arrange for Easy Retrieval Each tool should have its fixed place. Label the drawer or section where the tool is kept, so even new workers can find and return it easily. When tools are always placed in the same spot, they are quicker to find during urgent jobs.
	Keep the Storage Area Dry and Organized Make sure that the storage space toolbox, cabinet, or rack is free from moisture and dirt. Water can cause rust, and dust can jam the moving parts of tools. Regularly clean the storage area just like the workbench.

Fig. 3.5.6: Appropriate storage of tools in furniture industry

When tools are stored properly, they last longer, work better, and save valuable time. A carpenter who keeps their tools safe and organized shows care, responsibility, and professionalism. Easy tool access also improves teamwork, as others can find tools without confusion or delay. Proper storage is not just a habit it's a part of being a skilled and dependable carpenter.

3.5.3 Checking Tools and Electrical Connections Before Starting Work

Before using any tool or machine in carpentry, it is very important to check if it is in good condition. Whether it's a hand tool or a power tool, using damaged or faulty equipment can be dangerous. A broken blade, a loose handle, or a damaged wire can cause injury, damage the material, or delay the work. That is why basic inspection before use is a necessary habit for every Assistant Carpenter. These checks take only a few minutes but help prevent accidents and ensure better performance.

Check Hand Tools for Cracks, Looseness, or Rust

Before starting any carpentry work, it's important to thoroughly examine all hand tools such as hammers, chisels, screwdrivers, and hand saws. These tools should be checked for cracks in the wooden or plastic handles, loose heads, or bent blades. Even a minor crack or looseness can become a serious hazard during work, as it may cause the tool to slip or break unexpectedly while in use.

Fig. 3.5.7: Hand tools

In addition, the tools must be free from rust, excessive dirt, or oil. A clean tool offers better grip and handling, which reduces the chance of injury. If a tool appears too worn or damaged, it should be replaced or repaired before use. Regular inspection ensures the tools stay reliable and safe, and it contributes to better work quality and reduced risk on site.

Examine Sharpness and Condition of Cutting Edges

Tools that involve cutting, like chisels, hand saws, and drill bits, should be closely inspected for sharpness and edge condition. A sharp blade makes cleaner cuts and reduces the physical effort needed. On the other hand, blunt, chipped, or dented blades can result in uneven work and can make tasks more time-consuming and dangerous.

Fig. 3.5.8: Examine cutting edges and tips

Using a dull or damaged tool often leads to increased strain on the hands, wrists, or arms and can even cause slips that lead to injuries. It's always safer and more efficient to sharpen a tool before starting the task. Keeping cutting edges well-maintained not only improves performance but also helps maintain the quality of the finished work.

Look Over Power Tools for Surface Damage

All power tools such as circular saws, electric drills, and grinders should be visually inspected before use. This includes checking the outer body of the tool for cracks, dents, or broken pieces. Switches and buttons should be intact and respond properly when pressed. Vents and openings must be clear of dust or obstruction, as clogged vents can lead to overheating.

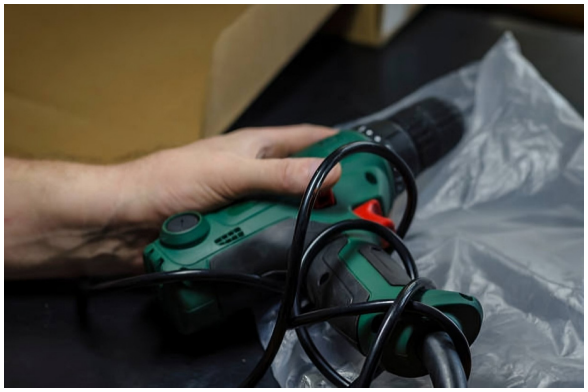


Fig. 3.5.9: Checking power tools for external damage

If any part of the tool looks damaged or dirty, it should be cleaned or shown to the supervisor before further use. A clean and solid tool body helps the tool function safely and smoothly. Ignoring such surface-level damage could lead to bigger technical issues or even electric failure during work.

Inspect Cords and Plug Connections Carefully

Before connecting any power tool to electricity, its wire should be checked along the full length from plug to tool. The cable should be free from cuts, exposed copper, twists, or tape marks that show previous damage. The plug should be firmly fixed and have no burn marks or loose pins. These signs often indicate overheating or short circuits in the past.

Fig. 3.5.10: Inspecting electrical cords and plugs

Using a damaged cord can result in electric shocks or sudden loss of power, especially in damp or dusty environments. If any part of the cord feels hot to the touch, it should not be used. A small delay in checking cables can prevent major accidents and ensure long-term tool safety.

Confirm Proper Switch Operation and Tool Vibration

Once the visual inspection is done, the tool should be turned on and tested for 2–3 seconds without touching any material. This helps confirm that the switch works correctly and that the tool starts and stops smoothly. Any odd noises, strong vibrations, or sudden halts should be taken seriously and reported.

Fig. 3.5.11: Testing switches and movement

If the tool vibrates excessively or doesn't feel balanced, it might have internal damage or wear. Continuing to use such tools can lead to hand fatigue, poor results, or even machine failure. A quick function check before use ensures smoother workflow and avoids interruptions due to tool failure.

Ensure Extension Boards and Cords Are Safe and Dry

When using multiple power tools or working far from a main socket, extension cords and boards are often required. These accessories must also be inspected. Check that the socket holes are firm, switches are not loose, and the board is dry and free from dust. The board should be placed where it won't get wet, stepped on, or overloaded.

Fig. 3.5.12: Ensuring extension boards and cords are safe and dry

Loose plug points and damp conditions can result in electric shocks or equipment damage. Extension cords should not be used with multiple high-wattage tools at once. Keeping these boards in good working condition and using them with caution adds an extra layer of safety to the work environment.

Why This Matters?

Performing basic checks before using tools keeps the worker safe and ensures that the job is done correctly. It reduces the chances of accidents, tool failure, and material wastage. A carpenter who regularly inspects tools and electrical connections shows responsibility and care. These small safety steps go a long way in maintaining a healthy and efficient work environment.

Unit 3.6: Common Hardware Fittings in Furniture Manufacturing

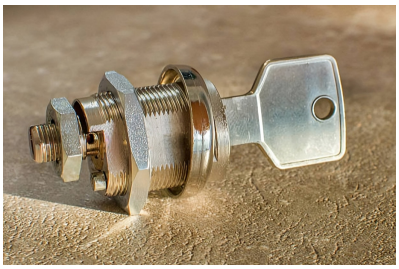
Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Identify different types of hardware fittings such as cam locks, brackets, hinges, and drawer sliders used in furniture.
2. Choose appropriate tools and demonstrate how to fix selected hardware components correctly on wood or board surfaces.

3.6.1 Understanding Types of Hardware Fittings in Furniture Making

In furniture manufacturing, hardware fittings play an important role in connecting, moving, and supporting different parts of the furniture. These fittings help in assembling parts securely and making them functional and easy to use. From doors and drawers to panels and supports, each section of furniture depends on specific fittings to perform well. As an Assistant Carpenter, knowing about the commonly used fittings is essential to complete installation tasks confidently and correctly.

S. No.	Fitting Type	Description	Image
1	**Cam Locks**	Cam locks are circular fittings used to join two wooden panels, especially in ready-to-assemble or modular furniture. They are hidden inside pre-drilled holes and lock in place using a simple twist. Commonly found in wardrobes, cabinets, and storage units for invisible joints.	 Cam locks
2	**Brackets**	Brackets are supportive metal pieces used to connect or reinforce two surfaces at a right angle. Available in shapes like L and T, they are often used to mount shelves, fix panels to walls, or support counters and tables. Brackets ensure strength and stability during use.	Brackets

S. No.	Fitting Type	Description	Image
3	**Hinges**	Hinges are metal joints that enable smooth opening and closing of doors or shutters. They connect a moving panel to a fixed frame. Types include butt, concealed, and piano hinges. These are mainly used in wardrobes, cabinets, and kitchen cupboards.	Hinges
4	**Drawer Sliders**	Drawer sliders are mechanisms fixed on the sides of drawers and the frame to allow smooth sliding in and out. Types include roller slides, ball-bearing, and soft-close sliders. They reduce noise, friction, and improve the usability of storage drawers.	Drawer sliders

Table 3.6.1: Various hardware fittings in furniture industry

Common Hardware Fittings and Their Purpose

1. **Cam Locks**

   These are used to connect panels in a hidden way and are tightened using a screwdriver. Common in modular wardrobes and flat-pack furniture.

2. **Brackets**

   These support horizontal or vertical surfaces and keep furniture pieces stable. Widely used in shelf installation and structural support.

3. **Hinges**

   Allow smooth opening and closing of shutters and doors. Used in kitchen cabinets, office cupboards, and bedroom furniture.

4. **Drawer Sliders**

   Make the drawer movement smooth and silent. Important in furniture like bedside tables, filing cabinets, and dressers.

Knowing these hardware fittings helps carpenters assemble, repair, and install furniture efficiently. Using the right fitting in the correct place improves both the quality and safety of the furniture. It also enhances customer satisfaction by making the furniture strong, reliable, and easy to operate.

3.6.2 Fixing Hardware Components Properly Using the Right Tools

In carpentry and furniture work, knowing how to fix hardware components properly is just as important as knowing what they are. A good carpenter must select the right tools and use them correctly to install fittings like cam locks, brackets, hinges, or drawer sliders. Proper fixing ensures the furniture remains strong, functions smoothly, and looks neat. Incorrect fixing can cause damage to the board, loose fittings, or even injuries at the workplace.

To do this job well, an Assistant Carpenter must first understand the type of fitting to be used, and then match it with the proper tools and fixing steps. The tools used for fixing fittings are usually hand tools or small power tools. Each fitting needs careful positioning, measuring, and fastening with the right method.

1. **Selecting the Right Tools for the Job**

   Each hardware component requires a particular tool for installation. For example, a screwdriver is needed for cam locks and hinges, while a drill machine is used for making holes in wooden or board surfaces. A measuring tape and pencil help mark the correct spot for fixing. If the hole is deep or the surface is hard, a hammer or rubber mallet may also be used carefully.

2. **Preparing the Surface and Marking Correctly**

   Before fixing any hardware, the surface must be clean, flat, and free from dust. Using a measuring tape and pencil, the carpenter should mark the exact position where the component needs to be installed. Accurate marking is important so that the fitting is aligned properly and does not disturb the overall look or function of the furniture.

3. **Drilling and Pre-Fixing**

   For fittings like drawer sliders or brackets, holes are made in the board using a drill machine with the correct drill bit size. Pre-drilling helps prevent the board from cracking. After this, the carpenter can place the fitting on the marked spot and check its position before tightening the screws.

4. **Fixing and Tightening**

   Using a screwdriver or electric driver, the carpenter tightens the screws gently but firmly. Too much pressure can damage the board or bend the fitting, while too little pressure can make the component loose. Some fittings like cam locks have a twist mechanism that requires a correct locking angle for proper grip.

Common Tools and Fixing Practices

Screwdriver

Used to tighten or loosen screws in cam locks, hinges, or sliders. Choose the correct head (flat or star) for better grip

Drill Machine

Used for making clean holes in wood or board. Helps in pre-fixing brackets and sliders without breaking the surface.

Measuring Tape and Pencil

Helps mark the exact points for fixing the hardware in the right position to ensure balance and alignment.

Clamps

Hold the board steady while drilling or fixing. Prevents movement and ensures accurate installation.

Rubber Mallet or Hammer

Light tapping may be needed for press-fit components without damaging the board surface.

Fig. 3.6.1: Common tools and fixing practices

Why This Matters?

Using the right tools and fixing hardware correctly is an essential skill for an Assistant Carpenter. It helps ensure that furniture parts are secure, strong, and operate smoothly. It also saves time, prevents material wastage, and builds trust with clients by showing neat and careful work. Proper fixing also increases the life of the furniture and reduces the need for repairs.

Scan the QR codes or click on the link to watch the related videos

https://youtu.be/QMMEPaxPh-1o?si=elm8pui_FMm7qaTy

types of raw materials used in furniture making

https://youtu.be/vMoqfAD2y1M?si=-EYZIipQN54eJxu4w

Introduction to tools and Equipment (Introduction to Carpentry)

https://youtu.be/7rG4f1BvC9M?si=-Y0QJNWUlp9uB6Rxr

Lubrication Methods

NCVET
कौशल गुणवत्ता प्रगति

Skill India
कौशल भारत-कुशल भारत

सत्यमेव जयते
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
MINISTRY OF SKILL DEVELOPMENT
& ENTREPRENEURSHIP

N·S·D·C
RE IMAGINE FUTURE

FFSC
FURNITURE
& FITTINGS
SKILL COUNCIL
कुशल • सक्षम • आत्मनिर्भर

4. Understanding Drawings and Job Planning

Unit 4.1: Types and Components of Architectural and Product Drawings
Unit 4.2: Measurement Principles and Calculation Techniques
Unit 4.3: Component Breakdown and Bill of Materials (BOM) Preparation
Unit 4.4: Jig Usage and Marking Techniques
Unit 4.5: Job Card Preparation and Work Execution Planning

Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this module, the participant will be able to:

1. Identify and distinguish between architectural layout drawings (used for overall site and space planning) and product-specific drawings (used for manufacturing and assembling furniture units).
2. Interpret different drawing types commonly used in furniture and carpentry, including 2D elevations for height and face views, sectional drawings to reveal internal construction, and 3D or isometric views for better visualization of assembled forms.
3. Recognize and understand common drawing symbols, line types (such as hidden, centre, or dimension lines), and notations used to indicate materials, finishes, joints, edge treatments, hardware positioning, and structural components.
4. Refer to a sample drawing of a wooden table and identify all visible and hidden components, including their relationships in plan, elevation, and section, to understand how they connect during fabrication.
5. Explain measurement principles such as length, width, thickness, and height, and understand how these are represented in carpentry drawings using standard units and notation styles.
6. Apply basic arithmetic and geometry to compute dimensions, quantities, and allowances for cuts and joints, including area calculations for surfaces and volume estimations for material ordering.
7. Convert between units of measurement (e.g., millimetres to inches or centimetres to feet) and use standard woodcutting and material planning formulas confidently in job site conditions.
8. Extract exact values from a drawing of a table to calculate component sizes such as the tabletop area, the required height for legs, and clearances needed for assembly or fitting into a room layout.
9. Break down a furniture product drawing into individual measurable components such as tabletop, legs, aprons, rails, or supports, using annotations and guidelines from the drawing itself.
10. Prepare a detailed Bill of Materials (BOM) including quantity, size, thickness, type of material, edge treatment, and finishing details for each identified component based on a real drawing of a wooden table.
11. Link raw material and hardware knowledge from Module 3 with drawing interpretation to make informed decisions about what materials to choose and in what specifications.
12. Describe the function and advantages of using jigs for repetitive marking and cutting tasks in carpentry, especially where accuracy, speed, and consistency are critical.
13. Demonstrate how to use jigs such as drilling templates, corner blocks, or spacing guides to perform marking tasks on timber components like legs, aprons, or frames with minimal error.
14. Apply precise marking techniques using pencils, scribers, squares, and gauges to ensure joints and fittings are placed at accurate locations before actual machining or cutting begins.
15. Create a structured job card listing each task to be performed in a logical order such as marking, cutting, jointing, assembly, surface prep, and final inspection, ensuring a smooth execution of the fabrication process.
16. Include additional job card details such as task allocation (who does what), expected completion time for each step, tools required for every operation, and material references tied to drawings and BOM.

17. Use a sample wooden table project to demonstrate job card filling, tracking daily progress, and updating status of partial or completed tasks.
18. Use the job card as a live document throughout the fabrication and installation process to communicate progress to supervisors, identify delays, and ensure timely completion of work.

Unit 4.1: Types and Components of Architectural and Product Drawings

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Identify the differences between architectural layout drawings and product-specific views used in carpentry and furniture fabrication.
2. Interpret standard drawing types such as plan views, elevations, cross-sections, and isometric projections with practical reference to a wooden table.
3. Recognize the symbols, line types, and annotations used in technical drawings to denote materials, finishes, hardware points, and construction details.

4.1.1 Understanding Architectural and Product Drawings in Furniture Work

In carpentry and furniture fabrication, different types of drawings are used to guide the design, cutting, shaping, and installation processes. Two of the most commonly used drawing types are architectural layout drawings and product-specific views. Understanding the difference between these helps carpenters plan their work better, avoid errors, and ensure smooth coordination with other professionals like interior designers or site supervisors. While architectural drawings give an overview of the entire space or building, product drawings show detailed designs of a particular item, such as a table, cabinet, or wall unit. Both drawings serve important but different purposes and are used at various stages of a furniture-making project.

Differences Between Architectural and Product Drawings

1. **Purpose and Focus**

   Architectural layout drawings are created to provide a full overview of a room or space. These layouts are usually made by architects or interior designers and are used to define the shape, boundaries, and overall function of the area. They include important features such as wall lengths, furniture zones, flooring patterns, ceiling height references, and the location of electrical points and plumbing lines. The goal of these drawings is to coordinate how each part of the space will look and function, ensuring that all elements fit together properly in the final design.

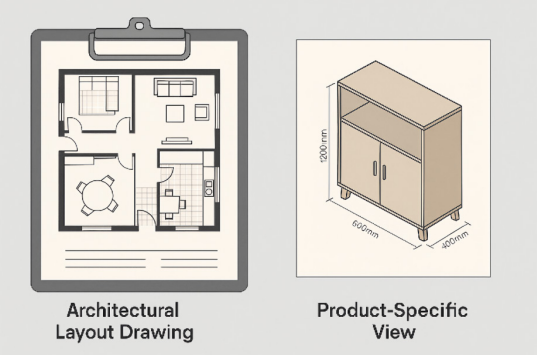


Fig. 4.1.1: Difference in purpose and focus

In contrast, product-specific drawings focus on the construction and detailing of individual furniture pieces. These drawings are much more concentrated in scope and are designed to help carpenters or workshop teams understand how a particular item is to be made. They include complete information about dimensions, shapes, joints, materials, hardware, and fittings. The primary focus is not on where the item goes in the room but on how it is constructed accurately and efficiently.

2. Level of Detail

Architectural drawings generally provide high-level measurements of the site layout. They mention lengths and widths of walls, placement of doors and windows, and floor elevations in units like feet or metres. However, these drawings do not describe the specifics of individual furniture pieces or their internal components. They are useful for visualising the total available space and for aligning furniture placement with the overall interior plan, but they lack the detailed construction information required for furniture making.

Product drawings, on the other hand, include fine measurements such as board thickness, drawer dimensions, screw lengths, joint types, and hinge positions. These are often in millimetres to ensure high accuracy. They allow the carpenter to cut materials precisely and assemble parts in the correct sequence. The detail level helps in reducing errors, saving material, and ensuring a smooth fit for all components, which is especially important in modular and custom furniture work.

3. Use in Workflow

During the initial site visit or recce, architectural layouts are essential. They help carpenters understand the size and shape of each room and decide how to arrange furniture. The layout helps in identifying wall corners, measuring free space, and marking areas where furniture such as wardrobes, beds, or kitchen counters will be installed. These layouts are also helpful when discussing designs with clients or other team members to align on expectations before beginning the work.

In the later stages of the workflow, especially in the workshop or fabrication unit, product-specific drawings become more important. They are used to guide the step-by-step manufacturing process. Carpenters follow these drawings to cut, shape, drill, and assemble various furniture parts. These detailed visuals help in choosing the correct fittings, hardware, adhesives, and finishes. Without such drawings, building complex items with precision and consistency becomes very difficult.

4. Representation Style

Architectural drawings typically use top-down 2D floor plans. These include symbols and notations to indicate walls, doors, windows, electrical points, and furniture zones. The style is more symbolic and generalised, focusing on layout and spacing rather than detailed object design. The purpose is to show spatial relationships, helping multiple stakeholders including electricians, plumbers, and carpenters understand where each service and object is placed in the structure.

Product drawings, however, are more visually descriptive and may include multiple views of the same item - such as front view, side view, sectional view, and even 3D renderings. They may also include exploded views to show how different parts come together. This kind of representation helps carpenters understand the furniture's inner construction and how each component fits in place. The clarity of these views directly affects the quality and accuracy of the final product.

5. Responsibility for Creation

Architectural layout drawings are typically created by professionals such as architects or interior designers. These individuals are responsible for the overall space planning and visual aesthetics of the room or building. The carpenter usually receives these drawings from the client or site supervisor as part of the project documentation. The carpenter's job is to interpret these drawings to determine where furniture needs to be installed, not how to build it.

In contrast, product-specific views are usually made by the furniture design team, workshop head, or project engineer who is responsible for fabrication. These individuals know how the item should be constructed, what materials are required, and what finishing processes will be used. They create the detailed drawings based on material availability, technical feasibility, and customer requirements. These documents serve as working blueprints for the carpenter and help maintain consistency in production.

Feature	Architectural Layout Drawing	Product-Specific Drawing
Scope	Entire room or space	Single furniture piece
Detail Level	General dimensions and placement	Precise part sizes, joints, and materials
Used By	Designers, site managers	Carpenters, fabricators
Purpose	Understand layout and spacing	Guide actual construction and assembly
View Type	2D top-down view	Front, side, exploded, or isometric views

Table 4.1.1: Summary of main differences between architectural and product drawings

Knowing the difference between architectural and product-specific drawings helps an assistant carpenter handle projects more confidently. It allows them to read site layouts correctly and then follow accurate instructions to build the furniture as per product details. This knowledge not only improves work quality but also helps in better teamwork with designers and senior carpenters.

4.1.2 Understanding Different Drawing Types Using a Wooden Table Example

To make any furniture correctly, it is important for a carpenter to read and understand technical drawings. These drawings give exact measurements, shape, size, and position of each part of the furniture. Different drawing types show different views of the same object. By learning how to read plan views, elevation views, cross-sections, and isometric projections, carpenters can imagine the full furniture piece before starting the actual work. Let us take the example of a simple wooden table to understand each type of drawing.

1. **Plan View,** a plan view is like looking at the table from the top. It shows the top surface, the shape, and the length and width of the table. You can also see the positions where the legs are fixed under the tabletop.

- Helps carpenters understand how big the table is from above.
- Shows the exact distance between table legs or edges.
- Useful for deciding placement of screws or supports under the surface.

2. **Elevation View,** an elevation view shows the front or side of the table when looked at from a straight angle. It displays the height of the table and the length of the legs.

- Helps carpenters measure leg height and the position of the apron or frame under the top.
- Gives a clear idea of the overall height and design style of the table.
- Important for matching furniture height with other items in the room.

3. **Cross-Section View,** a cross-section view is like slicing the table in half to show its inside structure. It reveals how parts are joined together, what materials are inside, or where support pieces are placed.

- Useful to understand internal joints like dowels, screws, or brackets.
- Shows thickness of wood boards and hidden supports.
- Important for assembling parts that are not visible from the outside.

4. **Isometric Projection,** an isometric projection is a 3D-like drawing that shows the table from an angle. You can see the top, front, and one side all at once.

- Gives a full picture of what the table will look like when completed.
- Makes it easier for the carpenter to imagine the final product.
- Often used to explain the idea to the client or helper clearly.

Fig. 4.1.2: Different drawing types

Summary of Drawing Types Using a Wooden Table

i. **Plan View –** Top view showing length, width, and leg positions.

ii. **Elevation View –** Side or front view showing height and leg design.

iii. **Cross-Section –** Cut-through view showing internal construction.

iv. **Isometric Projection –** Angled 3D-like view for full visual idea.

Why This Is Important?

When an Assistant Carpenter understands these standard drawing types, they can work more confidently on cutting, assembling, and checking parts. This reduces errors, saves material, and improves the quality of the finished furniture. With regular practice, reading drawings becomes a useful skill that supports growth in carpentry jobs and teamwork at the workplace.

4.1.3 Understanding Symbols and Markings in Technical Drawings

Technical drawings are like a language used by designers, carpenters, and fabricators to share information about a furniture product. These drawings do not use full sentences; instead, they use symbols, line styles, and short notes to explain details. These include what material to use, how to join parts, where to apply finish, or where hardware should be installed. An Assistant Carpenter must know how to read these symbols to follow instructions properly and avoid mistakes in making or assembling furniture.

A. Reading Symbols in Furniture Drawings

Symbols are small marks or shapes that represent specific things in a drawing. They help to save space and avoid confusion.

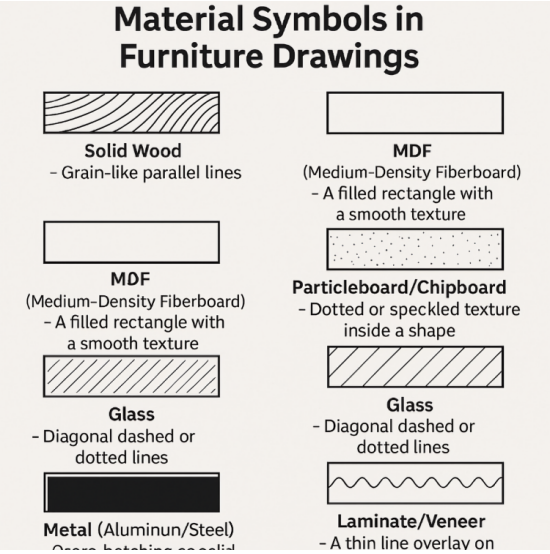


Fig. 4.1.3: Reading symbols in furniture drawings

1. **Material Symbols**

   Different materials like wood, glass, or metal are shown using patterns. For example, diagonal lines may represent solid wood, dots may show particle board, and cross-hatching may indicate plywood.

2. **Hardware Symbols**

   Special symbols are used to mark where hinges, screws, cam locks, or dowels will be fixed. These symbols help the carpenter place fittings at the correct spot without measuring again.

3. **Finish Symbols**

   Sometimes, different finishing materials like laminate, paint, or polish are marked using letters or shading. This helps carpenters know which surface should get what kind of finishing treatment.

B. Types of Lines and Their Meaning

Not all lines in a drawing mean the same thing. Each type of line shows a different part or function.

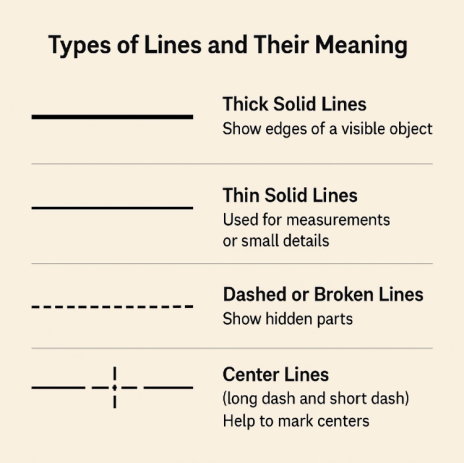


Fig. 4.1.4: Types of lines and their meaning

1. **Thick Solid Lines**

   These show the edges of a visible object like the top or side of a furniture piece.

2. **Thin Solid Lines**

   Used to show measurements, dimensions, or small details that are not the main edges.

3. **Dashed or Broken Lines**

   These lines show hidden parts, like screws inside the wood, or things below the surface.

4. **Center Lines (long dash and short dash)**

   These help to mark the center of round parts like holes, legs, or fittings.

C. Reading Annotations and Notes

Drawings often include short written notes to explain what needs to be done at specific places.

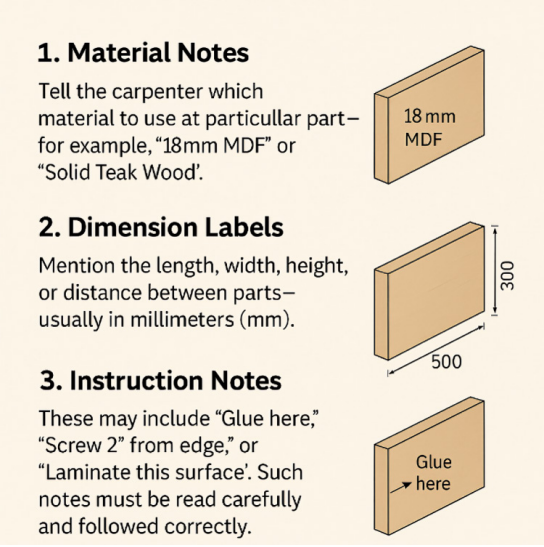


Fig. 4.1.5: Reading annotations and notes

1. **Material Notes**

   Tell the carpenter which material to use at a particular part for example, “18mm MDF” or “Solid Teak Wood”.

2. **Dimension Labels**

   Mention the length, width, height, or distance between parts usually in millimeters (mm).

3. **Instruction Notes**

   These may include “Glue here,” “Screw 2” from edge,” or “Laminate this surface”. Such notes must be read carefully and followed correctly.

Common Examples of What to Look For

1. A hinge symbol on the side of a rectangle means that is where the door will be attached.
2. A dashed circle on a top view can show a cam lock placed inside.
3. A solid rectangle with cross lines may show a section cut, to be viewed in the cross-section drawing.
4. A note like “PU Polish” tells the carpenter which finish to apply on that surface.

Why It Matters?

By understanding the meaning of different drawing symbols, line types, and notes, Assistant Carpenters can confidently follow technical instructions. It helps them reduce errors, save time, and produce neat and accurate furniture pieces. It also improves their ability to communicate with senior carpenters and designers, which builds trust and opens the door to better roles in the future.

Unit 4.2: Measurement Principles and Calculation Techniques

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Explain core measurement terms such as height, width, depth, volume, and thickness, and how they apply in carpentry projects.
2. Perform basic arithmetic and geometry operations to calculate length, perimeter, and volume from a drawing.
3. Convert measurements between units like millimetres, inches, and feet based on drawing scales and worksite practices.
4. Use formulas for area and volume estimation in woodcutting, including how to calculate cutting allowances.
5. Derive practical dimensions such as tabletop size or leg height from a table design to aid in cutting and assembly.

4.2.1 Understanding Basic Measurement Terms in Carpentry

Measurement is the foundation of accurate carpentry. Whether it is building a table, installing a cupboard, or cutting plywood, knowing the correct size and using the right measuring terms is very important. Even small mistakes in measurement can cause furniture to not fit, look bad, or break over time. As an Assistant Carpenter, it is important to clearly understand measurement terms like height, width, depth, volume, and thickness. These terms are used every day on the job site and in workshops, and they help carpenters communicate clearly and work with accuracy.

Each term gives different information about the size and shape of the material or product. Knowing what each one means, where to measure it, and how to use it helps carpenters plan, cut, and fix parts without confusion.

Common Measurement Terms in Carpentry

1. **Height**

Fig. 4.2.1: Height

Height refers to how tall something is from the bottom to the top. In carpentry, height is used to measure vertical pieces like table legs, cabinet sides, or room partitions. It helps in making sure furniture items match the height of walls, windows, or other items in a room.

2. **Width**

Fig. 4.2.2: Width

Width means how wide something is from one side to another, usually measured from left to right. It is commonly used when measuring the front view of a shelf, door, or top surface of a table. Correct width ensures furniture fits in the space without overlapping or leaving gaps.

3. **Depth**

Depth tells us how far back a surface goes, from front to back. It is very important in cupboards, drawers, and kitchen counters. If the depth is not right, furniture may stick out too much or not have enough storage.

4. **Thickness**

Fig. 4.2.3: Thickness

Thickness shows how fat or thin a board or panel is. It is measured at the edge of the material. In carpentry, common board thicknesses are 12mm, 18mm, or 25mm. The right thickness affects the strength and cost of the furniture.

5. **Volume**

Volume is the total space something takes up. In carpentry, it is helpful when calculating how much material will be needed or how much space a cupboard or box will provide. It is usually measured in cubic centimetres or cubic metres.

Why These Terms Matter in Carpentry

i. Height is needed for planning vertical frames, legs, or wall-mounted shelves.

ii. Width helps decide how much horizontal space the item will take up.

iii. Depth is checked when installing items in corners, kitchen platforms, or wardrobe sections.

iv. Thickness affects how strong and heavy the board or plank will be, and which screws or joints can be used.

v. Volume is useful when designing storage units like boxes, chests, and drawers.

Basic measurement terms are the building blocks of any carpentry task. By learning to understand and use height, width, depth, thickness, and volume correctly, Assistant Carpenters can measure materials properly and avoid costly mistakes. This not only improves the quality of their work but also helps in building trust with supervisors, clients, and team members.

4.2.2 Basic Arithmetic and Geometry for Carpentry Measurements

In carpentry, measuring correctly is only the first step. Carpenters also need to perform simple mathematical calculations to find the total length of materials, the outer boundary (perimeter) of furniture, or how much space (volume) a box or cupboard will take. These calculations are important for cutting wood, ordering materials, and ensuring that parts fit perfectly. Drawings often give one or two dimensions, and the carpenter must calculate the rest using basic math skills.

Fig. 4.2.4: Arithmetic and geometry for carpentry measurements

Learning how to calculate length, perimeter, and volume helps the Assistant Carpenter make better decisions while planning, building, and installing furniture. It also saves time, reduces wastage, and avoids rework.

Using Math in Carpentry Tasks

1. **Length Calculation**

   Sometimes the total length is split into smaller parts on the drawing. Carpenters must add all parts to get the full length. For example, if a shelf is made of two pieces of 2 feet and 3 feet, the total length is 5 feet.

2. **Perimeter Calculation**

   Perimeter means the total distance around the outer edge of a shape. If the top of a table is 4 feet long and 2 feet wide, its perimeter is:

   (4 + 2 + 4 + 2) = 12 feet.

   Perimeter helps in planning edge banding or border finishing.

3. **Volume Calculation**

   Volume tells us how much space is inside a box or cupboard. The formula is:

   Length × Width × Height

   For example, if a wooden box is 2 feet long, 1.5 feet wide, and 1 foot high:

   Volume = 2 × 1.5 × 1 = 3 cubic feet

   This is useful when planning storage furniture or deciding how much wood is needed.

Why These Calculations Matter

i. Total Length is needed to know how much wood or board to buy or cut.

ii. Perimeter is helpful when applying surface finishes, borders, or trims.

iii. Volume tells us how much storage space is available or how much load the furniture can hold.

Understanding and applying basic arithmetic and geometry is a part of a carpenter's job. When an Assistant Carpenter can calculate length, perimeter, and volume from a drawing, they can plan their work more accurately, cut materials correctly, and avoid waste. These basic skills also improve confidence and help them take on bigger tasks as they grow in their role.

4.2.3 Converting Units in Carpentry Work

Carpenters often come across measurements in different units such as millimetres (mm), inches, and feet. Some site drawings may show measurements in millimetres, while materials might be marked in inches or feet. To work correctly and avoid errors, Assistant Carpenters must know how to convert one unit into another. Unit conversion is also helpful while reading drawings with different scales or while following instructions from supervisors who use a different system of measurement.

Even a small mistake in converting units can lead to wrong cutting or fitting. So, having a good understanding of these conversions makes carpentry work more accurate and professional.

Common Measurement Units and Conversions

i. **Millimetres (mm)**

   Millimetres are commonly used in technical drawings, especially for furniture. Most board thicknesses, screw sizes, and part dimensions are given in mm.

ii. **Inches and Feet**

   Inches and feet are used in workshops, markets, or for bigger items like room layouts or wall panels. One foot has 12 inches.

iii. **Important Conversion Rules**

   - 1 inch = 25.4 mm
   - 1 foot = 12 inches = 304.8 mm

- To convert inches to mm: multiply by 25.4
- To convert mm to inches: divide by 25.4
- To convert feet to mm: multiply by 304.8
- To convert mm to feet: divide by 304.8

Worksite Examples of Unit Conversion

i. A drawing says a cabinet is 900 mm wide. To know how much that is in inches, divide 900 by 25.4 = approx. 35.4 inches.

ii. A shelf is 6 feet long. Multiply 6 × 304.8 = 1828.8 mm to cut the board in metric scale.

iii. A screw length marked 2 inches = 2 × 25.4 = 50.8 mm, which helps when choosing drill bit size or board thickness.

Why Unit Conversion Is Important

i. Helps read drawings made using different unit systems (metric or imperial).

ii. Allows smooth communication with suppliers, designers, and clients who may use different terms.

iii. Avoids mistakes while ordering, cutting, or assembling furniture parts.

iv. Ensures that material fitting is exact and meets project expectations.

As an Assistant Carpenter, knowing how to convert between millimetres, inches, and feet is an essential skill. It helps maintain accuracy at all stages of the project from reading the design to cutting materials to installing the finished product. With practice, these conversions become quick and easy, helping the carpenter grow more skilled and confident in real worksite conditions.

4.2.4 Area and Volume Estimation in Carpentry

In furniture making, it is important not only to measure but also to calculate how much wood or board will be used. This is done by finding the area (surface space) and volume (space inside a 3D object). These calculations help carpenters plan how much material to buy, how many cuts are needed, and where to add extra space (cutting allowance) to avoid shortages. Estimating area and volume also helps reduce waste and control cost.

I. Calculating Area

Area means the total surface covered by a piece of wood. It is measured in square units like square feet or square millimetres.

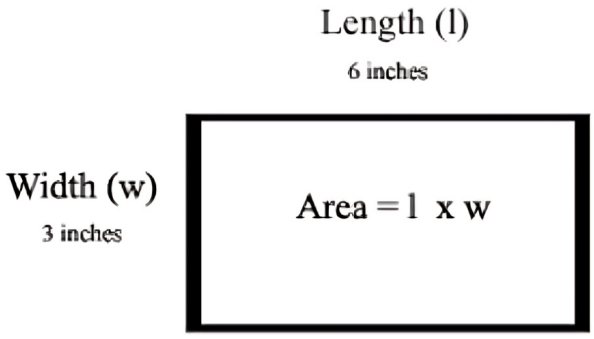


Fig. 4.2.5: Calculating area

i. **Formula for Area of Rectangle**

Area = Length × Width

Example: For a tabletop that is 4 feet long and 2 feet wide:

Area = 4 × 2 = 8 square feet

ii. Area helps in tasks like deciding how much laminate or polish is needed, or how big the board must be before cutting.

II. Calculating Volume

Volume is the total space a 3D item like a block or wooden box takes up. It is measured in cubic units such as cubic feet or cubic millimetres.

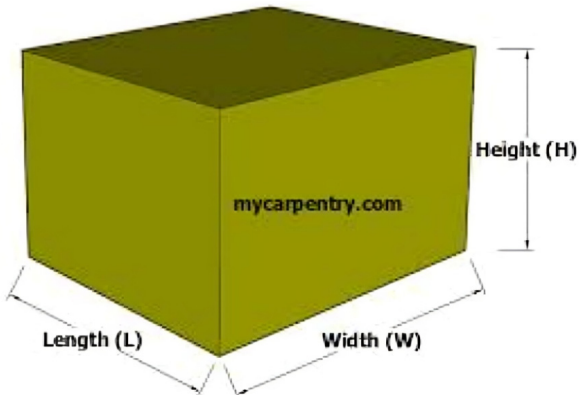


Fig. 4.2.6: Calculating volume

i. **Formula for Volume of Rectangular Object**

Volume = Length × Width × Height

Example: For a wooden box 3 feet long, 2 feet wide, and 1 foot high:

Volume = 3 × 2 × 1 = 6 cubic feet

ii. Volume is useful when making storage furniture, estimating wood for frames, or filling cavities with foam or padding.

Adding Cutting Allowances

Cutting allowance is extra length added to measurements to adjust for material loss during cutting, trimming, or sanding. Wood pieces may shrink slightly due to blade thickness or edge cleaning. Adding a small allowance avoids shortfalls after cutting.

i. **Typical Cutting Allowance:** 3 mm to 10 mm depending on the tool and job.

ii. **Example:** If the final required length of a plank is 1000 mm, you may cut it at 1010 mm to allow for finishing.

Major Points to Remember

i. Area is used when working on surfaces: table tops, shelves, wall panels.

ii. Volume is used for box-type furniture: cabinets, storage benches, and pedestals.

iii. Cutting Allowance ensures accuracy after sanding, trimming, or joint fitting.

Knowing how to calculate area and volume and when to add cutting allowance is a vital part of material planning in carpentry. It prevents errors, avoids waste, and helps in cost estimation. Assistant Carpenters who use these formulas in their daily work become more reliable and precise in their tasks, which builds trust and improves project quality.

4.2.5 Understanding Practical Dimensions from a Furniture Design

When building furniture like a table, it is not enough to just look at the picture or design. Carpenters must be able to read the drawing or design and then calculate the size of each part—like the tabletop, legs, side frames, or supports. These dimensions are needed before starting cutting, drilling, or assembling. Understanding how to derive such practical measurements helps the carpenter prepare materials correctly, avoid errors, and complete the job smoothly.

Designs may show full measurements, or sometimes only the outer size of the furniture. From this, carpenters must calculate the individual part sizes, considering joinery, material thickness, and support gaps.

How to Find Key Dimensions from a Table Design

Understanding Tabletop Size

The tabletop size refers to the total surface area of the top part of the table, which is typically measured in terms of its length and width. This dimension is one of the first things shown in a furniture drawing, and it directly affects how much usable space the table provides. For example, a dining table with a design showing 1200 mm in length and 750 mm in width would have a rectangular tabletop with these exact measurements. These dimensions determine how many people the table can accommodate, and also how it fits into the intended space like a dining area or office.

Fig. 4.2.7: Tabletop size

From a carpenter's point of view, these measurements must be followed precisely when selecting and cutting the board or panel that will be used as the tabletop. The accuracy here is essential to ensure symmetry, proper balance, and overall appearance of the table. If the board is cut too short or wide, it may not match the rest of the frame or might interfere with space planning. That's why this is the starting point for all other measurements in the table's construction.

Calculating Leg Height for Correct Table Height

Leg height is another crucial dimension that contributes directly to the overall comfort and usability of the table. The standard table height for dining or work purposes is usually around 750 mm. However, when calculating the leg height, the carpenter needs to subtract the thickness of the tabletop material from the total height. For instance, if the total table height is 750 mm and the board used for the top is 18 mm thick, then the leg height should be 732 mm. This ensures that after assembly, the final height matches the design.

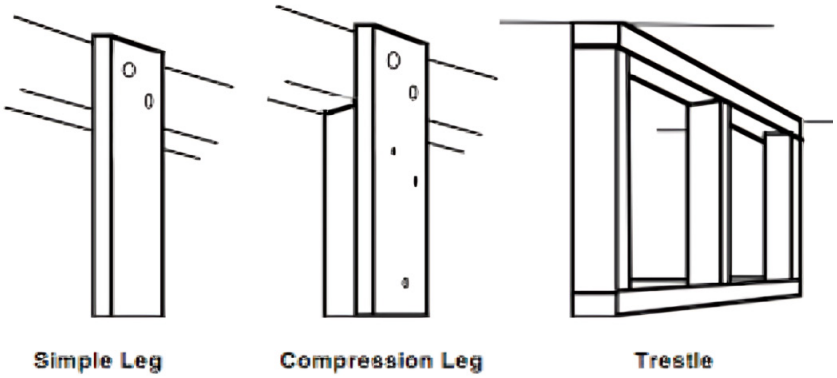


Fig. 4.2.8: Leg height

Getting the leg height correct is important not only for design accuracy but also for functionality. A table that is too tall or short may become uncomfortable for the user, especially when combined with standard chair heights. Moreover, uneven leg height can lead to wobbling or imbalance. Therefore, before cutting the legs, it's essential to double-check the thickness of the tabletop material and do the correct subtraction to arrive at the precise leg length.

Determining Side and Front Frame Lengths

The side and front frames are horizontal members that connect the legs and help hold the table structure together. While the overall length or width of the table is known, the actual length of these connecting frames depends on the thickness of the legs. For example, if the table is 1200 mm long and each leg is 50 mm thick, the front frame will span between the inner edges of the legs, which is calculated as: 1200 mm – (2 × 50 mm) = 1100 mm. This adjustment ensures that the frame fits snugly between the legs without sticking out or falling short.

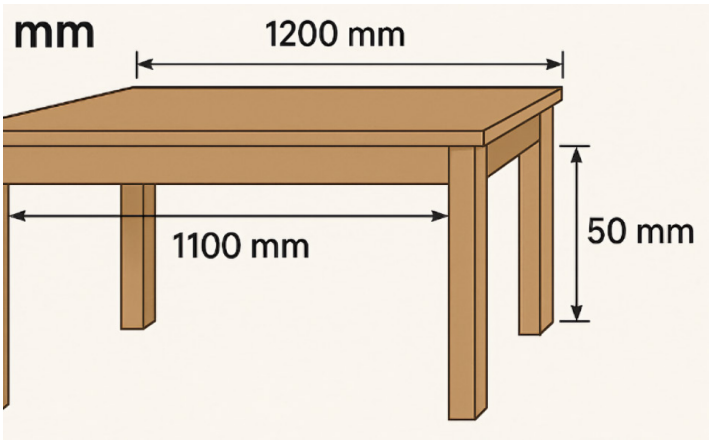


Fig. 4.2.9: Side frame

Failing to adjust for leg thickness could result in a gap between the legs and frame or cause alignment issues during assembly. It's also important to make sure that the screws or dowels used for fixing the frames align correctly. Taking exact measurements and doing the subtraction carefully allows for a clean and professional look and ensures that all components join together as intended in the design.

Sizing the Support Members for Stability

Support members, such as center crossbars or stretchers, are included in table designs to add strength and stability, especially for larger tables. These supports are usually placed between the side or front frames and must fit tightly without putting too much pressure on the joints. Their size is calculated based on the internal clearance between frames, and the piece is often made a few millimetres shorter than the measured gap to allow for easy fitting during assembly.

A support member that is too long might force the side frames apart and damage the joints, while one that is too short might cause wobbling or insufficient support. That's why carpenters often measure the inside space after assembling the main frame, and then cut the support member to fit exactly. Careful attention to this measurement ensures long-term strength and durability of the table, preventing sagging or shifting over time.

Why This Skill is Useful

1. It helps the carpenter prepare exact cut sizes before beginning work.
2. It reduces time wasted during trial and error fitting.
3. It improves material planning and reduces waste.
4. It makes the assembly process smoother with well-fitting parts.
5. It ensures the final product looks as per the design and client expectations.

Being able to break down a design into individual part dimensions is a key skill for every Assistant Carpenter. It shows that the worker understands the structure of the furniture and is capable of planning the job with accuracy. Whether it is a simple stool or a complex wardrobe, deriving practical dimensions makes cutting, fitting, and assembling faster and more precise leading to higher quality work.

Unit 4.3: Component Breakdown and Bill of Materials (BOM) Preparation

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Break down a sample table drawing into measurable components (top, legs, apron) and document their respective dimensions.
2. Prepare a detailed bill of materials (BOM) listing sizes, materials, finishes, and quantities for each part needed in the table project.

4.3.1 Breaking Down Furniture Drawings into Parts and Measurements

Before starting the work of cutting and assembling furniture, it is important to study the drawing and understand the different components involved. Each piece of furniture such as a table, chair, or cupboard is made of smaller parts. These parts must be measured and listed clearly before cutting begins. This process is called component breakdown. It helps carpenters organize their work, plan material usage, and avoid confusion during assembly.

Let us take the example of a simple wooden table. From the drawing, we can identify three main parts: the tabletop, the legs, and the apron (also called the side or support frame). For each part, we must calculate the length, width, height, and thickness, based on the total table size and the method of joining.

Components of a Sample Table and Their Dimensions

1. Tabletop

- This is the flat upper surface of the table. It is the most visible part and is measured by length and width.
- If the drawing shows a table of 1200 mm length and 750 mm width, then the tabletop is:
- 1200 mm (L) × 750 mm (W) × 18 mm (T) (assuming board thickness is 18 mm)

2. Table Legs

- The legs support the table and are vertical pieces. Their height is based on the total table height minus the tabletop thickness.
- If table height is 750 mm and the top is 18 mm thick:

  732 mm (H) × 50 mm (W) × 50 mm (D) per leg
- Total: 4 legs of the same size.

3. Aprons (Side and Front Frames)

- Aprons connect the legs and support the tabletop. Their length is adjusted to fit between the legs.
- If the leg thickness is 50 mm, then for a 1200 mm table length:

  Front/Back Aprons = 1100 mm (L) × 75 mm (H) × 18 mm (T)

  Side Aprons (for 750 mm width table) = 650 mm (L) × 75 mm (H) × 18 mm (T)
- Total: 2 front/back aprons, 2 side aprons.

Fig. 4.3.1: Components of a sample table

Why Component Breakdown Is Important

i. It helps in making an accurate cutting list.

ii. Reduces waste by using only the material required.

iii. Makes it easier to organize parts for step-by-step assembly.

iv. Supports clear communication among team members at the workshop or site.

v. Prepares the carpenter to create a Bill of Materials (BOM) based on these measurements.

Breaking down a furniture drawing into separate, measurable parts is a basic but very important skill for every Assistant Carpenter. It helps in planning the job correctly, buying the right materials, and completing the furniture smoothly. When each part is measured and documented properly, mistakes are avoided, and the work becomes faster, cleaner, and more professional.

4.3.2 Preparing a Bill of Materials (BOM) for Furniture Projects

After breaking down the furniture drawing into its main parts, the next step is to create a Bill of Materials (BOM). A BOM is a detailed list of everything needed to complete the project. It includes the name of each part, its size, type of material, finish required, and the quantity. This list helps carpenters plan their work, estimate material cost, and organize the items before starting fabrication.

For a simple table project, preparing a clear BOM is essential. It avoids confusion, ensures accurate cutting, and helps with ordering materials. Each item in the list should match the drawing and actual construction requirements.

Elements of a Good BOM

1. **Component Name**

   Clearly name each part like “Tabletop,” “Leg,” or “Side Apron” to avoid any confusion.

2. **Material Type**

   Mention the specific material to be used such as “18mm Plywood,” “Solid Teak Wood,” or “MDF.”

3. **Size/Dimension**

   Include the correct measurements of length, width, height, and thickness.

4. **Finish**

   Specify if the surface needs polish, laminate, paint, or is left raw.

5. **Quantity**

   Write how many pieces of each item are needed.

Sample BOM for a Wooden Table

Component Name	Material	Dimensions (mm)	Finish	Quantity
Tabletop	18mm Plywood	1200 (L) × 750 (W) × 18 (T)	Laminate Top	1
Legs	Solid Wood	50 (W) × 50 (D) × 732 (H)	Polish	4
Front Aprons	18mm Plywood	1100 (L) × 75 (H) × 18 (T)	Paint or Polish	2
Side Aprons	18mm Plywood	650 (L) × 75 (H) × 18 (T)	Paint or Polish	2
Screws	Stainless Steel	25 mm length (average)	NA	24
Wood Adhesive	Fevicol SH or equal	NA	NA	As required

Table 4.3.1: Sample BOM for a wooden table

Benefits of Making a BOM

i. Ensures the carpenter does not miss any part while cutting or buying materials.

ii. Helps in budgeting and controlling cost before starting the work.

iii. Reduces waste and saves time by having everything ready.

iv. Useful in explaining the work plan to team members or supervisors.

Preparing a Bill of Materials is a very important habit for any Assistant Carpenter. It brings discipline to the workflow and helps in completing the project correctly and efficiently. A well-made BOM shows planning skills, saves time and cost, and builds confidence at the worksite or workshop.

Unit 4.4: Jig Usage and Marking Techniques

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Explain how jigs help maintain uniformity and precision during repetitive marking or drilling tasks.
2. Identify common types of marking jigs used in furniture workshops.
3. Use a jig to mark symmetrical placements of legs or joinery on a wooden table frame.
4. Apply consistent layout marking techniques using measuring tapes, try squares, and scribers before cutting or joining.

4.4.1 Understanding the Use of Jigs for Accuracy and Repetition

In carpentry, many tasks are repeated again and again-like marking holes, cutting corners, or drilling in the same spot for every piece. Doing this by hand every time can lead to mistakes or uneven results. That's why carpenters use jigs. A jig is a tool or device that helps guide tools like drills, saws, or pencils in a fixed position so that every piece comes out the same.

Fig. 4.4.1: Jigs

Jigs act like templates. They are especially helpful when working on multiple identical items like drawer boxes, table legs, or cabinet holes. When the jig is made properly, it saves time and improves quality because each part is marked or drilled in exactly the same way. Using jigs is not only faster it also shows professionalism and skill.

How Jigs Improve Accuracy and Efficiency

1. **Uniformity**

   Jigs ensure that every mark or hole is placed at the exact same location across all pieces. This keeps all items looking neat and the same size or shape.

2. **Precision**

   With jigs, the position of each cut or hole is fixed. This reduces chances of errors caused by shaky hands or measuring each time manually.

3. **Time-Saving**

   Instead of measuring again and again, carpenters can just place the jig and start working. This speeds up repetitive tasks.

4. **Reduces Waste**

   Fewer mistakes mean fewer pieces are wasted. This saves both material and money.

5. **Useful for Beginners**

   Even new workers can do accurate marking or drilling when a jig is available. It supports learning and safe working.

Using jigs in carpentry is a smart and effective way to improve quality and speed. Whether it's for marking, drilling, or cutting, jigs make sure that all parts are consistent and error-free. For an Assistant Carpenter, understanding how and when to use a jig is a valuable skill that will help in both workshop and site jobs. It shows careful planning and professional work habits.

4.4.2 Common Marking Jigs Used in Furniture Workshops

In a furniture workshop, accurate marking is the first and most important step before cutting or drilling wood. If the marking is wrong, the entire part may turn out faulty. To avoid such problems, carpenters use marking jigs. These are specially made guiding tools that help mark the right position for holes, slots, edges, or joints. These jigs are usually made of wood, plywood, or metal and are shaped to fit the furniture part that needs to be worked on.

Marking jigs are useful when making several furniture pieces of the same design. They make sure each item has the same markings, saving time and preventing errors. Knowing the types of jigs available in the workshop helps the Assistant Carpenter choose the correct one for the task at hand.

Types of Marking Jigs Commonly Used

S. No.	Type of Jig	Description	Image
1.	**Drill Hole Marking Jig**	This jig helps in marking and guiding the exact positions of drill holes for screws or fasteners. It ensures all holes are evenly spaced and aligned along a straight line.	
2.	**Edge Marking Jig**	Used to mark clean and straight lines along the edge of a board where cuts or joints are planned. It helps in accurate edge alignment during assembly.	

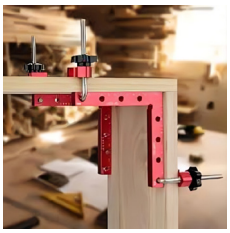
S. No.	Type of Jig	Description	Image
3.	**Corner Jig**	This jig is used for marking precise positions at corners where two boards meet, usually at 90-degree angles. It ensures accurate and aligned frame joints.	
4.	**Hinge Marking Jig**	Designed specifically for placing and marking hinges on doors, shutters, or cabinet panels. It ensures all hinges are fixed at the same height and inset depth.	
5.	**Slot or Groove Marking Jig**	This jig is useful for marking the beginning and end points of grooves or slots in boards. It is especially helpful for drawer tracks and sliding panel channels.	

Table 4.4.1: Various marking jigs used in furniture workshop

Different marking jigs are used in the furniture workshop depending on the shape, size, and purpose of the workpiece. For an Assistant Carpenter, learning to identify and use the right jig is important for improving accuracy, saving time, and producing good-quality work. With practice, the use of jigs becomes a regular and trusted part of professional carpentry.

4.4.3 Using Jigs for Symmetrical Marking in Table Frames

When building a wooden table, the placement of the legs and joints must be the same on all sides. If one leg is placed slightly off, the table may become shaky or look uneven. To avoid such mistakes, carpenters use jigs to mark these placements with symmetry and accuracy. Symmetry means that each side matches the other, which is very important for both appearance and strength.

Using a jig helps in repeating the same marking on all corners or edges of the table frame. Once the jig is set correctly, the carpenter can use it on every similar part without remeasuring each time. This saves time, avoids error, and improves finish.

Steps to Use Jig for Symmetrical Leg or Joinery Placement

1. **Select or Create a Marking Jig**
   A wooden or plywood jig is made with markings based on the table design. The jig includes accurate distances for leg or joinery locations from the edges.
2. **Place the Jig on the Frame Edge**
   The jig is placed on each corner of the table frame. It should sit firmly without slipping to ensure accurate transfer of markings.
3. **Mark the Drill or Joinery Points**
   Use a pencil or scriber to mark holes or outlines where the table legs or joints will be fixed. These marks should match on all four corners.
4. **Repeat on All Sides**
   The same jig is used to mark all legs or connecting joints. Because the jig is the same, each mark is at the same location-creating symmetry.
5. **Double-check with a Measuring Tape**
   After marking, cross-verify the distance from the table edges to make sure the jig was used correctly. If any error is found, correct the mark before drilling.

Fig. 4.4.2: Steps to use jig for symmetrical leg or joinery placement

Using a jig for symmetrical marking of legs or joints is a simple yet powerful technique in furniture making. It ensures that the table frame looks balanced, feels stable, and performs well over time. Assistant Carpenters who learn to use jigs effectively not only save time but also develop the habit of working neatly and precisely a key part of professional carpentry.

4.4.4 Applying Consistent Layout Marking Before Cutting or Joining

In carpentry, layout marking is the first step before starting any cutting, drilling, or joining work. If the marking is wrong, all the work done afterward may also go wrong. That is why it is important to use the right tools and follow consistent techniques to make sure the markings are accurate and repeatable.

The tools commonly used for layout marking are measuring tapes, try squares, and scribers. These help in drawing straight lines, right angles, and marking accurate points for drilling or cutting. Good marking makes the work neat, and all the parts of the furniture fit properly during assembly.

Important Tools for Layout Marking and Their Usage

1. **Measuring Tape**

   Used to measure the exact length, width, or distance from an edge. It should always be held tightly and read carefully to avoid mistakes.

2. **Try Square**

Fig. 4.4.3: Try square

   Helps in drawing perfect 90-degree lines. It ensures that cuts and joints are square, which keeps the frame strong and balanced.

3. **Scriber or Pencil**

   A scriber or sharp pencil is used to draw visible lines or points on the wood surface. The marks should be thin but clear for the cutting blade to follow.

Steps for Consistent Marking

1. Start with Measurement
Measure the required length or width using a measuring tape and mark it lightly with a pencil.

2. Mark Straight and Right Angles
Use the try square to draw straight lines or right angles from the measured point.

3. Use the Same Reference Edge
Always mark from the same edge of the wood (called the reference edge) to keep all measurements consistent.

4. Double-Check Before Cutting
Recheck the markings before cutting or joining. It's always better to correct a marking than fix a cutting mistake later.

Fig. 4.4.4: Steps for uniform marking before cutting and joining

Consistent layout marking is the foundation of good carpentry. Whether it is a simple shelf or a detailed frame, clean and accurate markings make the job faster, safer, and more professional. Assistant Carpenters must practice using measuring tapes, try squares, and scribers the right way. It builds the habit of precision and improves the quality of work on every project.

Unit 4.5: Job Card Preparation and Work Execution Planning

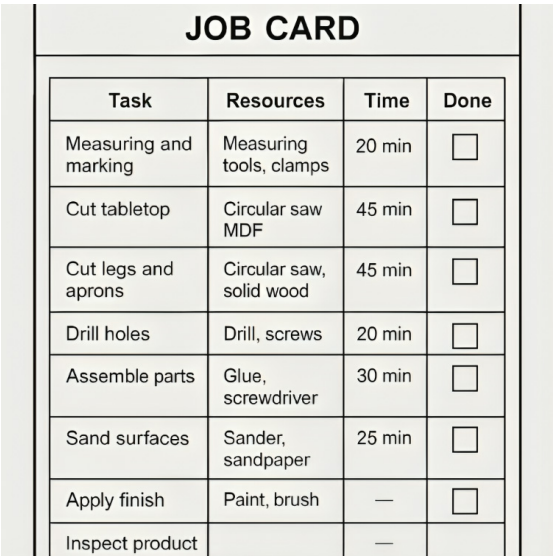
Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Prepare a structured job card detailing task sequence, resource allocation, and estimated time required for each operation in table making.
2. Fill in relevant information such as assigned worker name, tools needed, material references, and deadlines.
3. Use the job card as a reference tool for tracking task progress and reporting status updates to a supervisor.

4.5.1 Preparing a Job Card for Table Making Work

In carpentry, proper planning is as important as skilled hands. When building a piece of furniture like a table, it's essential to organize the work in a step-by-step format. This is where a job card becomes useful. A job card is a written document that acts like a guide for the carpenter. It lists the tasks in proper sequence, the tools and materials needed, the people involved, and the time required to complete each step. It helps the entire team to stay focused, avoid confusion, and finish the project on time with good quality.



JOB CARD

Task	Resources	Time	Done
Measuring and marking	Measuring tools, clamps	20 min	☐
Cut tabletop	Circular saw MDF	45 min	☐
Cut legs and aprons	Circular saw, solid wood	45 min	☐
Drill holes	Drill, screws	20 min	☐
Assemble parts	Glue, screwdriver	30 min	☐
Sand surfaces	Sander, sandpaper	25 min	☐
Apply finish	Paint, brush	—	☐
Inspect product		—	

Fig. 4.5.1: Job card

Job cards are commonly used in workshops, factories, and even on-site projects where many team members are involved. They help everyone know their responsibility. Without a job card, mistakes like missing materials, doing the same task twice, or wasting time are more likely to happen. Therefore, Assistant Carpenters must know how to prepare and follow a job card for furniture-making projects.

Elements of a Table-Making Job Card

1. **Task Sequence**

   Every furniture job has several steps that must be done in the right order. For table making, the job card should start with measuring and marking, followed by cutting the tabletop, legs, and aprons. After that comes drilling holes, assembling the parts, sanding the surfaces, applying the finish, and finally inspecting the product. Writing the steps clearly in the correct order avoids mistakes and saves rework time.

2. **Resource Allocation**

   Each task requires certain materials and tools. For example, cutting needs a circular saw, measuring tools, and clamps. Drilling needs a drill machine, screws, and screwdrivers. The job card should mention what materials are needed for each task such as MDF or plywood for the top, solid wood for legs, glue for joining, or paint and polish for finishing. It should also mention what tools are required. This helps the team prepare everything in advance and work without interruption.

3. **Estimated Time for Each Operation**

   Every job takes time, and estimating this time helps plan the day. For example, measuring and marking may take 20 minutes, cutting may take 45 minutes, and sanding may take 30 minutes. These times should be written next to each task. This helps the carpenter plan the full day or week, complete the job as per deadline, and inform the customer correctly. It also helps supervisors check if the work is going slow or fast.

4. **Assignment of Responsibility (Optional but Useful)**

   In teams where multiple people work together, the job card can also show who is doing which task. This reduces confusion and overlapping of roles. For example, one person may be responsible for cutting, while another does the assembly. This promotes teamwork and improves speed.

5. **Checklist for Task Completion**

   A small box or space can be provided next to each task where a tick mark or signature is made after finishing the step. This helps the team keep track of progress and make sure no step is missed before moving ahead.

Preparing a proper job card is a basic but essential planning activity in carpentry. It improves work quality, speed, and coordination. For an Assistant Carpenter, learning to prepare a detailed and structured job card is the first step toward becoming more responsible and professional. It shows the ability to think ahead, organize work, and support the team efficiently. With time and practice, using job cards will become a daily habit that brings discipline and confidence to the workplace.

4.5.2 Filling in Details in a Job Card

A job card becomes truly useful when it contains all the important information that helps a carpenter or team perform the task without confusion. Writing just the task names is not enough. The job card must also include who will do the task, what tools and materials will be used, and by when the work should be finished. These details help in managing the workflow properly and ensure that each person knows their role clearly.

An Assistant Carpenter may not always prepare the full job card alone, but they should know how to fill in the required parts correctly. This includes writing names of team members assigned to specific steps, listing the right tools for the task, noting the material type and quantity, and understanding the deadline for completing each activity.

Major Information to Fill in a Job Card

Major Information to Fill in a Job Card	
	Worker Name or Team Member Assigned Each task on the job card should mention the name of the person who will do it. For example, "Cutting – Ramesh," "Assembly – Suman," or "Finishing Ajay." This avoids confusion and lets the team work smoothly without wasting time deciding roles on-site.
	Tools and Equipment Needed Along with each task, mention the tools required to complete it. For example, for drilling, mention the power drill, drill bits, and clamps. For sanding, mention sanding blocks or a sanding machine. This makes it easier for workers to arrange all tools before starting the task, improving speed and safety.
	Material References The job card should also include what material is to be used in each step. For instance, the tabletop may require "18mm plywood," legs may need "solid teak wood," and fasteners may include "50mm screws." If finishes like "laminate sheet" or "matte polish" are needed, those should also be noted. This helps the carpenter avoid using the wrong material and ensures correct stock is available on time.
	Task Deadline or Time Limit Every task should have a time frame for completion. For example, "Cutting – 1 hour," "Assembly – 2 hours," "Finishing – by end of day." These timelines help in planning the day better and give clarity on project progress. If the work is delayed, the supervisor can take timely decisions to recover time.

Fig. 4.5.2: Information to fill in a job card

Filling out a job card with correct information is a skill that brings clarity and discipline to carpentry work. It helps workers know what to do, what they need, and by when the task should be completed. For Assistant Carpenters, learning to fill in worker names, tool lists, material details, and deadlines makes them more dependable and capable in real job settings. It builds the habit of working in an organized and efficient manner, which is valued at every worksite or workshop.

4.5.3 Using the Job Card to Track Progress and Report to Supervisor

Once the job card is prepared with all the necessary information, it should not just be filed away or forgotten. It becomes an important tool that helps the team keep track of what has been done and what is still left. It also helps in keeping the supervisor informed about the status of the project. For Assistant Carpenters, using the job card during the work process helps in staying organized, working as per the plan, and reducing confusion.

Ways to Use a Job Card During Work

Supervisors often rely on updates from carpenters to understand if the project is on time or facing any delays. If the Assistant Carpenter can read the job card, check the completed steps, and share accurate updates, it builds trust and shows professionalism. Even if problems come up, a job card helps in explaining exactly where the issue occurred. There are several ways to use a job card during work:

I. Marking Task Completion After Each Stage

Once a carpenter completes a specific activity like cutting, drilling, assembling, or surface sanding they should immediately update the job card by ticking or marking it as "Done." This creates a clear record of progress and makes it easy to identify which activities are finished and which are pending. This tracking method ensures that no step is accidentally skipped or repeated.

Fig. 4.5.3: Track task completion

This practice helps in organizing the workday efficiently. It reduces confusion, especially in teams where multiple carpenters may be working on different parts of the same furniture. It also builds a habit of accountability, as every carpenter becomes more conscious of completing and documenting their tasks.

II. Recording Delays or Unexpected Changes

If a task gets delayed because of unavailable materials, broken tools, or any other challenge the Assistant Carpenter should record it in the remarks or notes section of the job card. This makes the reason for delay visible and allows supervisors to take corrective steps without needing long explanations.

Fig. 4.5.4: Note time changes

By keeping a written note of the delays, the team avoids verbal miscommunication. It also allows supervisors to plan better in the future, perhaps by arranging materials in advance or assigning additional help for time-consuming stages.

III. Using the Job Card to Follow Task Sequence

A job card is not just a checklist; it also provides step-by-step instructions for completing the work in the right order. Assistant Carpenters can follow the sequence to know which task to do next, what tools are required, and how much time should be spent on it.

Fig. 4.5.5: Follow step-by-step instructions

This systematic guidance helps reduce the need to constantly ask supervisors for directions. It supports independent work and builds confidence, especially in less experienced carpenters, by acting as a silent guide throughout the workflow.

IV. Presenting Work Updates to the Supervisor

The job card acts as a live report of the work status. Instead of giving verbal updates, the Assistant Carpenter can simply show the updated job card to the supervisor. This makes it easier to convey which tasks are done, which are ongoing, and which need more time.

Fig. 4.5.6: Job card as a ready report

Such structured communication helps save time during site visits and reviews. It also builds trust with the supervisor, as they can clearly see how the work is progressing without needing detailed verbal walkthroughs.

V. Supporting Quality and Safety Verifications

Apart from tracking tasks, the job card also reminds the carpenter to conduct quality and safety checks. For example, once cutting is done, the job card can prompt a recheck of measurements. Before polishing, it may remind to inspect surface smoothness.

Fig. 4.5.7: Supporting for quality and safety checks

These reminders ensure that mistakes are caught early and safety standards are not compromised. When used correctly, the job card not only organizes work but also plays a role in maintaining overall quality and safe practices at every stage.

A job card is more than a planning sheet-it is a day-to-day guide that supports smooth working and better communication. By using it regularly during work, Assistant Carpenters can stay updated, avoid confusion, and give correct progress reports to the supervisor. It shows responsibility, attention to detail, and respect for teamwork-all of which are important qualities for growth in the carpentry profession.

Scan the QR codes or click on the link to watch the related videos

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CDnzaE7j0cE

differences between architectural layout drawings

https://youtu.be/_2TSRs4_9F-E?si=DDpF9lV_azbmEOb3

Bill Of Materials

NCVET
कौशल गुणवत्ता प्रगति

Skill India
कौशल भारत-कुशल भारत

सत्यमेव जयते
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
MINISTRY OF SKILL DEVELOPMENT
& ENTREPRENEURSHIP

N·S·D·C
RE IMAGINE FUTURE

5. Site Recce, Materials, and Measurement Techniques

FFSC
FURNITURE
& FITTINGS
SKILL COUNCIL
कुशल • सक्षम • आत्मनिर्भर

Unit 5.1: Tools and Equipment for Site Recce
Unit 5.2: Understanding Agencies and Site Operations
Unit 5.3: Site Recce Checklist and Safety Assessment
Unit 5.4: Drawing Interpretation and Layout Marking
Unit 5.5: Site Measurement and Documentation

Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this module, the participant will be able to:

1. List all essential tools and equipment needed to perform a site recce for furniture installation, including both manual and digital measuring instruments such as tapes, spirit levels, and laser distance meters.
2. Match each tool or equipment item to its corresponding use, such as using a laser measurer for room dimensions, a level to check horizontal alignment, and a measuring tape for checking clearance around fixed structures.
3. Prepare a detailed checklist for conducting a site recce that includes tool requirements, safety gear, sketching materials, and documentation formats.
4. Identify the different agencies and personnel that may be present or involved at a furniture installation site, such as electricians, plumbers, civil workers, HVAC teams, and client representatives.
5. Explain the functional roles of these agencies and describe how coordination among them affects the furniture installation sequence, space availability, and site readiness.
6. Interpret a sample job card and demonstrate how to organize work activities on a daily, weekly, and monthly basis based on task lists, dependencies, and available manpower.
7. Explain why a site recce must be conducted before fabrication or installation begins, and describe what kind of data is typically collected during the site visit.
8. Demonstrate the step-by-step process of filling out a recce checklist, including entries for dimensions, obstructions, power outlets, wall conditions, and access paths.
9. Identify common site safety hazards such as loose flooring, exposed wiring, water seepage, or cluttered work zones, and describe simple techniques like hazard tape, chalk marks, or cones to mark these areas temporarily.
10. Read and interpret simple layout drawings showing wall lengths, fixture positions, and furniture placement zones within a room.
11. Accurately mark layout positions on actual floors, walls, or ceilings based on drawings, including correct use of tools for ensuring perpendicular lines, symmetry, and distance from reference points.
12. Perform a layout marking exercise for placing a table in a defined zone, ensuring enough space around the object for movement, access, or additional fittings.
13. Use appropriate measurement techniques (e.g., cross-checking diagonals, checking floor slope) to confirm whether the available site space matches the planned design requirements.
14. Record measurements neatly and precisely in standardized site measurement formats, showing units, tolerances, and references clearly for team and supervisor use.
15. Prepare a comprehensive measurement report that includes all relevant values, obstacles, required adjustments, and client feedback (if any), and submit it in an organized manner for fabrication team planning.

Unit 5.1: Tools and Equipment for Site Recce

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. List the essential tools and equipment used for conducting a furniture installation site recce, including both digital and manual instruments.
2. Match each tool such as laser measurer, level, and tape measure with its respective use during site evaluation.
3. Create a comprehensive checklist of tools and supplies needed for inspecting and documenting a sample mock worksite before installation.

5.1.1 Tools and Equipment Used for Furniture Installation Site Recce

Site Recce means visiting the place where the carpentry work will happen before starting the actual work. It is like a survey or inspection of the site. The assistant carpenter goes to the location to check the space, take measurements, understand the area, and note down any problems. This helps in planning the work properly and making sure everything is ready for smooth and safe furniture installation.

Manual Measuring and Marking Tools

In many jobs like carpentry, construction, or repair work, it is very important to measure things correctly and mark them properly before cutting or fixing them. Manual measuring and marking tools help us do this. These tools allow us to check the size, length, or angle of a material and mark where to cut, drill, or join it. When we use these tools the right way, our work becomes more accurate, neat, and safe. Knowing how to use these tools is very helpful in doing any technical or hands-on job well.

a. **Measuring Tape**

   A measuring tape is used to check the length, width, and height of the room or area. It helps the carpenter know the size of the walls, furniture space, and overall room. Accurate measurements are very important to make furniture that fits perfectly. It also helps in deciding how much material is needed. Measuring tape is small, light, and easy to carry.

Fig. 5.1.1: Measuring tape

b. Spirit Level

A spirit level is used to check if a surface is flat or straight. It shows whether something is horizontal (level) or not. It has a small glass tube with liquid and a bubble inside. If the bubble stays in the center, the surface is even. This tool is helpful to make sure tables, shelves, and other furniture do not tilt or lean.

Fig. 5.1.2: Spirit level

c. Plumb Bob

A plumb bob is a small, heavy tool tied to a string. It is used to check if walls or vertical surfaces are straight. The plumb bob hangs down straight because of gravity. When you hold it near a wall, it shows if the wall is slanting or straight. This tool is useful when making vertical parts like door frames or partitions.

Fig. 5.1.3: Plumb Bob

d. Chalk Line

A chalk line is used to mark long straight lines on floors or walls. It has a box filled with chalk powder and a string. The carpenter pulls the string, stretches it across a surface, and snaps it to leave a chalk line. This line is then used as a guide for cutting or fixing materials in a straight line. It is quick and easy to use.

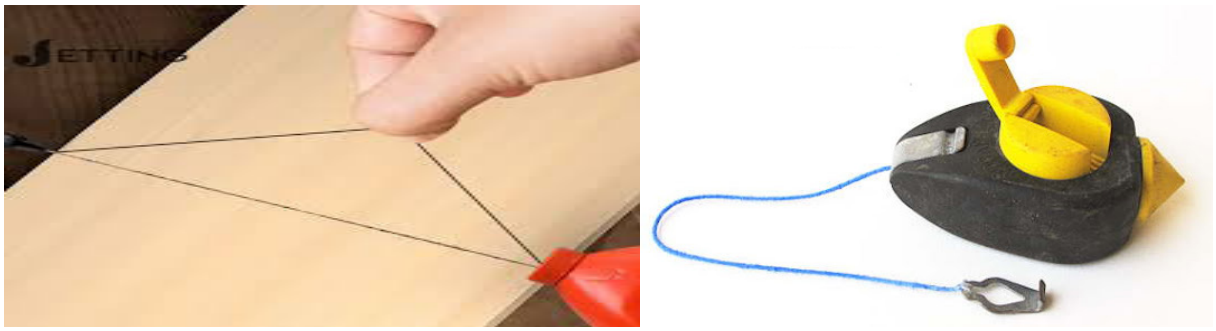


Fig. 5.1.4: Chalk line

Digital Measuring Instruments

Digital measuring instruments are modern tools that help us measure things like length, weight, temperature, pressure, or electricity quickly and accurately. Unlike manual tools, digital instruments show the result on a screen, often in numbers, making it easy to read and understand. These tools are widely used in industries, workshops, laboratories, and even at home.

a. Laser Distance Measurer

A laser distance measurer is a digital tool used to measure distance quickly and accurately using a laser beam. Instead of using a measuring tape, this device sends out a laser and calculates how far it travels to hit an object and come back. It shows the result on a screen in just a few seconds. Laser distance measurers are easy to use, very precise, and helpful for measuring long or hard-to-reach places.

Fig. 5.1.5: Laser distance measurer

Recording and Documentation Tools

Recording and documentation tools are used to keep a proper record of important information, data, or measurements during work. These tools help workers write down or save what they have measured, done, or observed. This makes it easy to check the work later, share information with others, and avoid mistakes. Some common tools include notebooks, forms, checklists, cameras, mobile apps, and digital logbooks.

a. Notebook and Pen

The carpenter carries a notebook and pen to write down all important information. This includes site measurements, problems seen at the site, and ideas for furniture design. Writing everything clearly helps to remember and plan better. Notes can also be shared with the team or client to explain the work plan.

Fig. 5.1.6: Notebook and pen

b. Camera or Mobile Phone

A camera or phone is used to take pictures of the site. Photos are useful for checking site details later. They help in understanding where furniture will go and what space is available. Photos also act as proof of the site condition before starting work. This helps avoid confusion or mistakes.

Fig. 5.1.7: Camera or Mobile phone

Inspection and Safety Aids

Inspection and safety aids are tools used to check if equipment, machines, or work areas are safe and working properly. These tools help find any damage, errors, or unsafe conditions before they cause problems. They are also used to make sure that everything is done correctly and safely. Common inspection aids include flashlights, mirrors, magnifying glasses, and measuring gauges.

a. Flashlight

A flashlight is used when the site is dark or does not have proper lighting. It helps to check corners, under sinks, or inside cupboards. This tool makes sure no important part of the site is missed. Seeing everything clearly helps in planning better and avoiding safety risks.

Fig. 5.1.8: Flashlight

b. Safety Shoes and Helmet

Safety shoes protect the carpenter's feet from nails, heavy tools, or falling objects. A helmet protects the head from injury. These are very important when working at busy or under-construction sites. Wearing safety gear keeps the carpenter safe and ready for any emergency during the recce.

Fig. 5.1.9: Safety shoes and helmet

Why These Tools Matter

Using the right tools during a site recce is very important for the assistant carpenter. These tools make the job easier, faster, and more accurate. Each tool has a special use that helps in planning and preparing the furniture work properly. They also help in finding any problems at the site early and keeping a record for future reference.

Get accurate measurements

With tools like a measuring tape and spirit level, the assistant carpenter can measure the space correctly. This helps in knowing the exact length, width, and height of the area. Accurate measurements are important for making furniture that fits well without any gaps or mistakes.

Plan furniture size and placement

After measuring the site, the carpenter can decide what size of furniture will fit and where it can be placed. This helps to avoid blocking doors, windows, or walking areas. Proper planning saves time and makes the room look neat and comfortable.

Find any problems early (like damp walls, broken flooring)

While checking the site, the carpenter may find issues like water leaks, damp walls, or broken floors. Noticing these problems early is helpful because they can be fixed before starting the work. This prevents damage to the new furniture and saves money later.

Keep records for correct work later

Taking notes and photos during the recce helps in remembering all the details. These records can be used while making the furniture or during installation. They also help in explaining things to the client or other team members clearly.

Fig. 5.1.10: Importance of tools

5.1.2 Matching Tools with Their Uses During Site Evaluation

Before starting any furniture work, it is very important to know the right tools and how to use them during a site recce. Each tool has a special job that helps the carpenter take correct measurements, check surfaces, and record important details. When you understand which tool to use for what purpose, your work becomes easier, faster, and more accurate. This section helps you match common tools with their correct uses during site inspection so that you can prepare well for furniture installation.

Tool Name	Use During Site Evaluation
Laser Measurer	Measures long distances quickly and accurately using laser. Best for large rooms and high walls.
Measuring Tape	Measures short to medium lengths like wall size, window area, or furniture space manually.
Spirit Level (Level Tool)	Checks if surfaces (floors, shelves, platforms) are perfectly flat and straight.
Plumb Bob	Checks if a wall, pillar, or edge is perfectly vertical (up and down).
Chalk Line Tool	Makes long straight lines on the floor or wall to guide furniture placement.
Notebook and Pen	Used to write all measurements and site details for future use.
Camera or Mobile	Takes photos of the site to record positions, damages, or important areas.
Flashlight or Torch	Helps to see in dark corners or under staircases where light is low.
Safety Helmet & Shoes	Keeps the carpenter safe from falling objects or sharp items during recce.

Table 5.1.1: Matching tools with their uses during site evaluation

5.1.3 Creating a Comprehensive Checklist for Site Recce Tools and Supplies

Before beginning any furniture installation project, the assistant carpenter must be fully prepared to conduct a detailed site recce. A structured checklist ensures that no tool or supply is forgotten and all inspection tasks can be carried out smoothly. The checklist should include tools for measurement, alignment, documentation, visibility, and personal safety. Organizing these tools in categories helps simplify packing and usage during the recce.

A. Measuring and Marking Tools

Measuring and marking tools are essential for capturing accurate dimensions and placing layout guides during site work. They ensure that all parts fit properly and follow the design plan. These tools help avoid costly mistakes by providing exact measurements and clear reference points. Proper use of these tools saves time and improves the quality of installation.

i. Measuring Tape

This flexible tool is ideal for measuring walls, windows, and smaller spaces. It can bend around corners and reach tight spots easily. It's a basic but vital tool for any site measurement, especially for short to medium distances.

ii. Laser Distance Measurer

Uses a laser beam to quickly and precisely measure long distances, like room lengths or ceiling heights. It is especially useful when measuring hard-to-reach places or when working alone, providing fast results without needing a second person.

iii. Chalk Line Tool

Helps mark straight and long lines on surfaces such as walls and floors. This is crucial when aligning cabinets, panels, or furniture to ensure they are installed in perfect straight lines during layout preparation.

B. Alignment and Verification Tools

Alignment and verification tools check if surfaces or structures are straight and properly positioned. They help maintain both the functionality and aesthetics of construction and furniture installations. These tools prevent errors like tilted shelves or leaning walls, which can cause damage or look unprofessional.

i. Spirit Level

Measures whether a surface is perfectly horizontal or level. It is commonly used to check floors, shelves, tables, or countertops, making sure they are flat and stable to avoid uneven or shaky installations.

ii. Plumb Bob

This tool ensures vertical alignment by using gravity. It's commonly used to check if walls, door frames, or partitions are standing straight, which is essential for structural integrity and correct installation of tall elements.

C. Documentation Supplies

Documenting measurements and site details is critical for clear communication and accurate work execution. These supplies help keep track of important data and provide visual references that can be reviewed later. Well-maintained records reduce errors and simplify project coordination.

i. Notebook and Pen/Pencil

Used to write down all measurements, observations, and instructions during site visits. This helps workers remember specific details, track progress, and avoid relying solely on memory.

ii. Camera or Mobile Phone

Captures photos of the site conditions, existing fixtures, or any issues like damages and obstructions. These images assist in planning, problem-solving, and sharing information with clients or team members.

D. Visibility and Lighting Tools

Proper lighting is crucial for inspecting areas that are hard to see. These tools illuminate dark corners and enclosed spaces to ensure thorough checks. Good visibility helps identify issues that could be missed otherwise, leading to safer and more accurate work.

i. Flashlight or Torch

Provides focused light to inspect spaces such as cupboards, lofts, or under sinks. It allows you to see clearly in low-light areas, ensuring no hidden problems go unnoticed during inspections.

E. Safety Gear

Safety gear protects workers from injuries that can happen during site visits, especially in active construction zones. Using proper protective equipment reduces the risk of accidents and helps comply with safety standards. It is a necessary part of responsible work practices.

i. Safety Helmet

Protects your head from falling objects, bumps, or other hazards on the site. It's an essential item when walking around areas with overhead risks or ongoing construction activities.

ii. Safety Shoes

Designed to shield feet from sharp nails, heavy tools, or uneven surfaces. They also provide grip on slippery or rough floors, reducing the chance of slips or puncture injuries.

F. Optional but Useful Supplies

These additional supplies are not mandatory but improve efficiency and organization during site visits. They support marking, measuring, and document handling tasks, making work smoother and more precise.

i. Measuring Scale/Ruler

Useful for verifying small measurements and drawing straight lines on paper or surfaces. It complements other measuring tools when detail work is needed.

ii. Marker Pen

Creates visible, lasting marks on surfaces or tapes. It helps in clearly identifying measurement points or notes that need to stand out.

iii. Masking Tape

Can be used to temporarily fix papers, sketches, or layout plans onto walls or other surfaces. It's easy to remove and doesn't damage the surface underneath.

iv. Clipboard or Folder

Keeps documents, drawings, and notes organized and protected. It helps carry paperwork securely during site visits, preventing loss or damage.

Sample Checklist Table: Site Recce Tools and Supplies

Category	Tool/Supply	Purpose
Measuring Tools	Measuring Tape, Laser Measurer	Manual measurement of dimensions, Quick long-range measurements
Marking Tools	Chalk Line Tool	Drawing straight layout lines
Alignment Tools	Spirit Level, Plumb Bob	Checking horizontal flatness, Verifying vertical alignment
Documentation Supplies	Notebook & Pen, Camera/Mobile Phone	Writing down site data, Visual recording of site conditions
Lighting Tools	Flashlight/Torch	Inspection in poorly lit spaces
Personal Safety Equipment	Safety Helmet, Safety Shoes	Head protection at active sites, Foot protection from hazards
Additional Supplies (Optional)	Masking Tape, Marker Pen, Clipboard/Folder	Layout marking and notes on surfaces, Holding paperwork and checklists

Table 5.1.2: Checklist for site Recce tools and supplies

Having a pre-prepared checklist ensures that the assistant carpenter can complete a thorough inspection and avoid delays caused by missing tools. It promotes safe, efficient, and organized worksite evaluation, which directly contributes to the accuracy of furniture planning and installation.

Unit 5.2: Understanding Agencies and Site Operations

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Identify various external and internal agencies working at a site, such as electricians, plumbers, masons, carpenters, and site managers.
2. Describe the scope of each agency's involvement and how their work influences carpentry timelines and layout feasibility.
3. Explain how collaboration between agencies is critical to safe, efficient site functioning and avoids delays.
4. Demonstrate the process of aligning job-related tasks with timelines (daily, weekly, monthly) using a sample job card.

5.2.1 Identifying Various External and Internal Agencies at a Site

When a carpenter goes to work on a site, they are not alone. Many other skilled people also work there. These people are called agencies, and each of them does a different job. It is important for the assistant carpenter to know who is working at the site and what their tasks are. Along with this, they should understand the main site operations these are the steps or jobs that need to be done to complete the project. Good understanding of agencies and site operations helps in working smoothly, avoiding mistakes, and saving time.

What are Agencies?

Agencies are different types of skilled workers or professionals present at the site. Each agency has a specific duty that supports the entire project. It is important to understand their work and cooperate with them for smooth and timely work completion.

i. **Carpenters**

Carpenters are experts in making and installing wooden furniture. They cut, shape, and fix items like cupboards, tables, doors, and shelves. They work with wood, tools, and machines to create strong and good-looking furniture. Carpenters follow design plans and use measurements to ensure that each item fits perfectly in its space. They also do finishing work like sanding and polishing. Their work is very important to the look and function of any home or office.

Fig. 5.2.1: Carpenter

ii. Electricians

Electricians handle all the electrical work on the site. They install wires, switches, lights, fans, and sockets safely and correctly. They also check that the power supply is working well in every room. Before the carpenter drills or cuts anything, it's important to know where the wires are to avoid damage or accidents. Electricians work with safety tools and follow rules to prevent short circuits or shocks. Good coordination with them avoids errors in furniture placement.

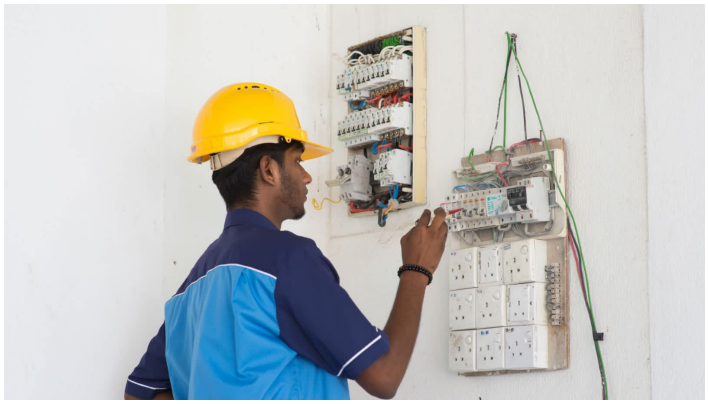


Fig. 5.2.2: Electrician

iii. Plumbers

Plumbers are responsible for fitting water pipes, taps, drainage lines, and bathroom fittings. They also check if water is flowing properly without any leaks. Plumbers usually work in kitchens, bathrooms, and areas where water supply or drainage is needed. The carpenter must check with the plumber before fixing anything near water lines to avoid breaking any pipe. Their work is essential for the daily use of water in homes and offices.

Fig. 5.2.3: Plumber

iv. Painters

Painters give the final finish to the walls, ceilings, and sometimes to the wooden furniture as well. They apply paint, polish, or coatings to make surfaces look good and last longer. Painters must wait until carpentry and other work is completed to avoid damage to fresh paint. Sometimes, carpenters and painters work together to polish wooden items. The assistant carpenter should know the painter's schedule to avoid delays or rework.

Fig. 5.2.4: Painter

v. Site Supervisor

The site supervisor is like the team leader at the work site. They manage the full team of workers and ensure that every job is done on time and correctly. They check the quality of work and solve any problems that may come up. The supervisor keeps records of who is working and what materials are being used. The assistant carpenter should always report to the supervisor for instructions and updates.

Fig. 5.2.5: Site supervisor

Importance of Various External and Internal Agencies at a Site

At a worksite, many people like electricians, plumbers, carpenters, and site supervisors work together. These people are called agencies. Each one has a special job that helps complete the project smoothly.

Their work needs to be done in the right order. If one team is late, it can delay others. For example, carpenters can't fix cabinets if plumbing isn't finished. Good teamwork and clear communication between all agencies help avoid mistakes, save time, and keep the site safe. Knowing who is doing what helps everyone do their job better. Ensures Clear Work Sequence

5.2.2 Scope of Each Agency's Work and How It Affects Carpentry

Every agency at the site has a specific task, but their work is closely connected with carpentry. If one agency does not complete its job on time or makes changes, it can directly impact the carpenter's work. Understanding each agency's scope helps carpenters plan their tasks better and avoid delays.

Agency	Scope of Work	How It Affects Carpentry
Electricians	Install wires, plug points, lights, switchboards.	Carpenters need to leave space in furniture for plug points and switches. Wrong placement can cause rework.
Plumbers	Fix water pipes, drainage, sinks, and taps.	Cabinets must have holes or gaps for sink pipes. Delay in plumbing can delay furniture installation.
Painters	Paint walls, ceilings, and polish wooden surfaces.	Carpentry must be done before painting. Poor coordination can damage paint or furniture finish.
Civil/Masonry Team	Build walls, plaster, level floors, fix tiles.	Uneven walls or floors can cause misalignment in cabinets and wardrobes. Carpentry depends on their finishing.
False Ceiling/HVAC	Fix ceiling grid, lights, air conditioner ducts, and vents.	Ceiling furniture and lighting must avoid ducts and vents. Need proper coordination to avoid damage.
Glass/Aluminum Team	Install windows, partitions, glass panels, and aluminum frames.	Carpenters must take final measurements after their work. Delay in their work can delay carpentry installation.

Table 5.2.1: Agency roles and their impact on carpentry work

5.2.3 Importance of Working Together (Collaboration) at the Site

At a furniture installation site, many people from different teams work together like electricians, plumbers, masons, carpenters, and site supervisors. If these teams do not plan and work together, there can be confusion, delays, and safety problems. Teamwork helps everyone understand their job clearly and follow the right order. It saves time, reduces mistakes, and keeps the work smooth. When all agencies work like one team, the site becomes more efficient and safe for everyone. Good collaboration is key for completing work on time and without problems. The following are highlight how collaboration at the site brings better results for everyone involved:

1. **Ensures Clear Work Sequence**

   When agencies like carpenters, electricians, and plumbers talk and plan together, everyone knows what job to do and when to do it. For example, electricians can complete wiring before the furniture is installed, so wires don't get covered or damaged. This step-by-step order helps work go smoothly. Each team gets a clear time slot, so there is no rush or mix-up. It also avoids working on top of each other. When everyone knows their role and time, it saves time and reduces mistakes. A clear sequence keeps the work organized and under control.

2. **Prevents Delays and Conflicts**

   If two teams arrive to work in the same space at the same time, they may argue or stop each other's work. For example, if painters and carpenters both start in the same room, one team may have to wait. But when work is planned in advance with proper communication, everyone works in turns without delay. This planning helps avoid last-minute changes. Good coordination keeps the site calm and on schedule. Delays cost money and time, so avoiding them is important. Working together peacefully keeps the project moving forward.

3. **Maintains Site Safety**

   When workers don't know what other teams are doing, accidents can happen. For example, if someone touches a live wire during electrical work, they can get shocked. But when everyone is informed and areas are marked, people know where not to go. Sharing safety updates reduces the risk of injuries. Agencies can put up signs or barriers to warn others. A safe site protects the workers and the project. Good communication helps everyone follow safety rules.

4. **Helps in Better Use of Space and Time**

   Construction or installation sites are often small or busy. If teams don't plan, the space becomes crowded and messy. This can slow down the work and cause damage. But if one team finishes and clears the area before the next team comes, the space stays neat. It also saves time because workers don't have to wait. Smart planning allows for better flow of work. Everyone gets proper space and time to do their tasks correctly.

5. **Reduces Mistakes and Rework**

   If teams don't talk to each other, one group might ruin what another team has done. For example, furniture may block a switchboard, or paint might spoil new cabinets. Then, the work must be redone, which wastes time and money. When agencies coordinate, they avoid such mistakes. Teams can ask questions, share updates, and plan ahead. This reduces rework and saves effort. Doing it right the first time is always better than fixing problems later.

6. **Builds Team Spiritand Responsibility**

   When everyone works together respectfully, the site feels like one big team. People feel responsible for their work and care about the overall result. They listen to each other and help when needed. This improves the quality of the work and reduces stress. It also makes the site more pleasant to work in. With teamwork, problems get solved faster. A positive attitude helps complete the project successfully and keeps everyone motivated.

5.2.4 How to Use a Job Card

A job card is a tool that helps in planning and tracking work at a site. It shows what work needs to be done and when. It is usually divided into daily, weekly, and monthly tasks so that all workers know their responsibilities clearly and follow a proper timeline. This helps finish the project on time without confusion or delay.

Timeline	What It Means	Example	Why It's Important
Daily Tasks	Tasks that must be done and finished on the same day.	Fixing cabinet frames; measuring and cutting plywood for shelves	Keeps work moving step by step; helps workers stay focused and complete small goals.
Weekly Tasks	Tasks planned for the whole week; usually larger in size.	Complete bedroom furniture; finish electrical point markings	Breaks work into parts; allows room for catching up in case of delays.
Monthly Targets	Final goals to be finished by the end of the month.	Full house furniture installation; final polishing of all fittings	Shows the full progress; helps prepare for project handover or next steps.

Table 5.2.2: Use of job card

How a Sample Job Card Helps Everyone

A sample job card is a ready-made example that shows how to plan and organize work in a simple format. It clearly lists what needs to be done each day, week, and month. This helps all workers and teams stay organized and complete their work smoothly and on time.

i. **Know Their Schedule**

A job card clearly shows each worker what tasks they need to do and when to do them. This helps everyone understand their daily, weekly, or monthly work without confusion. When workers know their schedule, they can prepare in advance and start their jobs on time. It also prevents overlapping of tasks or workers waiting for others to finish. This clear plan keeps the site organized and running smoothly.

ii. **Track Progress**

The job card helps both workers and supervisors keep track of what work is completed and what is still pending. By regularly checking the job card, they can see if the project is on time or falling behind. This tracking makes it easier to spot problems early and take quick action. It also motivates workers because they can see their progress and feel proud of their achievements.

iii. **Inform if Someone is Delayed**

Sometimes, a worker or team may take longer than expected to finish a task. When this happens, the delay is marked on the job card. This helps others on the site know about the delay and adjust their own work plans. It avoids confusion or clashes between different teams. Clear communication about delays helps everyone work together and reduce further problems or downtime.

iv. **Plan Next Steps Better**

With a clear view of completed and pending tasks on the job card, teams can better plan what to do next. They can organize their work in the best order to avoid wasting time or resources. This careful planning reduces last-minute rushes and mistakes. It also helps the whole project move forward smoothly and finish on time, keeping both workers and clients happy.

Unit 5.3: Site Recce Checklist and Safety Assessment

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Describe how to conduct a site recce and complete a checklist covering dimensions, obstacles, power points, and access areas.
2. Identify potential safety risks such as loose tiles or live wiring and apply caution signage or physical markers to highlight hazards on site.

5.3.1 How to Conduct a Site Recce and Complete a Checklist

Before starting any work at a site, it is very important to visit and check the place carefully. This is called a site recce. During this visit, you look at the space and note down all important details to help plan your work. Using a checklist makes sure you don't forget anything important. The checklist usually includes measuring the area, finding obstacles, checking power points, and seeing how easily workers can move in and out. This careful check helps avoid mistakes and delays during the actual work. The steps to follow during a site recce using a checklist to ensure proper planning and smooth execution:

a) Measure Dimensions

Measure the length, width, and height of walls, doors, and windows. This helps you know exactly how much space is available for furniture or other work. Accurate measurements are important so that everything fits well and nothing is left out.

b) Look for Obstacles

Check for anything that might block or affect the work. This includes pipes, wires, beams, or pillars that may be in the way. Knowing where these obstacles are helps you plan better and avoid problems during installation.

c) Check Power Points

Identify where all electrical sockets, switches, and wiring are located. This is important because furniture should not block power points or cause any electrical hazard. Proper planning helps place furniture safely near these points.

d) Note Access Areas

See how easy it is to bring in tools, materials, and furniture. Check doors, hallways, and stairs to make sure they are wide enough for easy movement. Good access prevents delays and damage during work.

5.3.2 Identifying Safety Risks and Marking Hazards

Safety is very important on any worksite. During the site visit, you must look carefully for anything that could cause accidents or harm. Marking these risks clearly helps everyone stay safe. This includes checking the floor, wiring, tools, and exit paths.

Safety Risks at the Site

- Loose Tiles or Uneven Floors
- Live Wiring or Exposed Cables
- Sharp Objects or Tools
- Blocked Exits or Narrow Paths

How to Mark Hazards on Site

- Use Caution Signs or Boards
- Apply Bright Tape or Paint
- Use Safety Cones or Barriers
- Inform All Workers About Risks

Fig. 5.3.1: Safety risks and marking hazards

A. Safety Risks at the Site

Safety risks are dangers that can harm workers or damage equipment if not managed properly. These should be checked during the site recce and removed or controlled before work starts.

i. Loose Tiles or Uneven Floors

Uneven surfaces can make workers trip or fall, especially if they are carrying heavy items. Loose tiles can break or slip underfoot. These should be fixed as early as possible. If repair is not immediate, the area must be avoided or clearly marked.

Fig. 5.3.2: Uneven floor tiles

ii. Live Wiring or Exposed Cables

Wires without covers or open connections can cause electric shock or fire. These are very risky if people touch them by mistake. Wires should be covered or turned off. Avoid using such areas until the wiring is made safe.

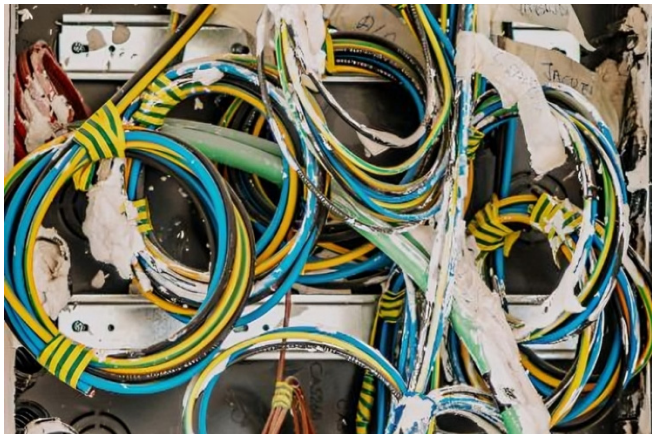


Fig. 5.3.3: Exposed wires

iii. Sharp Objects or Tools

Cutters, blades, nails, or broken materials lying around can injure hands, feet, or eyes. These should always be kept in a toolbox or in a safe corner. Unused tools must be stored properly to avoid accidents.

Fig. 5.3.4: Toolbox

iv. Blocked Exits or Narrow Paths

Emergency exits and walking paths must be open and wide at all times. If something blocks the way, it can slow down people during an emergency. Regularly check and remove anything in the way to ensure fast movement.

Fig. 5.3.5: Exit path unblock

B. How to Mark Hazards on Site

Marking hazards means making dangerous areas or items clearly visible to everyone. This helps workers stay alert and avoid accidents.

i. Use Caution Signs or Boards

Put yellow or red signs like “Caution: Wet Floor” or “Danger: Electric Shock” near risky areas. This quickly warns workers to be careful when crossing or working nearby.

ii. Apply Bright Tape or Paint

Use colorful tapes or floor paint (like red or yellow) to mark sharp edges, uneven floors, or low ceilings. Bright markings catch attention easily and remind workers to move carefully.

iii. Use Safety Cones or Barriers

Place cones or rope barriers around dangerous areas like wet cement or electrical work zones. This keeps people out of unsafe zones and prevents injuries.

iv. Inform All Workers About Risks

Before starting the day, inform workers about marked hazards and areas to avoid. This keeps everyone alert and working safely throughout the day.

Understanding safety risks and marking hazards correctly are key steps to keeping the site safe. When workers know where danger exists and can see warning signs, they can protect themselves better. This reduces accidents, injuries, and delays, helping the team work smoothly and safely.

Unit 5.4: Drawing Interpretation and Layout Marking

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Interpret layout drawings provided for a furniture installation, noting dimensions, positions, and references.
2. Identify furniture zones based on design layout, especially for products like tables, cabinets, or seating systems.
3. Mark key layout points on-site using chalk, tape, or markers for walls, floors, or ceilings, referring to plan coordinates.
4. Demonstrate the correct process of layout marking for a table installation, ensuring balance and adequate clearance.
5. Cross-verify layout against on-site realities (e.g., plug points, obstacles) and suggest practical adjustments if needed.

5.4.1 Interpret Layout Drawings for Furniture Installation

Before starting any furniture work, it is important to look at and understand the layout drawing. This drawing shows where each furniture piece should go, its size, and its exact place in the room. It works like a guide to help carpenters and workers do the job correctly. Following are the steps for interpret layout drawing for furniture installation. The following steps will guide to understanding and using a layout drawing correctly for smooth and accurate furniture installation:

a) Check Dimensions

Before you move any furniture, look at the drawing to see its exact length, width, and height. This is like measuring a box to see if it will fit on a shelf. If you know the furniture's size, you won't try to put a huge sofa in a tiny space, which would be a big problem! Measuring carefully makes sure everything fits just right and looks good.

b) Note Positions

The drawing shows exactly where each piece of furniture is supposed to go. Maybe a chair goes by the window, or a table goes in the middle of the room. These spots are chosen to make the room comfortable, have enough space to walk around, and look nice. If you put things where the drawing says, your room won't feel crowded, and it will be easy to move around in.

c) Understand Symbols

Layout drawings use little pictures, like small icons, to show things that are already in the room, such as doors, windows, light switches, and power plugs. Knowing what these little pictures mean is super helpful. It stops you from putting a big cupboard right in front of a light switch, or blocking a door, which would be very annoying! It also makes sure you can still easily use all your electrical outlets.

d) Use References

The drawing often tells you to measure from a fixed spot, like a wall or a corner of the room.

Think of it like starting a race from a marked line. These fixed spots help you measure everything correctly and mark out where furniture should go on the floor. Using these starting points ensures that all your furniture is straight, even, and exactly where it's supposed to be, not crooked or off-center.

e) Follow Scale

Most drawings are much smaller than the real room. There's a number, like "1:50," that tells you how to turn the small size on the drawing into the real size. You have to multiply the numbers from the drawing to get the actual size. For example, if the drawing says 1 unit, and the scale is 1:50, then in real life it's 50 units. Doing this math correctly makes sure your measurements on the floor are super accurate, so the furniture fits perfectly.

f) Double-Check

Before you start putting anything together or moving heavy items, take one last look. Compare the drawing to the real room. Does everything look like it will fit? Are there any unexpected things in the way that weren't on the drawing? This final check helps you catch any mistakes early, like finding a hidden bump in the wall or realizing a measurement was off.

5.4.2 Identify Furniture Zones Based on Design Layout

In a layout drawing, the room is divided into different furniture zones based on how the space will be used. Each zone has a specific purpose, such as a seating zone, storage zone, or working zone. For example, tables are placed in the working or dining area, cabinets go near walls for storage, and sofas or chairs are placed in the living area for sitting. The drawing shows where each of these zones is located. By identifying the correct furniture zones, workers know where to place each item.

i. Understand the Purpose of Each Area

Every space in a room has a specific use. For example, a dining zone is meant for eating, while a living zone is for sitting and relaxing. Knowing the purpose of each area helps decide what furniture should go where. This way, the furniture fits the activity in that zone. It makes the room more useful and comfortable. It also helps avoid putting furniture in places where it doesn't belong or won't be used well.

Fig. 5.4.1: Purpose of each area

ii. Check the Drawing for Labels or Notes

Layout drawings often have labels or notes that show where furniture should be placed. These labels help you identify zones for tables, cabinets, and seats. Following these labels prevents confusion during installation. The notes might also give special instructions about size or spacing. Using these details ensures the furniture fits perfectly and looks neat. It makes the work easier and more accurate.

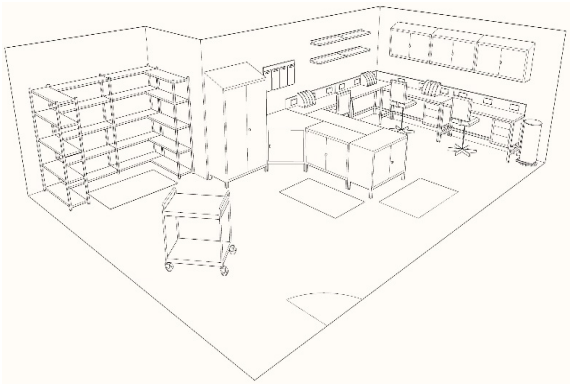


Fig. 5.4.2: Layout for lables or notes

iii. Match Furniture to Correct Zones

Each type of furniture belongs to a specific zone. For example, tables are usually in dining or work areas. Cabinets are placed near walls to save space and store things. Chairs and sofas go in seating zones for comfort. Placing furniture in the right zones keeps the room organized and functional. It helps users move easily and use the furniture properly. Wrong placement can make the room crowded or awkward.

Fig. 5.4.3: Match furniture in correct zone

iv. Ensure Enough Space Around Furniture

It is important to leave enough space around each piece of furniture. This space allows people to walk freely without bumping into furniture. Crowded areas can cause accidents or make moving hard. Good clearance also makes the room look neat and open. Proper spacing improves comfort and safety. It helps furniture serve its purpose without causing trouble.

Fig. 5.4.4: Space around Furniture

v. Use the Layout to Guide Placement

The layout drawing works like a map to guide where to place furniture. It shows exact positions and distances between pieces. Following the layout avoids mistakes in measurements. It saves time by providing a clear plan to follow. The layout also helps plan space for walking and other uses. Sticking to the drawing ensures the final setup is balanced and fits well in the room.

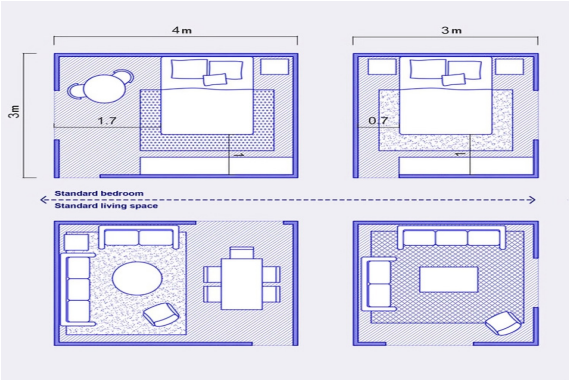


Fig. 5.4.5: Layout drawing to Guide Placement

5.4.3 Marking Layout Points On-Site

When you start work on the site, you need to mark important points where furniture or fixtures will go. Use chalk, tape, or markers to make these marks clearly on walls, floors, or ceilings. These marks help everyone know exactly where to place things. Always refer to the plan coordinates from the layout drawing to be accurate. Correct marking helps avoid mistakes and saves time later. It also makes sure the furniture fits well and looks balanced. Clear markings help workers follow the plan easily and finish the job correctly. The following steps explain the correct method for marking layout points on-site:

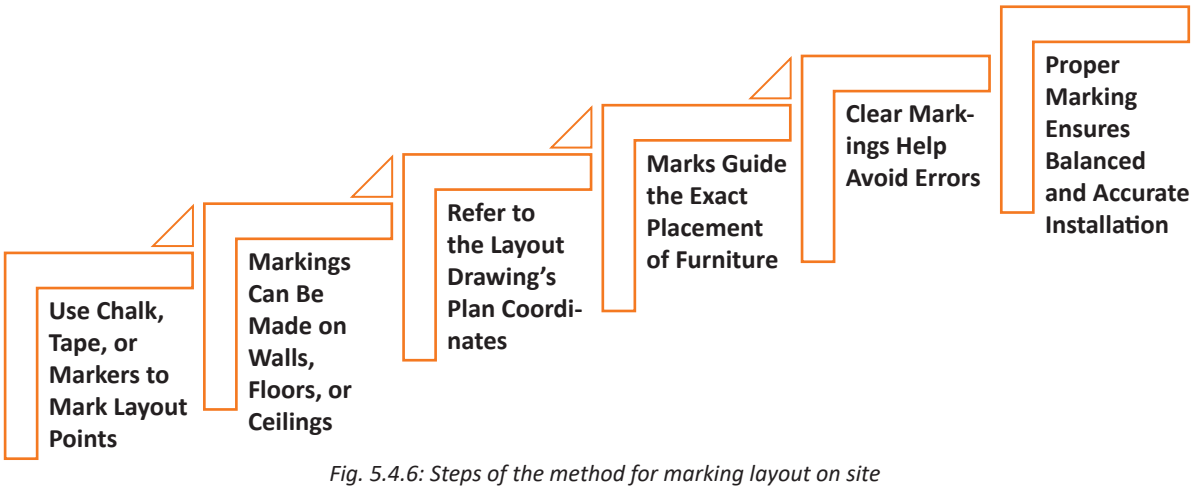


Fig. 5.4.6: Steps of the method for marking layout on site

A. Use Chalk, Tape, or Markers to Mark Layout Points

Chalk, tape, and markers are simple tools used to make clear marks on the site. Chalk is easy to wipe off and works well on floors and walls. Tape is good for temporary markings that need to be removed later. Markers give precise and visible lines, especially on ceilings or smooth surfaces. Choosing the right tool helps ensure the marks are easy to see and follow during installation.

B. Markings Can Be Made on Walls, Floors, or Ceilings

Depending on the furniture design and installation plan, marks need to be placed where the furniture will go. Sometimes marks are made on walls for cabinets or shelves. For tables and floor furniture, markings are done on the floor. Ceilings may need markings for hanging items or lighting fixtures. Marking all relevant surfaces ensures no confusion during installation.

C. Refer to the Layout Drawing's Plan Coordinates

The layout drawing has exact measurements and points for where furniture and fixtures must be placed. Referring to these coordinates helps transfer the design accurately to the site. This avoids guesswork and ensures that all parts fit as planned. Always keep the drawing handy while marking to double-check positions.

D. Marks Guide the Exact Placement of Furniture

The marked points act as guides for workers to know where to place each furniture item. This makes sure the furniture is installed in the correct spot and aligned properly. Without these marks, installation could be uneven or out of place. Clear guidance reduces errors and improves the final look.

E. Clear Markings Help Avoid Errors

Visible and accurate marks make it easier for workers to follow the plan without confusion. This reduces the chance of mistakes like wrong positioning or wrong measurements. When errors are avoided, time and materials are saved. It also helps avoid costly rework later.

F. Proper Marking Ensures Balanced and Accurate Installation

By marking layout points correctly, the furniture fits well and looks balanced in the room. It also ensures there is enough space around furniture for movement and use. Accurate marking helps maintain the design's functionality and aesthetic appeal. This leads to a smooth installation process and a good final result.

5.4.4 Correct Process of Layout Marking for Table Installation

Before installing a table, it is very important to mark the layout properly. This helps ensure that the table is placed in the correct spot, looks balanced, and has enough space around it for people to walk and sit comfortably. If the layout is marked incorrectly, the table might be placed too close to a wall or a plug point, making it hard to use. A correct layout also avoids later shifting or adjustments. Layout marking is done using simple tools like a measuring tape, chalk, or masking tape. The process must be done carefully by following the plan drawing and checking actual site space. It ensures smooth and professional installation.

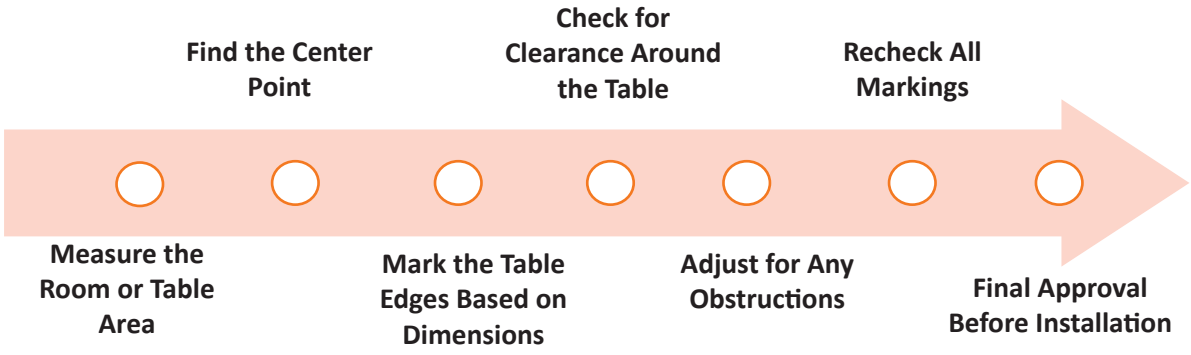


Fig. 5.4.7: Process of table layout marking

1. **Measure the Room or Table Area**

   Start by measuring the room or the specific area where the table needs to be placed. Use a measuring tape to find the length and width of the space. This helps understand how much area is available and ensures the table will fit properly. Note these measurements and compare them with the table's dimensions.

2. **Find the Center Point**

   Once the area is measured, find the center point where the table will be placed. This is done by dividing the length and width by two and marking the center using chalk or masking tape. This central mark acts as a guide for aligning the table evenly in the room or zone.

3. **Mark the Table Edges Based on Dimensions**

   Now measure the length and width of the table and mark its edges around the center point. Make sure the lines are straight by using a ruler or straight object. These markings show exactly where the four corners of the table will be placed, helping in balanced placement.

4. **Check for Clearance Around the Table**

   After marking the edges, check how much space is left around the table. A good rule is to leave at least 2 to 3 feet of empty space on all sides so people can move easily. Use a measuring tape to confirm that there is enough walking and sitting space.

5. **Adjust for Any Obstructions**

   Look around the marked area for anything that could block the table like plug points, windows, or wall corners. If needed, shift the layout slightly to avoid these obstructions. Small changes help make the table more usable and safe.

6. **Recheck All Markings**

   Once everything is marked, go back and double-check all your measurements. Make sure the table edges are correctly placed, the lines are straight, and the space around it is even. This avoids mistakes during actual table installation.

7. **Final Approval Before Installation**

   Before starting the actual work, show the layout to the supervisor or site in-charge. This step confirms that everything is correct and ready. Once approved, the table can be installed confidently, knowing the layout is perfect.

5.4.5 Cross-Verify Layout Against On-Site Realities and Suggest Adjustments

Before final furniture installation, it's important to check that the marked layout matches the real conditions at the site. Even if the drawing is correct, real obstacles like plug points, pipes, uneven walls, or ceiling beams may affect the placement of furniture. Cross-verifying helps you spot these problems early. It allows you to make smart changes so that the furniture fits properly and works well in the space. This process avoids rework, saves time, and ensures a better finish. Following are the steps to cross-verify and adjust layout:

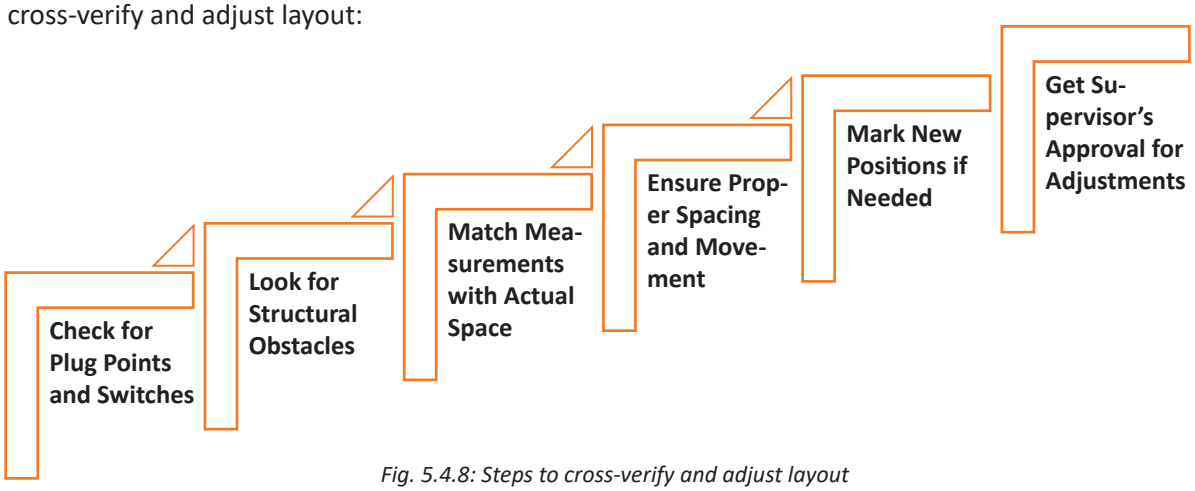


Fig. 5.4.8: Steps to cross-verify and adjust layout

A. **Check for Plug Points and Switches**

   Walk around the marked area and look for any electrical plug points or switches. If any are blocked by a planned furniture piece, they may become unusable. You can suggest shifting the furniture slightly to keep the plug point accessible without changing the full design.

B. **Look for Structural Obstacles**

   Check the site for beams, columns, pipes, or low ceilings that may not be shown clearly on the drawing. These elements can stop furniture from fitting properly. If such obstacles are found, suggest changes like reducing height or shifting the item slightly to make it fit.

C. Match Measurements with Actual Space

Measure the area again to confirm it matches the drawing. Sometimes room sizes may be slightly different due to construction changes. If the space is smaller or larger, furniture sizes may need to be adjusted to avoid gaps or tight fittings.

D. Ensure Proper Spacing and Movement

Check if people can move freely around the furniture once it's installed. Look at door openings, window access, and walkways. If the layout blocks any path, adjust the position so that movement is smooth and nothing is blocked.

E. Mark New Positions if Needed

If any layout change is needed, erase the old marks and draw new ones clearly. Use chalk, tape, or markers to show the new suggested positions. Ensure that all team members are informed about the change before proceeding.

F. Get Supervisor's Approval for Adjustments

Before making changes final, show the new layout to the site supervisor or designer. This ensures the adjustments are approved and align with the overall plan. It keeps everyone on the same page and avoids confusion.

Unit 5.5: Site Measurement and Documentation

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Apply measurement techniques using tools like laser distance meters or measuring tapes to check available space and furniture fitment areas.
2. Record values clearly in site measurement sheets, maintaining consistency in units and labels.
3. Prepare a final documentation sheet summarizing all measurements and details for the mock table installation zone.

5.5.1 Apply Measurement Techniques Using Tools like Laser Meters or Tapes

Before installing any furniture, it is very important to measure the available space carefully. Measuring helps to check if the furniture will fit well without causing problems. Tools like measuring tapes and laser distance meters are used to take these measurements accurately. Using the right tool and method ensures better planning and smooth work. This step helps avoid mistakes and saves time during the installation. Each tool and technique must be used correctly for reliable results.

What is site measurement and why its matters?

Site measurement is an essential first step before starting any furniture installation. It ensures that all items, especially large ones like tables or cabinets, will fit perfectly in the available space. Taking accurate measurements helps avoid problems later, like blocking doorways, windows, or electric plug points. A well-measured site leads to better planning and smoother installation.

Measurements also help workers follow the layout drawings more precisely. Even a small error can affect how the furniture fits or looks. That's why this unit focuses on using proper tools for measurement, recording values clearly, and preparing a final report or documentation that can guide the installation team.

Tools Used for Site Measurement

Measuring tools are very important for checking the size of spaces before starting any work. They help to get accurate numbers so the furniture fits well. Different tools are used depending on the size and type of measurement needed. Using the right tool makes the work easier and avoids mistakes.

Measuring Tape

A measuring tape is a simple and commonly used tool to measure short or medium distances. It is usually made of metal or plastic and can roll back into a small case. To use it, pull the tape from one end of the space to the other and read the measurement on the scale. Always keep the tape straight and tight for correct results. This tool is good for measuring walls, furniture length, or space between two points. It is best used when the area is not too large or has corners.

Laser Distance Meter

A laser distance meter is a modern tool that uses a laser beam to measure space quickly and accurately. Just point the device at the surface and press a button to get the reading. It is very useful in big rooms or high walls where a tape measure may not reach easily. The laser tool shows measurements on a screen in meters or feet. It also reduces human errors and saves time. Always make sure the laser points straight and nothing blocks the path for accurate results.

Fig. 5.5.1: Tools for site measurement

Techniques for Taking Correct Measurements

Taking correct measurements is very important to make sure furniture fits perfectly in the available space. Using the right techniques helps avoid errors that can cause problems during installation. Careful measuring saves time and materials by preventing rework. Learning proper methods ensures that measurements are accurate and reliable every time.

Start from a Fixed Reference Point

Always begin measuring from a clear and fixed point like the corner of a wall or the edge of a window. This makes it easier to take consistent and accurate measurements. Avoid starting from random places, as it may cause errors in the total size. Using a known starting point also helps others understand your measurement sheet. It is a simple but very important technique to follow every time.

Measure Twice to Confirm Accuracy

After taking any measurement, measure the same space again to confirm that the reading is correct. Sometimes the tape may bend, or the laser may hit the wrong spot. Measuring twice helps avoid these mistakes. It is always better to double-check than to install furniture in the wrong position. This step is a part of good working habits and shows professionalism

Hold the Tool Steady and Straight

Whether using a tape or laser meter, the tool must be held straight and steady. If it shakes or bends, the reading may be wrong. For the measuring tape, keep it tight between the start and end points. For the laser meter, make sure the beam is hitting the right surface directly. Practicing this technique gives better results and saves time during installation

Fig. 5.5.2: Techniques for taking correct measurements

5.5.2 Recording Measurement Values Clearly in Site Measurement Sheets

Recording measurements clearly is very important to ensure accuracy and avoid mistakes during furniture installation. A well-maintained measurement sheet helps everyone on the team understand the exact sizes and spaces available. It also helps in planning and reduces confusion. Using consistent units and clear labels makes the information easy to read and follow. Follow these key practices to ensure measurement data is recorded clearly and accurately:

a) Use Consistent Units

Always use the same measurement units throughout the sheet, like centimeters or inches. If you mix units, it can cause confusion and mistakes when reading or using the measurements. Keeping one unit helps everyone understand and compare sizes easily without needing to convert.

b) Label Each Measurement

Write down what each number means clearly. For example, write "Wall Height – 270 cm" instead of just "270 cm." This helps everyone know which part of the site or furniture the measurement belongs to, so there is no misunderstanding.

c) Write Neatly

Make sure your writing or typing is clean and easy to read. Messy or unclear writing can cause mistakes if someone reads the wrong number or unit. A neat sheet helps the whole team work without errors.

d) Double-Check Values

Before finishing, check all the measurements again carefully. This helps find any errors or missed measurements early on. Double-checking saves time and effort later when fixing problems.

e) Organize Information Logically

Group measurements that are related, like all wall sizes together or all table spaces together. This way, the sheet is easy to read and follow. It helps the team find the right information quickly.

f) Use Clear Columns and Rows

Arrange your sheet with clear columns for measurement, unit, and notes. This keeps the data tidy and easy to understand. Well-organized sheets prevent mixing up numbers or forgetting important details.

5.5.3 Preparing a Final Documentation Sheet for the Mock Table Installation Zone

After completing all site measurements, it is important to prepare a final documentation sheet that summarizes every detail clearly. This sheet acts as a complete record of the space and helps the team during installation. It should include all key measurements such as room size, table dimensions, and clearance spaces. The document must be easy to read and well-organized to avoid any confusion. Including notes on any special site conditions or adjustments is helpful. Use the steps below to organize your final documentation clearly and usefully:

a. Record All Important Sizes

Make sure to write down every key measurement, such as the table's length, width, height, and the space needed around it. This information helps everyone understand how much room the table will take and ensures there is enough space for people to move comfortably around it. Accurate recording prevents problems during installation.

b. Use Consistent Units

Always use the same unit of measurement, like centimeters or inches, throughout the entire sheet. Using one unit makes it easier to read and compare measurements. Mixing units can cause confusion and lead to mistakes, so consistency helps keep everything clear and correct.

c. Label Measurements Clearly

Every measurement should have a clear label that explains what it is. For example, write "Table Length" or "Clearance Space" next to the number. This way, anyone reading the sheet knows exactly what the measurement refers to, which reduces misunderstandings during the project.

d. Organize Measurements Logically

Group related measurements together to make the sheet easier to follow. For instance, place all wall dimensions in one section and all furniture sizes in another. This organized layout helps team members quickly find the information they need without searching through mixed data.

e. Include Site-Specific Notes

Write down any special details about the site that could affect the installation. This could include obstacles like pipes, power outlets, or uneven floors. Adding these notes helps the team plan better and avoid unexpected issues during the work.

f. Keep the Sheet Neat and Clear

Use clear handwriting or type the information to keep the sheet clean and easy to read. Avoid clutter and messy writing, as this can cause errors or slow down work. A tidy sheet improves communication and helps everyone stay on the same page.

g. Review for Accuracy

Before sharing the sheet, double-check all the measurements and notes. Carefully reviewing helps catch any mistakes or missing information. A correct and complete sheet saves time later and prevents costly errors during installation.

Accurate site measurement and clear documentation are critical to successful furniture installation. They ensure the furniture fits perfectly and is placed in the correct location without blocking important features. Using proper tools, writing values correctly, and creating a clear final document makes work faster, easier, and more professional. It also saves time, avoids mistakes, and improves the safety and function of the installed furniture.

Scan the QR codes or click on the link to watch the related videos

https://youtu.be/hQA0dd_0rq8?si=-GXcPsw0U3pZsb1L4

Tools Name with Pictures

https://youtu.be/WDoVGQKHWsE?si-=rzRK8l1PavrRUiJE

Safety Procedures for Tiling (English)

NCVET
कौशल गुणवत्ता प्रगति

Skill India
कौशल भारत-कुशल भारत

सत्यमेव जयते
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
MINISTRY OF SKILL DEVELOPMENT
& ENTREPRENEURSHIP

N·S·D·C
RE IMAGINE FUTURE

FFSC
FURNITURE
& FITTINGS
SKILL COUNCIL
कुशल • सक्षम • आत्मनिर्भर

6. Joinery, Fabrication, and Assembly of Components

Unit 6.1: Product Fabrication and Material Planning
Unit 6.2: Types of Joints and Their Applications
Unit 6.3: Processes to Build Wood Joints
Unit 6.4: Joinery Techniques and Joint Formation
Unit 6.5: Surface Preparation and Finishing
Unit 6.6: Product Assembly and Installation
Unit 6.7: Quality Inspection and Defect Rectification
Unit 6.8: Documentation and Reporting

Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this module, the participant will be able to:

1. Describe the step-by-step process of fabricating a wooden furniture item, beginning from selection of materials and planning of dimensions, through marking, jointing, and component assembly, using a wooden table as a working example.
2. Prepare a complete bill of materials (BOM) for the construction of a wooden table, listing dimensions, material types, and quantity required for each part such as tabletop, legs, apron, and fasteners.
3. Estimate the total amount of wood, screws, adhesives, brackets, and fittings needed to complete a table fabrication job, while accounting for potential material loss and cutting margin.
4. Demonstrate how planning tasks such as layout of components on raw boards, tool readiness, and cut sequencing can help minimize wastage and improve efficiency during furniture making.
5. Identify and describe commonly used joints in carpentry such as butt, lap, mortise and tenon, dowel, and dado joints, highlighting the role each plays in terms of strength, appearance, and load support.
6. Explain where specific joints should be applied within the table structure for example, mortise and tenon for leg-to-apron joins, dowel joints for edge-to-frame connections, and lap joints for internal bracing.
7. Use measuring tools, marking gauges, chisels, and saws to accurately mark, cut, and form wood joints according to design requirements, ensuring the measurements align with drawing specifications.
8. Reinforce joints using adhesives, dowels, or screws as per requirement, and describe how each method contributes to the durability and stability of the final furniture product.
9. Construct mortise and tenon and dowel joints practically on table components, ensuring smooth fit, correct angle, and readiness for assembly.
10. Demonstrate how to apply joinery techniques by combining prepared joints with appropriate fittings and clamping tools to assemble a table frame with correct alignment and stability.
11. Secure different table parts using fasteners, adhesives, and clamps, while ensuring squareness, edge flushness, and angle precision during the joining process.
12. Conduct checks during joint formation to ensure correct spacing, joint strength, and alignment before proceeding to surface finishing.
13. Describe the process of surface preparation, including sanding of all components, removing splinters or dust, and correcting defects using fillers and sealants before applying surface finishes.
14. Identify surface defects such as scratches, gaps, knots, or uneven patches, and demonstrate how to treat each using correct methods for a clean final appearance.
15. Prepare the table's surface and edges for the selected type of finish, such as matte polish, clear varnish, or stain, depending on product design and user requirement.
16. Assemble the pre-finished components of the wooden table in the correct order typically legs to apron, apron to tabletop using tools such as screwdrivers, drills, and clamps.
17. Install corner blocks, support rails, or fitting plates to reinforce the table structure, and ensure that all screws and hardware are placed securely.
18. Test the stability of the assembled table by checking for level balance, load-bearing capability, and joint movement before final delivery or installation.

19. Perform a final inspection of the table using visual checks, measuring tools, and physical testing to ensure all structural and aesthetic standards are met.
20. Identify and correct any detected defects such as wobbly legs, cracked joints, or unfinished edges using sanding, tightening, or component replacement techniques.
21. Document the completion of the fabrication and assembly process, recording details such as time taken, tools used, materials consumed, and any issues faced.
22. Prepare a comprehensive job card that reflects the table's fabrication lifecycle from BOM creation to final inspection, including remarks on quality checks and repairs conducted.
23. Communicate clearly and professionally with the supervisor or project head in case of delays, material mismatch, technical faults, or any deviation from the original product plan, and support this with written records.

Unit 6.1: Product Fabrication and Material Planning

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Explain the significance of the water management industry and its role in sustainable development.
2. Identify stakeholders involved in water supply, treatment, and quality control.
3. Discuss various employment opportunities within the contracting segment of the water management industry.
4. Define and describe commonly used terminology in the water industry.

6.1.1 Step-by-Step Process of Fabricating a Wooden Table

Making a wooden table needs a simple plan and doing each step carefully. When we follow the steps in the right order, the table becomes strong, looks neat, and lasts a long time. Every step is important from choosing good wood to checking the parts before joining them. If we skip or rush any step, the table may not fit well, may look bad, or may break easily. So, it is important to do every step slowly and properly.

What is Product Fabrication?

Product fabrication means making a product from raw materials. Raw materials can be wood, metal, or plastic. It is the process of turning raw materials into a final product that is ready to use. This is done by using tools, machines, and the right method.

Fabrication is the way of making something. For example, making a wooden table is a type of fabrication. It starts with wooden boards. Then we cut them, shape them, join them, and polish them. All steps must be done carefully. This makes sure the table is strong, the right size, and looks nice.

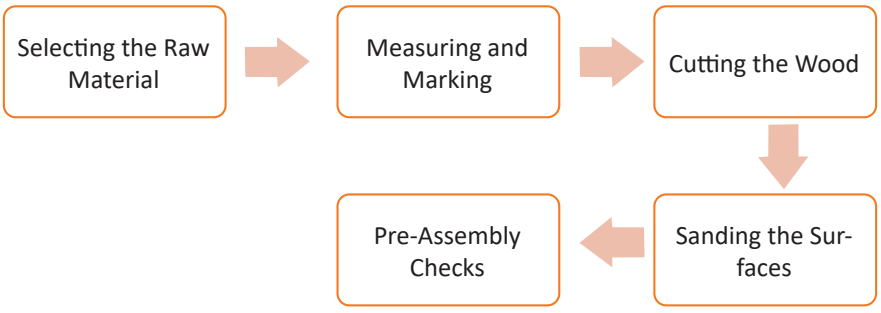


Fig. 6.1.1: Process of fabricating a wooden table

a) Selecting the Raw Material

The first step is choosing the right type of wood for the table. Hardwood like teak or oak is strong and lasts long, while softwood like pine is lighter and less costly. The wood should be free from cracks, knots, or damage. The choice of wood depends on the table's use, cost, and the kind of finish you want. A good-quality material makes the table strong and gives a smooth finish after polishing. Picking the correct raw material is the base of a good product.

Fig. 6.1.2: Types of wood raw material

b) Measuring and Marking

Once the wood is selected, use a measuring tape and pencil to mark the exact sizes of all parts. This includes table legs, the top surface, and side or support frames. Accurate marking helps in getting the correct shapes and sizes when cutting. Mistakes in this step can lead to incorrect fitting and waste of material. Always double-check the measurements before moving to the next step. Clear, straight markings ensure a smooth cutting process.

Fig. 6.1.3: Measurement and marking the wood part

c) Cutting the Wood

Use a saw or cutting machine to cut the marked pieces of wood. Each part should be cut neatly and exactly as marked to make sure they fit together properly. Always handle tools carefully and follow safety steps during cutting. Clean, accurate cuts save time during assembly and reduce the need for extra sanding or trimming. Wrong cuts can lead to material wastage, so work slowly and with focus. Good cutting skills improve the final look of the table.

Fig. 6.1.4: Cutting of mark pieces

d) Sanding the Surfaces

After cutting, all wooden pieces must be sanded to make the surface smooth. Sanding removes sharp edges, splinters, and small uneven parts. This can be done using sandpaper or a sanding machine, depending on the size of the piece. Smooth surfaces are important for easy joining and a polished finish. Proper sanding also helps paint or polish stick better. Always clean off dust after sanding before moving to the next step.

Fig. 6.1.5: Sanding for smooth surface

e) Pre-Assembly Checks

Before fixing the parts, arrange them in place to check the fitting. This is known as dry fitting or pre-assembly. It helps to see if any part needs trimming, sanding, or adjusting. If parts don't fit well, they can be corrected before final assembly. This step saves time and avoids mistakes during final fixing. It's also a good time to make sure all pieces are present and nothing is missing. Proper pre-assembly ensures the table will be strong and level.

Fig. 6.1.6: Pre-assembly/dry fitting

6.1.2 Preparing Bill of Materials (BOM) and Cutting List

Preparing a Bill of Materials (BOM) and a cutting list is an important part of planning before making any product like a wooden table. These lists help the carpenter know exactly what materials to buy and how much of each is needed. It also avoids waste and saves time during work. The BOM gives details about the type and quantity of all materials, while the cutting list gives exact measurements for each part of the product. Together, they ensure smooth production and proper use of resources.

1. Bill of Materials (BOM)

A Bill of Materials is a full list of all materials required to build the table. It includes every small and big item like wood, screws, glue, hinges, or polish. Each item in the list should clearly mention the type of material (for example, teak wood or MDF), the quantity (like 2 boards), and any special feature (such as waterproof glue). A proper BOM ensures that nothing is forgotten before starting the work. It also helps in budgeting and buying materials at once.

2. Cutting List

The cutting list tells what parts need to be cut from the raw wood and what their exact sizes should be. For example, it may mention:

- Table Top – 1 piece – 120 cm x 60 cm
- Legs – 4 pieces – 70 cm each
- Side Frames – 2 pieces – 110 cm x 10 cm

This list helps the carpenter cut all parts correctly without wasting wood. It also makes the assembly process faster because every part is ready in the right shape and size. Keeping the cutting list clear and simple avoids mistakes during the work.

Importance of Bill of Materials (BOM) and Cutting List

Creating a Bill of Materials (BOM) and a Cutting List is an important part of planning in furniture making. These lists help workers know exactly what materials they need, how much to use, and how to cut them. It makes the work faster, easier, and saves money and time. Following are the main reasons why these two lists are so useful:

a) Clear Understanding of Requirements

The Bill of Materials (BOM) lists all the items needed, such as types of wood, screws, glue, and fittings. The cutting list shows how many parts to cut and in what size. These details help the worker understand the complete task. It removes confusion and helps in planning the work correctly from the start.

b) Saves Time During Work

Since all materials and their sizes are already listed, there is no need to stop and think during work. Workers can directly take the materials and start making the parts. This saves a lot of time and helps finish the work faster. It also helps meet the deadlines more easily.

c) Reduces Material Wastage

The cutting list gives the correct size and number of pieces needed. This reduces wrong cuts and helps use the material properly. The BOM also ensures that only the required quantity is purchased. This prevents over-ordering and reduces leftover material or waste.

d) Helps in Cost Estimation

The BOM gives clear details of what to buy and how much of it. This helps in preparing a proper cost estimate for the project. It allows the team to plan the budget and avoid spending more than needed. It also supports better financial control.

e) Supports Easy Purchasing

With the help of a BOM, purchasing materials becomes easy. The supplier gets exact details and can deliver the right products. This avoids delays caused by wrong or missing items. It also helps save time spent on repeated store visits.

f) Improves Work Planning

The BOM and cutting list act as a step-by-step guide for the workers. It helps them follow the correct order like cutting, assembling, and finishing. This creates a smooth workflow and avoids mistakes. It also helps manage time and effort better.

g) Increases Accuracy and Quality

When materials are cut as per the cutting list and used properly, the final product is more accurate. The furniture looks neat and fits well. There are fewer chances of errors, which leads to a better-quality table or product. Good planning leads to good results.

6.1.3 Estimating Material Requirements with Wastage Allowance

Before starting the table-making process, it is important to know how much material will be needed. This helps avoid running out of materials or buying too much. Proper estimation includes counting every piece and also keeping a little extra for errors or damage. This extra material is called wastage allowance. Planning for this ensures the work continues smoothly without delay or shortage.

i. Wood

To estimate the total wood required, first add up the sizes of all wooden parts of the table such as legs, top, supports, and frames. Once you know the total amount, add around 10% extra to cover mistakes like wrong cuts, damage, or cracks. This extra material is called wastage allowance. It's important because wood is a natural material and may have knots, bends, or cracks that make some parts unusable. Having extra wood avoids the need to rush and buy more in the middle of work. This helps save time and keeps the project on schedule. Planning for wastage is a smart and essential step in carpentry.

ii. Adhesives and Fasteners

To fix different parts of the table together, you need adhesives like wood glue and fasteners like screws, nails, or bolts. Count how many joints or connections are there in the design and estimate how much glue and how many fasteners will be used. Add a small buffer or extra quantity to the count to cover loss, spillage, or wrong usage. It's better to have a little extra than run out during the work. The quantity will depend on the table's size and number of joints. This helps avoid last-minute purchases and keeps the workflow smooth and fast.

iii. Fittings

Fittings are the extra hardware items needed for function or decoration such as handles, hinges, brackets, or sliders, depending on the table's design. Check the design carefully and list all fittings required for the assembly. Count them and choose the correct size, shape, and material. Some fittings are used in drawers or foldable parts, so don't miss them. Buy a few extra fittings in case some are damaged, missing, or get misplaced during work. Accurate fitting selection improves the look and usability of the table.

iv. Wastage Allowance

Wastage allowance means keeping some extra materials in stock to cover any losses during the work. Mistakes during measuring, cutting, or handling can lead to waste. This applies not just to wood, but also to glue, fasteners, and fittings. Generally, 5%–10% extra is kept for each material type depending on the project. This saves time and cost by avoiding the need to go back and purchase more items. It also helps complete the job without delay. Smart carpenters always plan for wastage to ensure the work goes smoothly.

6.1.4 Improving Efficiency through Layout and Tool Planning

In furniture making, good planning of workspace and tools helps save time, reduce mistakes, and complete the work smoothly. If everything is kept in the right place and used in the correct order, the entire process becomes faster and easier. Proper layout also reduces material wastage and avoids confusion during work. A neat and organized setup improves teamwork and helps finish the table on time. Good planning is the key to better results and less effort. Let's understand how different planning steps help in improving work efficiency. To ensure smoother and faster work, consider the following layout and tool planning methods:

A. Planned Material Layout

Before starting work, keep all materials like wooden planks, glue, nails, screws, and fittings in a clean and organized area. Label each item, such as "Tabletop – 120 cm x 80 cm" or "Leg Wood – 4 pieces." This prevents confusion and ensures that the correct material is picked for the correct job. Arranging items properly also saves time and effort. It also helps reduce mistakes and makes the working area safer and cleaner. This step is simple but very helpful for smooth working.

B. Correct Dimension Cutting

Always use the cutting list to cut materials according to the exact size. Use measuring tape or scale to mark clearly before cutting. This prevents cutting the wrong size, which can lead to material waste. Double-checking before cutting saves wood and improves the quality of the table. Use the right saw or cutting tool for better results. Following this step helps avoid errors and keeps the project on track. It also reduces the need for rework.

C. Tool Deployment

Keep all tools like hammers, saws, screwdrivers, and drills in their proper place. Use a toolbox or wall rack to arrange them so they are easy to find and pick. This avoids wasting time searching for tools during work. Each tool should be clean, sharp, and in working condition. Tools used more often should be placed closer to the main work area. This helps maintain a smooth workflow and keeps the workplace neat and safe.

D. Workstation Flow

Divide the working area into different sections like measuring, cutting, assembling, and polishing. Doing work step by step in a set order reduces confusion and improves speed. For example, first measure the wood in one area, then cut it in another, and finally assemble the parts in a clean space. This setup avoids crowding and makes each task easier to manage. Clear flow of work increases team efficiency and helps finish the table neatly and on time.

Unit 6.2: Types of Joints and Their Applications

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

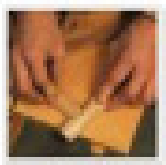
1. Identify and describe basic and advanced joint types such as butt, lap, dowel, dado, and mortise & tenon used in furniture making.
2. Explain the mechanical and aesthetic purpose of each joint, such as how mortise & tenon joints offer strength for table legs.
3. Select appropriate joints based on load, alignment, and visual finish, especially when working on the various parts of a wooden table.

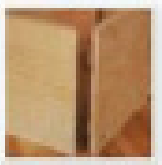
6.2.1 Common Types of Wood Joints

Wood joints are used to connect two or more pieces of wood in furniture making. The strength, look, and quality of furniture depend on the type of joint used. Each joint has a different purpose some give more strength, some improve the appearance, and some help align parts properly. Understanding common joint types helps you decide which one to use in different parts of a table or any wooden structure. The choice of joint depends on the load it must carry, how easy it is to make, and how neat it looks.

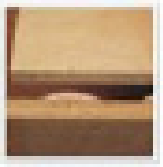
angled-tendons

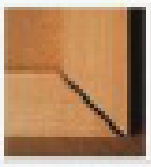
bevel-lap-splice-...


birds-mouth-joints


biscuited-miter

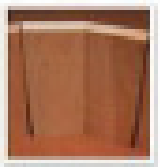
biscuited-miter-j


biscuited-joint

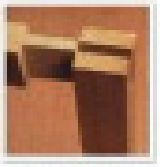

butt-miter

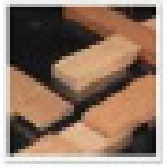
cogged-scarf-joint

Compound-miter

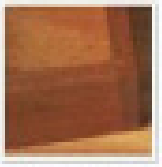

Coopered-edge-j..

Corner Half Lap Joint

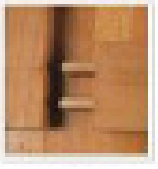

Corner-bridle-Joint

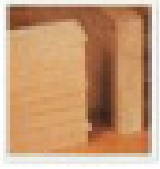

croos-half-laps

dadoes

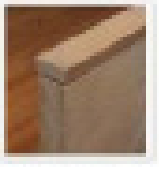

dado-rabbets

dovetail-lap-joint

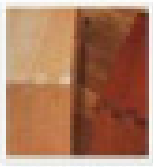

doweled-joint

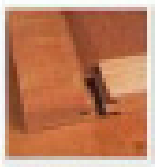

dowel-joint

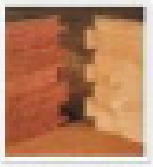
drawer-lock-joints


edgebanding

edge-joint


finger-joint


frames-and-panels

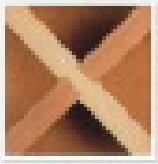

full-blind-dovetails

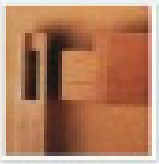
grooves

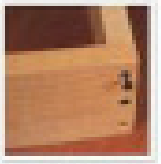
Half-blind-dovet..

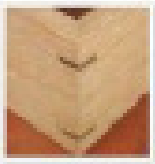
Half-lap-splice-jo..

Halved-joint

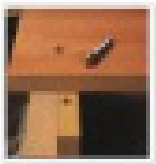

Halved-joints

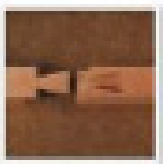

haunched-joints

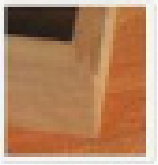

joints-w-fastenrs


keyed-miter-joint

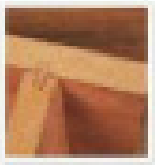
knockdown-joints

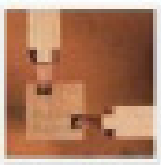

knockdown-joints

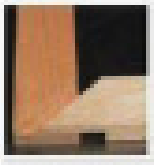

lapped-dovetail

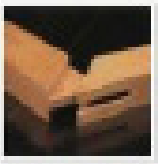

lock-miter

loose-tendons

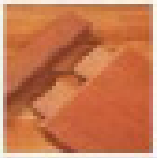

loose-longue-joint

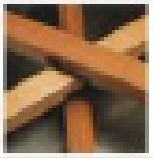

mating-tendons


mitered-half-la..


mitered-slip-joint

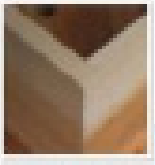
mortice and tennon

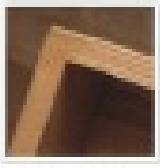

mortice and tennon

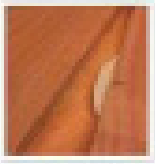

one-third-lap-joint

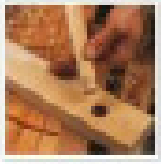
pocket-hole-joint

pocketjoint

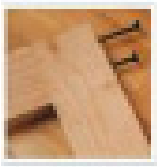

rabbeted miter

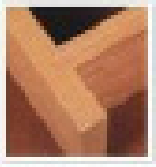

rabbets


reinforced-edge


round-mortises

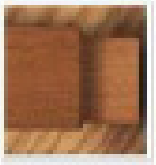
round-tendons

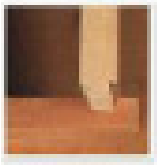

screwed-joint

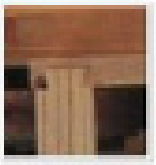

shoulder dadoes

simple-mortise

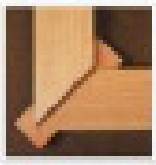
simple-scarf-joint


simple-tendons


sliding-dovetails


sole-dovetails

splined-miter


splined-miter-joint

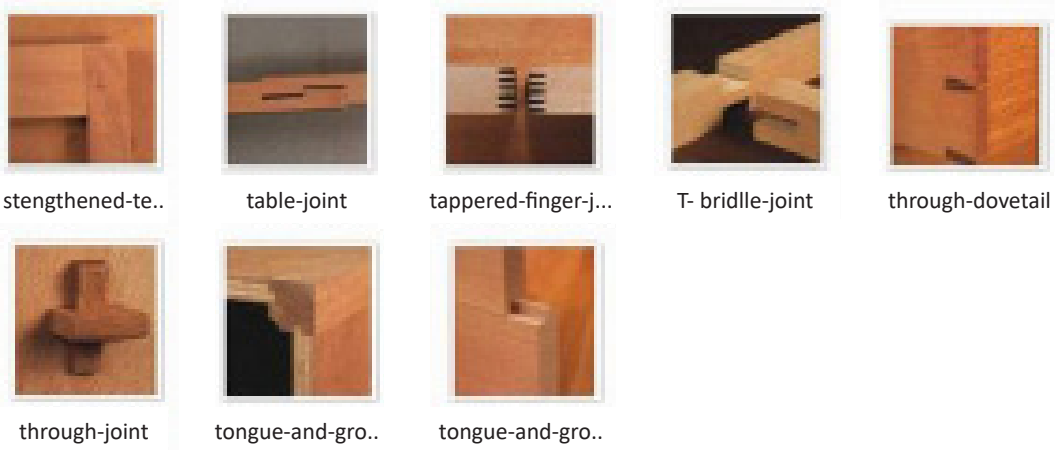


Fig. 6.2.1: Types of Wood Joints

6.2.2 Purpose of Each Joint

Every wood joint in furniture making has a specific purpose. Some joints are made to give strength and support so that the furniture can hold weight and last longer. Others are used to make the product look neat, smooth, and attractive. Choosing the right joint depends on where it is used like in legs, frames, or table tops and what function it should serve. Understanding these two main purposes mechanical and aesthetic helps in planning and building better furniture.

Mechanical Purpose (Strength and Support)

Mechanical purpose means the joint is made to hold parts together strongly. Joints like mortise and tenon or lap joints are used where the wood needs to carry weight or stay firm for a long time. For example, table legs, chair arms, and support frames need these strong joints. They help the furniture stay steady and safe during daily use. These joints reduce wobbling or breaking and are perfect for areas that face regular pressure or movement.

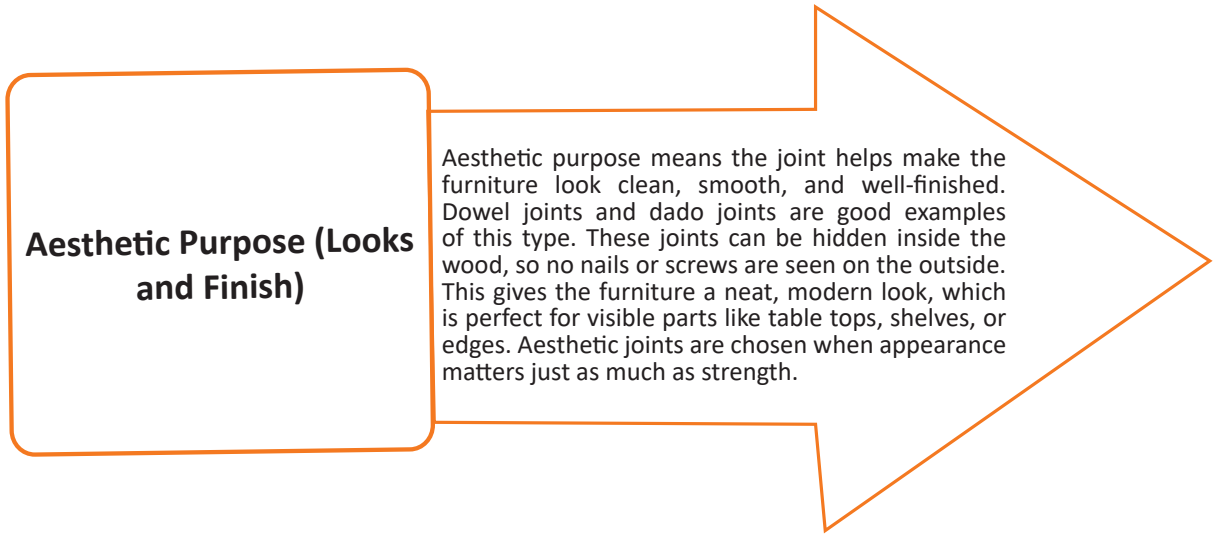


Fig. 6.2.2: Main two purpose of each joint

6.2.3 Selecting the Right Joint for Table Parts

Choosing the correct joint is very important in furniture making, especially while building a wooden table. Each part of the table legs, frame, top, or side has a different function. So, the joint used must match the need of that part. Some joints are strong and good for holding weight, while others help in making the table look neat or keeping the parts aligned properly. Below are the three main factors to consider when selecting joints:

1. **Load Carrying**

   Some parts of a table, like legs and main frame, need to carry a lot of weight. For these parts, you should use strong joints like the mortise and tenon joint. This joint holds two wood pieces tightly and doesn't break or shake easily. It is perfect for giving strength and long life to the table. This kind of joint is used in heavy-load areas where the table must remain stable even after years of use.

2. **Alignment**

   In areas where wood parts must fit exactly and stay in place, like table corners or support beams, lap joints or are very useful. These joints help keep everything straight and well-aligned. They prevent parts from moving or shifting and give a neat structure. These joints are easy to make dado joints and help in setting the table pieces properly before final fixing.

3. **Appearance**

   When the surface of the table needs to look clean and beautiful without any nails or screws showing, you should use dowel joints or other hidden joints. These joints are placed inside the wood, so the outside looks smooth and polished. They are great for the tabletop or any visible side where appearance matters the most. These joints also make the furniture look professionally made.

Unit 6.3: Processes to Build Wood Joints

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Demonstrate how to mark, cut, and shape joints using chisels, routers, and drills, ensuring accuracy in depth, angle, and width.
2. Practice building specific joints like mortise & tenon and dowel connections to fit structural components of a table frame.

6.3.1 Marking, Cutting, and Shaping Joints

To build strong and perfect wood joints, it is very important to first mark, cut, and shape the wood pieces correctly. This helps the parts fit tightly together without gaps. Good marking helps avoid mistakes, cutting ensures the pieces match properly, and shaping gives a smooth finish. All these steps must be done with care and the right tools. The cuts must be of correct depth, angle, and width to keep the joint strong and long-lasting. Proper joints improve the strength, look, and quality of furniture.

1. Marking

Marking is the first step in making a joint. Use a ruler, pencil, and try square to draw clear and straight lines where the joint will be cut. This ensures the joint is made in the correct place and size. If the marking is wrong, the whole joint may become loose or weak. Good marking helps save time and reduces mistakes during cutting and fitting. Always double-check the markings before starting to cut.

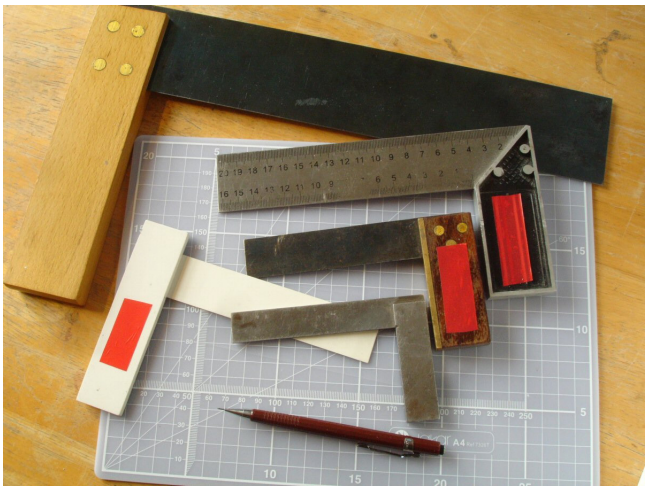


Fig. 6.3.1: Marking

i. Precision is Key

This initial step is the absolute foundation for a successful joint. Any small error made during marking, whether it's a slightly off-center line or an incorrect measurement, will be magnified as you proceed with cutting and shaping. Think of it as drawing the blueprint directly onto your material if the blueprint is flawed, the final structure will be too, leading to ill-fitting parts or wasted material.

ii. Transferring Design

You take the exact dimensions, angles, and outlines of the joint from your architectural plan, engineering drawing, or conceptual sketch and accurately transfer them onto the actual workpiece. This involves using precise measuring tools to locate where the joint begins and ends, and marking out the specific lines that define its shape and boundaries. It's about translating a flat design into a three-dimensional guide for your cuts.

iii. Tools

A variety of specialized tools are employed to ensure crisp, accurate marks. Sharp pencils are used for initial layouts, while a marking knife or a very sharp utility knife creates fine, incised lines that provide a precise cutting guide and help prevent tear-out. Squares (like a try square or combination square) ensure lines are perfectly perpendicular, and marking gauges or mortise gauges are essential for scribing parallel lines at exact distances from an edge, crucial for consistent joint thickness.

iv. Waste Side" Indication

Once all the lines are marked, it's a vital practice to clearly indicate which side of the line represents the material to be removed. This is often done by drawing an "X" or a series of squiggly lines on the waste portion. This simple visual cue prevents you from mistakenly cutting away the part of the material that is meant to remain, thus saving time, material, and frustration.

2. Cutting

After marking, the next step is cutting. Use tools like saws, chisels, or routers to cut along the lines carefully. The cut must match the exact size of the joint to ensure tight fitting. Rough or uneven cuts can create gaps or weak spots. Cutting should be done slowly and with control, especially in small parts. Always wear safety gear when cutting wood.

Fig. 6.3.2: Cutting

i. Removing Material

This stage involves the physical removal of the designated waste material, following the precise lines marked in the previous step. The aim is to create the specific shape and form of the joint, whether it's a slot (mortise), a protruding tongue (tenon), or interlocking fingers (dovetail). This process transforms the raw material into the interlinking components of the joint.

ii. Types of Cuts

Joints require a diverse range of cuts, depending on their design. These can include straightforward straight cuts to define the main body of a tenon, angled cuts for mitered joints, curved cuts for decorative elements or specific joint types, or internal cuts for creating slots and holes. Each type of cut demands specific tools and techniques to ensure accuracy and clean edges.

iii. Tools

The selection of cutting tools is dictated by the material and the complexity of the joint. For woodworking, hand saws like tenon saws or dovetail saws are used for precise, straight cuts; power saws such as circular saws or band saws offer efficiency for larger material removal. Chisels are indispensable for finer, detailed work and paring. Routers, both handheld and on a table, are highly versatile for creating consistent dadoes, rebates, and mortises with specific profiles.

iv. Accuracy

Executing cuts with extreme accuracy is paramount for a strong and visually appealing joint. This means cutting precisely to the marked lines, not beside them. Clean, straight cuts without tear-out or unevenness are essential because a well-cut joint will fit snugly with minimal gaps, contributing significantly to the overall strength and stability of the assembled piece.

3. Shaping

Shaping means cleaning and smoothing the cut edges so that the two wood pieces can join perfectly. After cutting, there may be rough surfaces or extra wood left. Use a chisel or sandpaper to remove it. Good shaping helps avoid gaps between parts and makes the joint neat. Shaping also helps the glue stick better and makes the joint stronger.

Fig. 6.3.3: Shaping

i. **Refining the Cut**

After the initial cutting, this stage focuses on cleaning up and meticulously fine-tuning the cut surfaces. Even with precise cutting tools, there can be slight imperfections, rough edges, or residual fibers. Shaping involves removing these minute flaws to achieve perfectly smooth and flat surfaces that will allow for an optimal fit.

ii. **Tools**

A range of hand tools is typically used for this delicate work. Sharp chisels are invaluable for paring down high spots, squaring corners, and achieving exact dimensions. Files and rasps can be used for more aggressive material removal or for shaping curves, while sandpaper, often wrapped around a block, is used for final smoothing to ensure an even and clean surface finish.

iii. **Achieving Fit**

The primary goal of shaping is to ensure that the mating parts of the joint fit together snugly and precisely. When you bring the two pieces of a joint together, there should be no noticeable gaps or wobbles. They should slide together with a firm, consistent pressure, indicating a tight mechanical connection that will hold strong when assembled, often with the aid of glue.

iv. **Joint Strength and Aesthetics**

Proper shaping directly impacts both the functional strength and the visual appeal of the joint. A precisely shaped joint allows for maximum surface contact between the mating parts, which is crucial for glue adhesion and overall structural integrity. Furthermore, in fine woodworking, a perfectly executed joint with no gaps or misalignment speaks volumes about the craftsmanship and contributes significantly to the overall beauty of the finished product.

v. **Testing**

Throughout the shaping process, it's essential to continuously test the fit of the joint. This involves dry-fitting the pieces together frequently. This iterative process allows you to identify tight spots or areas needing further removal. By making small, controlled adjustments based on these test fits, you can progressively refine the joint until it achieves the desired perfect and tight connection, avoiding over-removal of material.

6.3.2 Practicing Mortise & Tenon and Dowel Joints

Mortise and tenon joints and dowel joints are two of the most important joints used in wooden table making. They are strong, useful, and often used for building the table frame, legs, and panels. These joints help connect wood pieces firmly and give the furniture a clean and long-lasting finish. Learning how to make them properly improves the strength and look of the final product.

Mortise and Tenon Joint

i. **Two Parts, Tenon and Mortise**

A mortise and tenon joint is a very old and strong method used in woodwork. It connects two wood pieces by fitting a tongue (tenon) into a hole (mortise). The tenon is shaped on one piece of wood, and the mortise is made on the other. When they match correctly, the joint holds tightly. This type of joint is widely used in table legs and wooden frames. It is trusted for strength and long use.

ii. **Marking the Mortise**

Before cutting the mortise, it is important to mark the exact place for the hole. Use a ruler, pencil, and square to draw clear and straight lines. This ensures the hole is cut in the correct

position. Accurate marking helps the tenon fit perfectly later. Good marking also saves time and prevents errors. Careful planning gives a cleaner finish.

iii. Cutting the Mortise and Tenon

After marking, the next step is to cut both the mortise and the tenon. A chisel and drill can be used to cut out the mortise slot neatly. Then, shape the tenon from the other wood piece to fit exactly into the slot. Both shapes must match in size and angle. A tight fit gives strong support. This step must be done with patience and care.

iv. Joining and Gluing

Once the tenon and mortise are ready, it is time to join them. Apply glue inside the mortise hole and on the tenon. Fit the tenon into the mortise and press it tightly. Use clamps to hold the joint firmly in place while it dries. Drying takes a few hours, and during this time, no movement should happen. This makes the joint strong and long-lasting.

v. Best for Strong Support

This joint is very strong and used in areas where the furniture has to carry a lot of weight. It is perfect for joining table legs to the frame. Once glued and dried, the joint does not loosen easily. It is a trusted method for strong and heavy-use furniture. The joint stays solid for many years if made properly.

Dowel Joint

i. Marking the Dowels

Dowel joints are made by connecting wood pieces with round sticks called dowels. Before starting, you must mark where each dowel will go. Use a ruler or dowel marking tool to make the marks on both pieces. These points must match perfectly. If the marks are wrong, the pieces won't join correctly. Careful marking helps keep the joint straight and neat.

ii. Drilling the Holes

After marking, drill holes at the marked points. The holes must be the same size as the dowels. They should also be the same depth and straight. If the holes are not matching, the dowels will not fit properly. Always drill carefully using the correct drill bit. This ensures the joint will be strong and even.

iii. Inserting Dowels

Now, take the dowels and place glue inside each hole. Insert the dowels carefully into one side. Then, put glue on the joining surfaces of both wood pieces. Press them together so the dowels go inside the opposite holes. The glue and dowels together make the joint firm. Make sure everything lines up well.

iv. Holding the Joint

To keep the dowel joint in position, you must use clamps. These clamps hold the two pieces tightly while the glue dries. Drying usually takes a few hours. Do not move the wood while drying or the joint may become weak. Once dry, the joint becomes strong and fixed in place.

v. Good for Neat Finish

One of the best things about dowel joints is their clean look. There are no screws or nails visible from outside. This gives a smooth and beautiful finish to the furniture. Dowel joints are often used on tabletops, sides, and places where appearance is important. They make the furniture look neat and professional.

Unit 6.4: Joinery Techniques and Joint Formation

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Apply tested joinery methods for combining wooden parts using adhesives, clamps, and reinforcing materials.
2. Demonstrate how to align and fit joints with proper pressure and curing time during the table's assembly.
3. Secure jointed components using fasteners while maintaining squareness and structural balance.
4. Check each joint for flush finish, dimensional accuracy, and grip strength.
5. Rectify minor fitting issues during joint formation to avoid defects in final assembly.

6.4.1 Using Joinery Methods with Glue, Clamps, and Support Materials

Joinery is the method of joining two or more wooden parts to build strong and long-lasting furniture. Proper joinery ensures the wood parts stay fixed and do not come apart with use. Glue, clamps, and support materials like dowels or screws are commonly used to make these joints strong. Glue helps the surfaces stick together, clamps hold the joint tightly while it dries, and support materials add extra strength. If these methods are used correctly, the joints become strong, neat, and long-lasting. These steps must be done carefully to ensure the final furniture piece is firm, well-shaped, and durable.

Glue

Glue is a sticky substance used to join two wooden surfaces together. In woodworking, wood glue is specially made to hold wooden pieces firmly. It soaks into the wood surface and becomes strong as it dries. Once the glue is dry, it helps the joint stay fixed and not come apart. Glue is always used before clamping to create a tight and lasting bond between the parts

Processing

Clamps are tools used to hold two or more wooden pieces tightly together while the glue dries. They help keep the joint in the right position and apply pressure so the glue sticks well. There are different types of clamps like C-clamps, bar clamps, and pipe clamps depending on the size and shape of the wood. Without clamps, the glue may not work properly because the joint can shift or stay loose.

Storage

- Support materials are extra things added to make the joint stronger. Common support materials include:
- Dowels, small wooden sticks that fit into drilled holes in both pieces to help line them up and add strength.
- Screws, metal fasteners that are driven into the wood to keep the parts tightly fixed.
- Nails, thin metal pins that are hammered in for extra grip (used less in fine joinery).
- These materials give more support to the joint, especially for parts that carry weight or face regular use.

Fig. 6.4.1: Tools and materials for making strong wood joints

Joinery Methods

1. **Apply Glue on the Joint Surfaces**

   Start by applying glue on the wood surfaces where the joint will be made. Use good-quality wood glue and spread it evenly using a brush, stick, or even your finger. The glue should cover the full surface without leaving any dry spots or gaps. Avoid using too much glue, as it may squeeze out when the parts are pressed together. Extra glue should be cleaned before it dries. Let the glue sit for a few seconds so it can soak into the wood surface. This helps in forming a strong bond when the joint is clamped.

2. **Use Clamps to Hold the Joint**

   After gluing the parts, it is important to use clamps to press and hold the wood pieces together. Clamps help keep the joint tight and in the correct position while the glue dries. You should choose a clamp that fits the size of the wood piece. Before tightening, check if the parts are straight and aligned properly. Don't apply too much pressure or it can damage the wood or remove too much glue. Leave the clamps in place for a few hours. This makes sure the glue sets well and the joint becomes strong.

3. **Add Support Materials like Dowels or Screws**

   To make the joint even stronger, you can add support materials such as dowels or screws. Dowels are small round sticks that fit into drilled holes in both wood pieces. They help keep the joint tightly fixed and prevent movement. Screws can also be used to hold the pieces together after gluing. Make sure the dowels or screws are of the right size and are placed in the correct position. These materials are very useful in joints that need to hold more weight or face regular use. They give extra grip and support to the joint.

4. **Do Not Move the Joint While Drying**

   Once the glued joint is clamped, it must not be moved until it dries completely. Any movement can make the joint weak or cause the glue to lose grip. Wood glue usually takes 1–2 hours to set and about 24 hours to fully dry. It is best to leave the clamp undisturbed during this time. If the joint is moved or shaken, it may come apart later. Make sure the area around the joint is safe and no one accidentally touches or shifts it. Letting the glue dry properly helps the joint become strong and lasting.

5. **Keep the Wood Pieces Straight and Tight**

   Before and during the joining process, always make sure the wooden parts are straight and tightly fit. Use measuring tools like a square or ruler to check if the corners are at 90 degrees. If the wood is not aligned properly, the joint may look uneven or feel loose. A tight and straight joint helps the overall furniture shape stay balanced and firm. If needed, you can slightly adjust the parts or tap them gently with a hammer before the glue dries. Once the joint dries, it should be strong, even, and well-shaped.

6.4.2 Fitting and Aligning Joints with Proper Pressure and Drying Time

When joining wooden parts, it is important to make sure they are correctly matched, aligned, and held with the right pressure until the glue dries. Good joint fitting ensures that the furniture is strong, balanced, and long-lasting. If the pieces are not aligned or the glue doesn't dry well, the joint may become weak. Clamps are used to hold the parts together tightly while the glue sets. Letting the joint dry fully without moving it is also very important. Taking care during this step helps make the final product strong and neat. Some practices to ensure joints are fitted, clamped, and dried correctly for a strong hold:

a. Check the Fit of Both Pieces

Before you apply glue, place the two wooden pieces together and check if they fit tightly without gaps. If the fit is loose or uneven, the joint will not hold properly. You may need to smooth the edges using sandpaper or adjust them slightly with a chisel. This step helps you avoid problems later. A good fit means the joint will be strong and clean. Always test-fit the pieces before moving to gluing.

b. Align the Parts Evenly

Make sure that both wood pieces are straight and their corners or edges line up perfectly. Use a ruler or carpenter's square to check the angles. If the alignment is wrong, the final piece may lean, wobble, or look unbalanced. Proper alignment helps create a neat, strong structure. Always double-check your setup before clamping. A well-aligned joint gives better results in assembly.

c. Apply Correct Clamping Pressure

After applying glue, use clamps to hold the pieces together. The pressure should be firm but not too tight. Too much pressure can push out all the glue and weaken the bond, while too little pressure may leave gaps between the pieces. Even pressure helps the glue spread and stick properly. Use enough clamps to cover the whole joint area. Always wipe off any extra glue that squeezes out.

d. Allow Full Drying Time

Once the pieces are clamped, let them dry fully as per the glue instructions. Most glues need a few hours or overnight to dry completely. If the joint is moved or disturbed during drying, it may not bond properly. The glue needs time to set deep inside the joint. Do not rush this step. Waiting ensures that the joint becomes strong and firm.

e. Do Not Remove Clamp Early

It is important not to remove the clamp before the glue has fully dried. Even if the glue seems dry outside, it may still be wet inside the joint. Removing the clamp too early can break the bond and weaken the connection. Always wait for the full drying time. Keeping the clamp on helps hold everything in the right position.

f. Result of Proper Alignment and Pressure

When the pieces are well-aligned and pressed with the correct pressure, the final joint is neat, tight, and strong. The furniture or item will look better and last longer. It won't shake, bend, or break easily. This careful process helps avoid future problems. A good joint is the result of accurate fitting, pressure, and drying time.

6.4.3 Using Fasteners to Hold Jointed Parts in Place

In woodworking, fasteners such as screws, nails, and bolts are commonly used to hold pieces of wood together after the glue has dried. These mechanical devices add extra strength to joints and help maintain the correct shape and alignment of the furniture. Fasteners are especially important for heavy or load-bearing furniture, such as tables, chairs, or cabinets. When used properly, they ensure that the joints remain secure over time, preventing shifting or loosening. To achieve the best results, it is important to use fasteners correctly and with precision.

A. Role of Fasteners in Strengthening Joints

Fasteners add extra support to glued joints, making the furniture stronger and more durable under pressure or load. While glue holds the parts together initially, fasteners ensure the joints don't loosen or shift over time. Screws provide excellent grip and can be removed if needed during repairs or adjustments. Nails are faster to install but are better suited for lighter or decorative pieces. Bolts are used in heavy-duty furniture where strong, replaceable joints are necessary for long-term use.

B. Checking the Right Angle Before Fixing

Ensuring the correct angle before fixing fasteners is important to maintain the furniture's balance and appearance. Most joints in furniture must be fixed at a 90-degree angle to ensure proper alignment. Using a square tool helps confirm that the joint is accurate before you drive in the screw or nail. If the angle is off, the furniture may not stand evenly or may twist over time. Misaligned joints can also affect the overall look and durability of the item.

C. Importance of a Square Tool

A square tool is essential for checking and maintaining correct angles during furniture assembly. It is especially useful for making sure the corners and edges of the wood are at a perfect right angle. This helps prevent errors in alignment before fasteners are inserted. The tool improves accuracy in tasks like attaching legs, frames, or panels. Using it ensures that each part fits well and maintains the intended shape of the furniture.

D. Inserting Fasteners Correctly

To get the best hold, fasteners must be inserted straight and at the right depth. Screws or nails driven at an angle can weaken the joint and may split the wood. When working with hard or thick wood, drilling a pilot hole helps guide the fastener and reduces the risk of cracking. The fastener should be flush with the surface, not sticking out or buried too deep. Proper insertion makes the furniture both stronger and more attractive.

E. Choosing the Right Type and Size of Fastener

The type and size of fastener used should match the thickness and purpose of the wood. For thicker, load-bearing parts, long screws or bolts are necessary for deep grip and durability. For thinner wood, short fasteners are better to avoid damage or protrusion. In outdoor or humid environments, rust-resistant options like galvanized or stainless steel fasteners are ideal. The correct fastener not only strengthens the structure but also improves the final appearance.

F. Enhancing the Shape and Stability of Furniture

Well-chosen fasteners do more than just hold wood together they also maintain the overall shape and strength of the furniture. A secure joint helps keep the furniture stable and prevents future wobbling or cracking. The right placement of fasteners ensures even edges, proper fit, and a clean look. Strong, stable furniture is safer to use and lasts longer, thanks to the added support from quality fasteners.

6.4.4 Checking Each Joint

When making a wooden table, it is very important to check each joint carefully. A joint is the place where two wooden parts are joined or fixed together. If the joint is strong and made properly, the table will be strong and last long. A bad joint can make the table shaky or break after some time. So, before final assembly, always check every joint. This helps to find and fix any small mistake early. The following checks will help confirm the strength and quality of every joint:

a) Flat and Even Surface (Flush Finish)

When two parts are joined, their surfaces should be at the same level. Neither part should stick out or be lower than the other. A flat and even joint looks clean and feels smooth when you touch it. This makes the table look nice and helps parts fit well together.

b) Correct Size and Fit

The parts must fit in the right place with the correct size. You should measure the table's height, width, and length to make sure everything is right. If the sizes are correct, the table will stand properly and won't wobble or lean.

c) Tight Grip

The joined parts should hold together firmly and not move. When you press or shake the joint, it should feel strong and tight. A tight joint makes the table strong and stops it from shaking or falling apart.

d) No Gaps

There should be no empty space between the parts where they meet. The pieces should fit closely side by side without any holes or gaps. This keeps the joint strong and helps the table look neat and finished.

e) Good Support

The joint needs to hold the parts firmly so the table can carry weight without breaking. A strong joint keeps the table steady and safe to use. Good support also helps the table last a long time without becoming loose.

6.4.5 Fix Small Fitting Problems Early

Before putting all the parts of a table together for the final time, it is very important to check if everything fits well. Sometimes, small problems with fitting can happen, like parts being too tight or too loose. If these small issues are not fixed early, they can cause bigger problems later. Fixing them before final assembly makes the work easier and faster. It also helps to make the table strong and look nice. Taking time to check and fix small fitting problems early will save a lot of trouble in the end. Following steps are important for making a good and long-lasting table:

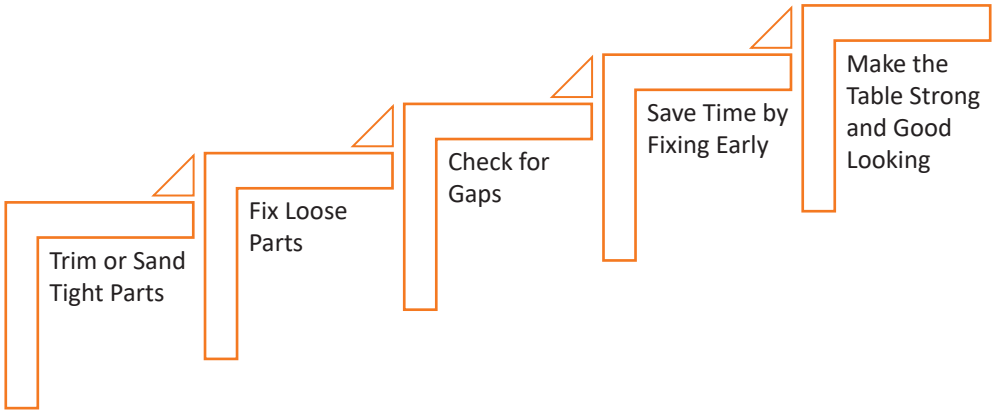


Fig. 6.4.2: Steps to fix small fitting problems early

1. **Trim or Sand Tight Parts**

   Sometimes a part may be too tight and hard to fit in its place. When this happens, carefully use a small saw or sandpaper to make the edges a little smaller. Do this slowly and check often to avoid removing too much. This helps the part fit easily without forcing it. Proper fitting makes the table strong and prevents damage during assembly.

2. **Fix Loose Parts**

   If a part feels loose and moves too much, it needs to be fixed so it holds well. You can apply glue to the joint to make it stick better. Sometimes, you may need to adjust the joint by adding a small piece or tightening screws. A tight joint keeps the table steady and stops parts from moving or falling apart later.

3. **Check for Gaps**

   Look carefully where the parts join together. If there are spaces or gaps, the table will not look good or feel strong. Fill small gaps with glue or wood filler to make the surface smooth and clean. Closing gaps also helps stop dust or dirt from getting inside the joints.

4. **Save Time by Fixing Early**

   Fixing small problems before putting the table fully together saves a lot of time. It prevents having to take the table apart later to fix mistakes. This way, the work is faster and easier when doing the final assembly. Early fixes help avoid big problems that can ruin the table.

5. **Make the Table Strong and Good Looking**

   By fixing these small fitting problems early, the table becomes stronger and lasts longer. It also looks neat and smooth with no loose or uneven parts. Good fitting makes the table safe to use and more attractive. Taking care of these details gives a better finished product.

Unit 6.5: Surface Preparation and Finishing

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Explain how to prepare wooden surfaces for finishing by sanding, smoothening, and correcting defects like splinters or cracks.
2. Identify and treat minor surface imperfections to ensure an even texture and colour absorption.
3. Prepare the table's surfaces for polish or sealant using the appropriate abrasive tools and fillers.

6.5.1 How to Prepare Wooden Surfaces

Preparing wooden surfaces is an important step before finishing a table or any woodwork. A smooth and clean surface helps paint, polish, or sealant stick better and look nicer. If the wood is rough or has cracks, the finish will not be even and may peel off quickly. That's why sanding, smoothening, and fixing small defects are needed first.

Fig. 6.5.1: Smooth wooden surface

These steps make sure the wood feels soft and looks good. Proper surface preparation also helps protect the wood and makes the final product strong and beautiful.

What is wooden surfaces?

Wooden surfaces are the outer parts or faces of any object made from wood. It is the part of the wood that you can see and touch, like the top of a table, the side of a chair, or a wooden door. These surfaces can be smooth or rough, flat or curved, and need to be prepared well before painting, polishing, or finishing. Proper care of wooden surfaces helps make furniture look nice and last longer.

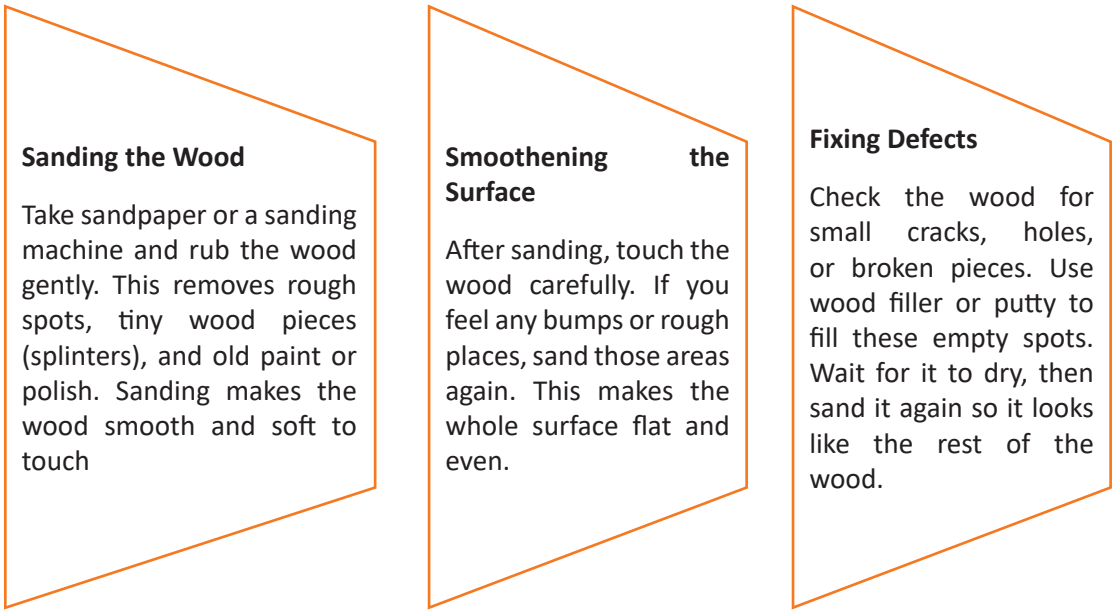


Fig. 6.5.2: How to prepare wooden surface

6.5.2 Identifying and Treating Minor Surface Problems

Before finishing wood, it is important to find and fix small surface problems. These small defects can make the furniture look bad if left untreated. By carefully checking and treating these issues, the surface becomes smooth and ready for paint or polish. This step helps the final finish look even and clean. These are the features of identifying and treating minor surface problem:

Fig. 6.5.3: Features of identifying and treating minor surface problems

Identifying Minor Surface Problems

i. **Look Carefully Under Good Light**

To find small problems on the wood, check it in a bright place. Good light helps you see scratches, dents, or cracks that are hard to notice in poor light. Moving your eyes slowly over the surface helps spot every tiny defect. This careful checking is important because even small flaws can affect how the wood looks after finishing.

ii. **Check All Areas of the Wood**

Make sure to examine the entire wood surface, including edges and corners. Sometimes defects hide in less visible places. By checking every part, you ensure no problem is missed. This step prepares the wood fully for a smooth and clean finish.

iii. **Look for Scratches, Dents, and Cracks**

Focus on finding scratches (thin marks), dents (small depressions), and cracks (small breaks). These are common surface problems that can make the wood look rough or damaged. Identifying these issues early helps in fixing them properly.

Treating Minor Surface Problems

i. **Use Fine Sandpaper to Remove Scratches**

Lightly rub fine sandpaper on scratches to smooth the surface. Sanding gently avoids making the problem worse. This removes small marks and helps the wood feel smooth. Proper sanding makes the wood ready for paint or polish to stick evenly.

ii. **Apply Wood Filler to Dents and Cracks**

For dents or cracks, use a wood filler that matches the color of the wood. Fill the damaged area with the filler and press it in gently. Let the filler dry completely before moving to the next step. This fills gaps and makes the surface even again.

iii. **Sand the Filled Areas Smooth**

After the filler dries, use sandpaper to smooth the filled spots so they blend with the rest of the wood. Sand carefully to avoid removing too much filler. This step makes sure the wood surface looks flat and ready for a perfect finish.

iv. **Ensure an Even Surface for Finishing**

Fixing small defects helps the polish or paint spread evenly over the wood. This avoids patches that are too light or dark. A smooth, even surface creates a beautiful, uniform look for the finished table or furniture piece.

6.5.3 Preparing for Polish or Sealant

Before putting polish or sealant on wood, we need to get the surface ready. This helps the polish stick well and makes the wood look smooth and shiny. If the wood is not clean or smooth, the polish may look uneven or rough. Any cracks or holes in the wood should be fixed first so the table looks nice and strong. Using the right tools and cleaning the surface properly gives a better finish. This also protects the wood and helps it last longer. Taking time to prepare the wood well gives a nice and strong final look. These are the main actions needed to prepare the surface correctly:

What is Polish or Sealant?

Polish and sealant are special liquids used on wood to make it look nice and protect it.

Polish

Polish is a shiny coating that you put on wood to make it smooth and bright. It also helps keep the wood clean and easy to wipe.

Sealant

Sealant is a protective layer that stops water, dirt, and dust from getting inside the wood. It helps stop the wood from getting damaged or breaking.

Both polish and sealant keep the wood safe and make furniture like tables and chairs look new and last longer.

a) Choosing Tools

First, pick the right sandpaper. Use rough sandpaper to smooth out bumps and rough spots. Then use fine sandpaper to make the wood very smooth. Using the wrong sandpaper can leave marks or not make the wood smooth enough. The right sanding helps the polish stick better and makes the surface even. Sanding also helps the wood take in the polish nicely.

Fig. 6.5.4: Sandpaper

b) Cleaning the Surface

Before putting polish or sealant, clean the wood well. Dust and dirt can stop the polish from sticking and make the wood look bad. Use a soft cloth to wipe off all dust and dirt. Sometimes, a slightly wet cloth can be used, but the wood must be dry before polishing. A clean surface helps the polish spread evenly and look nice.

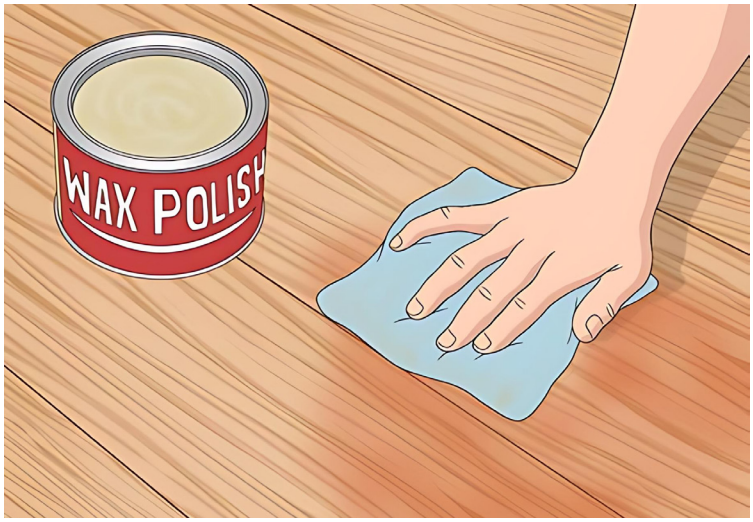


Fig. 6.5.5: Clean the wood before polish or sealant

c) Using Fillers

If there are small cracks, holes, or dents in the wood, fill them with wood filler or putty. Let it dry fully before sanding it smooth. Sanding the filler makes it look like part of the wood. This gives a flat surface and helps the polish cover the wood evenly. Filling cracks also keeps dirt and water out and protects the wood.

Fig. 6.5.6: Wood filler

d) Ready for Finish

When the wood is smooth, clean, and no cracks are left, it is ready for polish or sealant. A well-prepared surface helps the finish stick well and makes the wood shine. The polish keeps the wood safe from water, dust, and damage. Spending time on preparation makes the table look beautiful and last a long time. Good preparation is the key for a perfect finish.

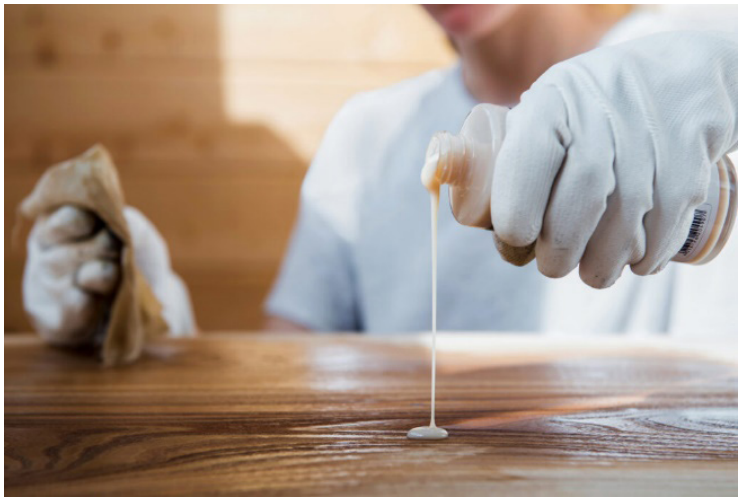


Fig. 6.5.7: Wood polish

Unit 6.6: Product Assembly and Installation

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Demonstrate the assembly of a wooden table by aligning parts in sequence and tightening fasteners such as corner brackets or screws.
2. Inspect the final structure for flatness, wobble, joint gaps, and alignment with installation space.

6.6.1 Assembling the Table Parts

When we build a wooden table, we must put all the parts together in the correct order. This is called assembling. If we do this step properly, the table will be strong, balanced, and last longer. It is important to use the right tools and fasteners and follow each step carefully. Each part must be placed in the right spot and fixed tightly. A good assembly helps the table look neat and work well. To assemble the table correctly, it's important to understand each part and the proper steps involved in putting them together.

A. Match the Parts

Before starting, arrange all the parts of the table on a clean surface. These include the legs, table top, side supports, and any other wooden pieces. Look at each part and understand where it should go. This will help you avoid confusion during the work. Matching the parts before assembly also saves time. When you place each part in the right position first, it becomes easier to join them later.

i. Table Top

The table top is the flat, wide surface where you place things. It is usually the largest part of the table. It can be square, rectangular, or round. The top should be smooth and strong. It connects to the legs and must be placed carefully to stay balanced.

Fig. 6.6.1: Table top

ii. Table Legs

A standard table has four legs. These support the table and help it stand. The legs can be straight, curved, or designed in different shapes. Each leg usually has holes or notches to join with the table frame or top. They must be placed at the right corners for balance.

Fig. 6.6.2: Table legs

iii. Side Supports / Aprons

Side supports (also called aprons or rails) are the long, narrow wooden strips that connect the legs. They go around the table just under the top. They help keep the legs in place and give extra strength to the table. These parts are important for stability.

Fig. 6.6.3: Side support

B. Align Properly

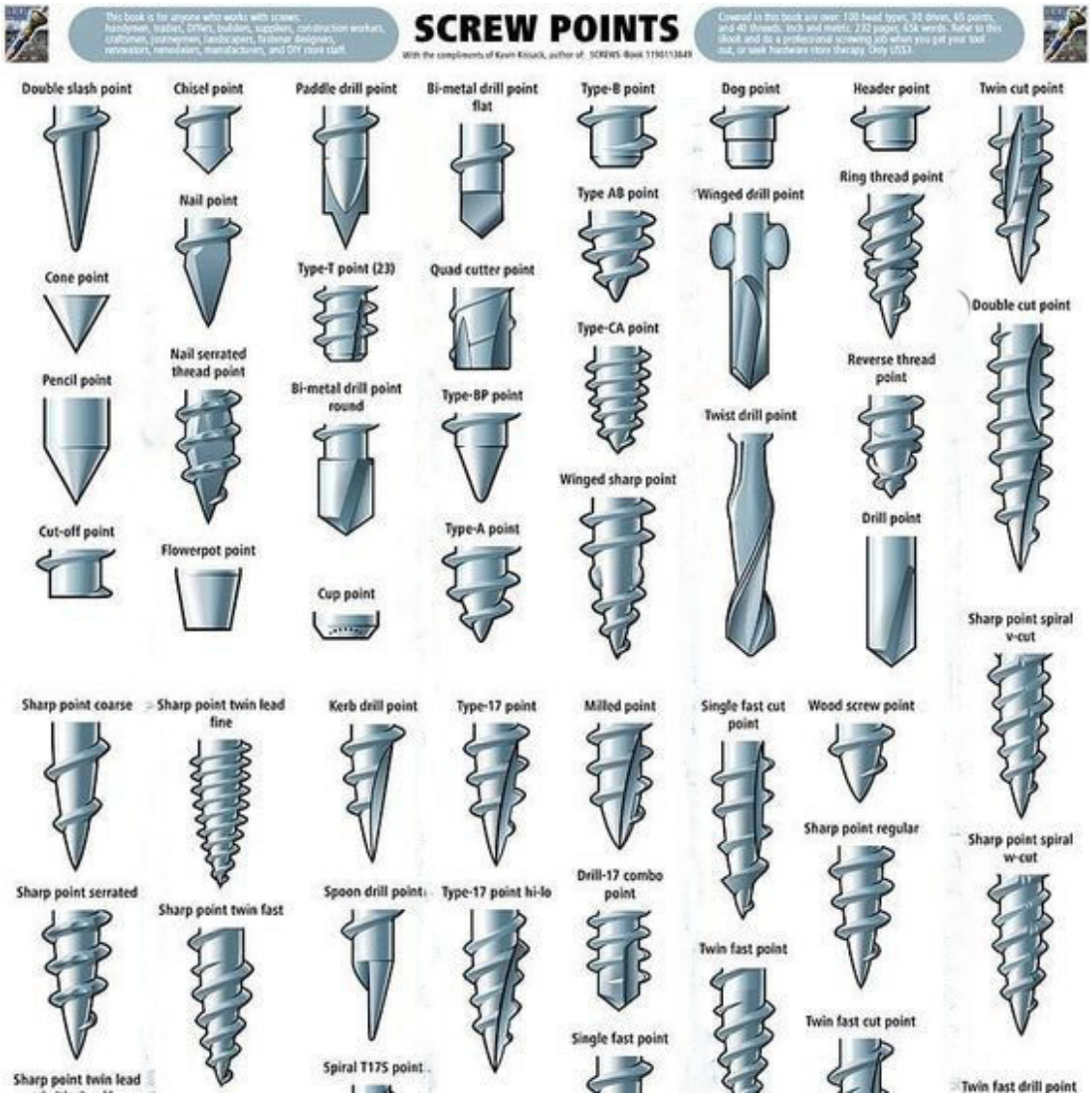
After placing the parts, you must check if the holes and joints line up correctly. Each screw hole or edge must match its opposite part. If one side is not matching, the table can become uneven or shaky. Take time to adjust the parts so they fit well. This is very important for a smooth and strong finish. Proper alignment also helps you fasten the screws easily. When things are in the right place, the whole structure becomes firm.

C. Use Fasteners

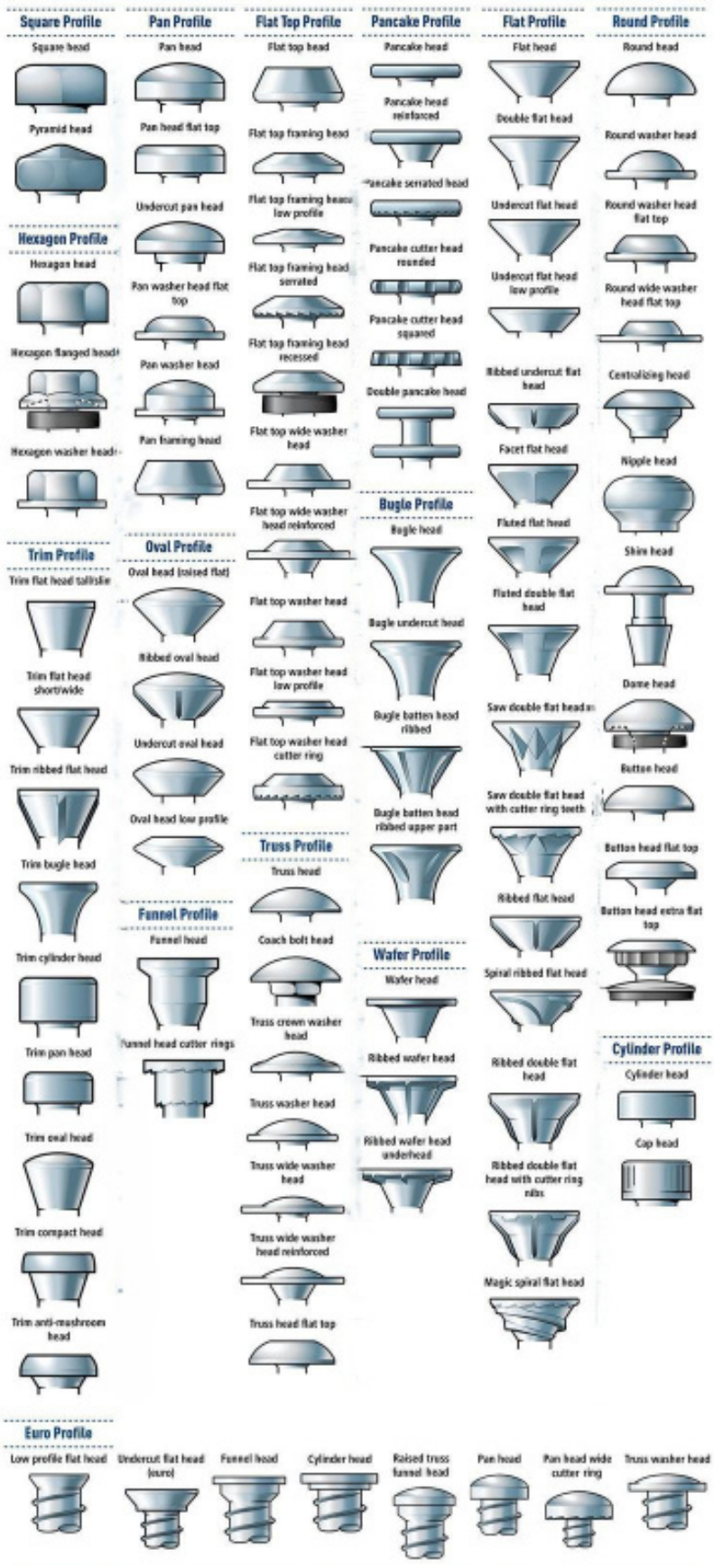
To join the wooden parts, use items like screws, corner brackets, or bolts. These fasteners help hold the table together. Always choose the right size of screw or bolt for each part. Put the screws in tightly so the parts do not move or make noise. Loose fasteners can make the table weak. Use a screwdriver or drill to tighten them properly.

i. Screws

They are used to join two wooden parts tightly. We fix screws into the wood using a screwdriver or a drill. Screws are easy to put in and remove, which makes them very useful for furniture like tables. They hold the parts firmly and keep the table strong.



SCREW HEADS


Square Profile
Square head
Pyramid head
Hexagon Profile
Hexagon head
Hexagon flanged head
Hexagon washer head
Trim Profile
Trim flat head tallisile
Trim flat head short/wide
Trim ribbed flat head
Trim bugle head
Trim cylinder head
Trim pan head
Trim oval head
Trim compact head
Trim anti-mushroom head
Pan Profile
Pan head
Pan head flat top
Undercut pan head
Pan washer head flat top
Pan washer head
Pan framing head
Oval Profile
Oval head (raised flat)
Ribbed oval head
Undercut oval head
Oval head low profile
Funnel Profile
Funnel head
Funnel head cutter rings
Flat Top Profile
Flat top head
Flat top framing head
Flat top framing head low profile
Flat top framing head serrated
Flat top framing head recessed
Flat top wide washer head
Flat top wide washer head reinforced
Flat top washer head
Flat top washer head low profile
Flat top washer head cutter ring
Truss Profile
Truss head
Coach bolt head
Truss crown washer head
Truss washer head
Truss wide washer head
Truss wide washer head reinforced
Truss head flat top
Pancake Profile
Pancake head
Pancake head reinforced
Pancake serrated head
Pancake cutter head rounded
Pancake cutter head squared
Double pancake head
Bugle Profile
Bugle head
Bugle undercut head
Bugle batten head ribbed
Bugle batten head ribbed upper part
Wafer Profile
Wafer head
Ribbed wafer head
Ribbed wafer head underhead
Flat Profile
Flat head
Double flat head
Undercut flat head
Undercut flat head low profile
Ribbed undercut flat head
Facet flat head
Fluted flat head
Fluted double flat head
Saw double flat head in
Saw double flat head with cutter ring teeth
Ribbed flat head
Spiral ribbed flat head
Ribbed double flat head
Ribbed double flat head with cutter ring ribs
Magic spiral flat head
Round Profile
Round head
Round washer head
Round washer head flat top
Round wide washer head flat top
Centralizing head
Nipple head
Shim head
Dome head
Button head
Button head flat top
Button head extra flat top
Cylinder Profile
Cylinder head
Cap head
Euro Profile
Low profile flat head
Undercut flat head (euro)
Funnel head
Cylinder head
Raised truss funnel head
Pan head
Pan head wide cutter ring
Truss washer head

ii. Bolts

They are stronger fasteners than screws. A bolt is a long metal rod with threads, and it goes through holes made in the wooden parts. Bolts are very good when we need to fix heavy parts or make strong joints. We use a spanner or wrench to tighten bolts and nuts together.

Fig. 6.6.5: Bolts

iii. Nuts

They are round metal pieces with a hole in the middle. They have threads inside that match the threads of a bolt. When we tighten a nut onto a bolt, it locks the wood pieces together. Nuts help the table stay tight and firm. They must be the correct size to fit the bolts properly, or they won't work well.

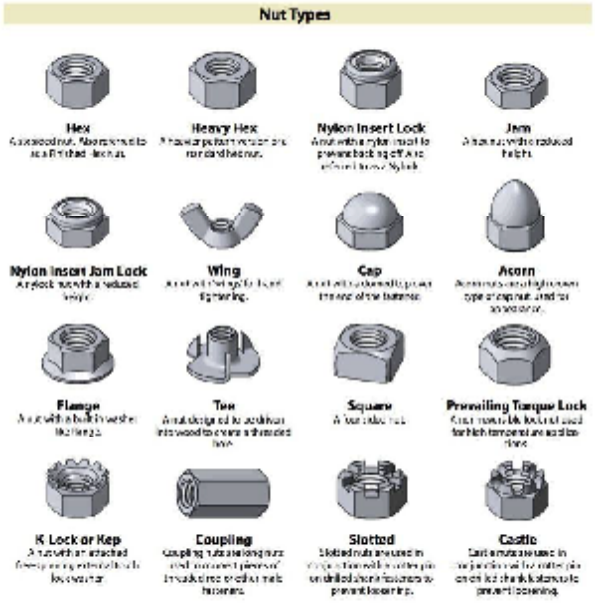


Fig. 6.6.6: Nuts

iv. Corner brackets

They are special L-shaped metal or wooden pieces. They are fixed at the corners of the table to join two parts, like legs and side supports. These brackets are usually attached using screws or bolts. They give extra strength to the corners and help stop the table from shaking or becoming loose.

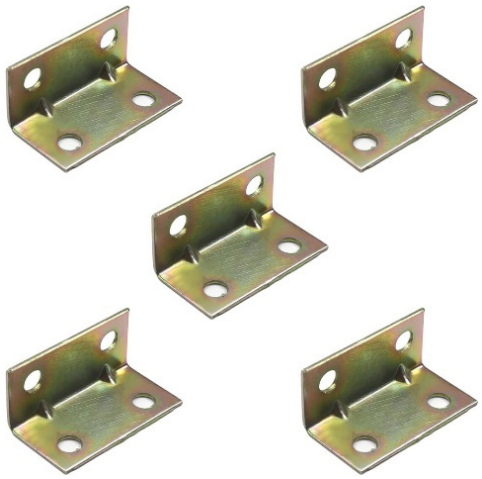


Fig. 6.6.7: Corner bracket

v. Nails

They are thin metal pins that are hammered into the wood. They are used to join two parts quickly. However, nails are not as strong as screws or bolts. Also, it is difficult to remove nails without damaging the wood. That's why nails are not used much in table making, but they can still be helpful in some light work.

Fig. 6.6.8: Nails

D. Work Step by Step

Do not try to fix everything at once. Always work in order. Start with the legs and support frame first. After fixing the bottom parts, attach the table top. This step-by-step way of working helps keep the table straight and balanced. If you do things too quickly, you may make mistakes or miss some parts. Taking one step at a time also helps you check your work and correct it easily if needed.

E. Use Tools Safely

While assembling, you will need tools like a hammer, screwdriver, or electric drill. Always hold and use these tools carefully. Do not rush or use too much force. Be gentle but firm when fixing the screws or hitting nails. Keep your fingers away from sharp parts. Working slowly and safely protects both you and the table.

i. Hammer

A hammer is a tool used to hit nails into the wood. It has a strong metal head and a handle. Hold the hammer by the handle and hit gently to push the nail into the wood. Do not hit too hard, or the wood may crack. Always keep your fingers away from the nail while hammering.

Fig. 6.6.9: Hammer

ii. Screwdriver

A screwdriver is used to turn screws into the wood. It has a handle and a metal tip that fits into the screw head. Hold the handle tightly and turn it slowly in the right direction. Use the correct size of screwdriver for the screw. This helps the screw go in straight and tight.

Fig. 6.6.10: Screwdriver

iii. Electric Drill

An electric drill is a machine that helps make holes in wood. It can also be used to fix screws faster. It runs on electricity or battery. Hold the drill with both hands and press the button slowly. Always wear safety glasses when using a drill, and make sure the drill bit is fixed tightly.

Fig. 6.6.11: Electric drill

6.6.2 Checking the Final Table

Once all parts of the table are joined together, it is very important to check if the table is strong, even, and ready to use. This step helps you find small problems that can be fixed easily. If we skip this checking, the table might wobble, look bad, or even break later. It's better to inspect the table now than to fix big problems later. You should check if the table stands straight, feels strong, and has no loose joints. Also, make sure it fits nicely in the space where it will be kept. A good final check makes sure the table is safe, useful, and looks nice. To ensure the table is sturdy and reliable, you need to carefully inspect several aspects after assembly:

I. Check Flatness

The top of the table should be straight and even. You can place a flat object like a scale or use a level tool to check if the surface is flat. If anything rolls off or slides, it means the top is not level. This can cause problems while using the table. Fix it by checking if the legs are even and the joints are tight.

II. Check for Wobble

Lightly push the table from different sides. If it moves or shakes, it means the table is wobbly. This can happen when the screws are not tight or if the legs are not equal in size. A shaky table is not safe to use. To fix it, tighten all screws and make sure all legs are touching the ground properly.

III. Look for Gaps

Carefully check all the joints of the table. If you see any small spaces or openings between the wood pieces, those are gaps. Gaps can make the table weak and look untidy. They should be fixed by pressing the parts tightly together or adding more glue or fasteners. A good table should have smooth and tight joints.

IV. Test Alignment

Place the table in the room where it will be used. Look at how it stands. It should not be tilted or leaning to one side. All four legs should touch the floor properly. Also, check if it fits well in the space without any problem. If the table is slanted, adjust the joints or the leg length.

Assembling and checking a wooden table is an important skill. When parts are joined in the right order and fastened well, the table becomes strong and long-lasting. Careful checking at the end ensures the table is flat, firm, and ready for daily use.

Unit 6.7: Quality Inspection and Defect Rectification

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Conduct systematic quality checks on the finished table using measuring tools and visual inspection.
2. Identify errors like misaligned joints, surface scratches, or instability and choose suitable methods for correction.
3. Rework or reinforce parts to meet quality benchmarks.
4. Finalize the product only after ensuring it complies with dimensional, structural, and finishing standards.

6.7.1 Doing Quality Checks Using Tools and Visual Inspection

After you finish making the table, it is very important to check its quality carefully. Quality checks make sure the table is made correctly and will work well. Using tools helps you measure the table's size accurately, so it fits where it should. At the same time, looking closely at the table helps you find any small problems like cracks or scratches that tools cannot measure. Touching the surface can show if it is smooth or rough. These simple checks stop mistakes and make sure the table is safe and good for use.

What is Quality Inspection?

Quality inspection is the process of carefully checking a product to make sure it is made well and works properly. It means looking closely at the product to find any mistakes or problems. This can include measuring the size, checking if parts fit together right, and seeing if the surface is smooth and without damage. The goal of quality inspection is to make sure the product is safe, strong, and looks good before it is used or sold. It helps catch problems early so they can be fixed, ensuring the product meets the required standards.

Tools Used for Quality Checks

Measuring tools like tape measures, rulers, or scales are used to check the size of the table. These tools help you measure the length, width, and height exactly. By measuring, you can see if the table matches the size needed or if any part is too big or small. Using tools helps find mistakes that are hard to see with just eyes. It is important to measure carefully to make sure the table fits well in the space where it will be used.

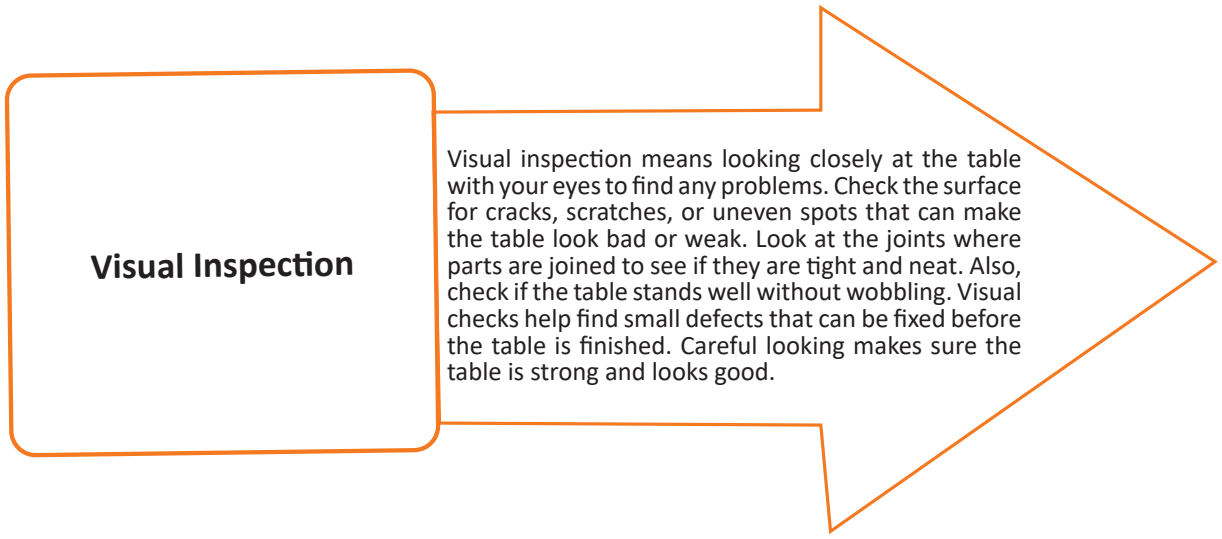


Fig. 6.7.1: Quality checks using tools and visual inspection

6.7.2 Finding and Fixing Common Mistakes

After making the table, it's important to check for small problems that can cause big issues later. These mistakes can make the table look bad, feel weak, or not work properly. Finding these errors early helps to fix them easily. Fixing mistakes makes sure the table is strong, looks good, and lasts longer.

Common Mistakes and How to Fix Them

i. **Misaligned Joints**

Sometimes the parts of the table do not fit together properly. When this happens, the table can become uneven or weak. To fix this, carefully adjust the pieces so they line up correctly before you tighten the screws. This helps make the table strong and steady.

ii. **Surface Scratches**

Small lines or marks may appear on the wood surface during making or handling. These scratches can make the table look less nice. You can gently rub these scratches with fine sandpaper to smooth the surface and make it look better.

iii. **Loose Screws**

If the screws are not tight enough, the table can feel shaky when you use it. To fix this, check all screws and tighten them properly. Tight screws keep the table firm and safe to use.

iv. **Unstable Table**

Sometimes, the table wobbles because the legs are not the same length or the joints are loose. To stop this, check if the legs are even and the joints are tight. Fix or adjust any loose parts to make sure the table stands steady without moving.

6.7.3 Reworking and Strengthening Weak Parts

When a table has weak or loose parts, it can become unsafe and may break easily. To make the table strong and long-lasting, these weak areas need to be fixed carefully. Reworking means fixing or improving these parts. Strengthening means making them stronger so they don't break or wobble. This process helps the table stay steady and safe to use for a long time.

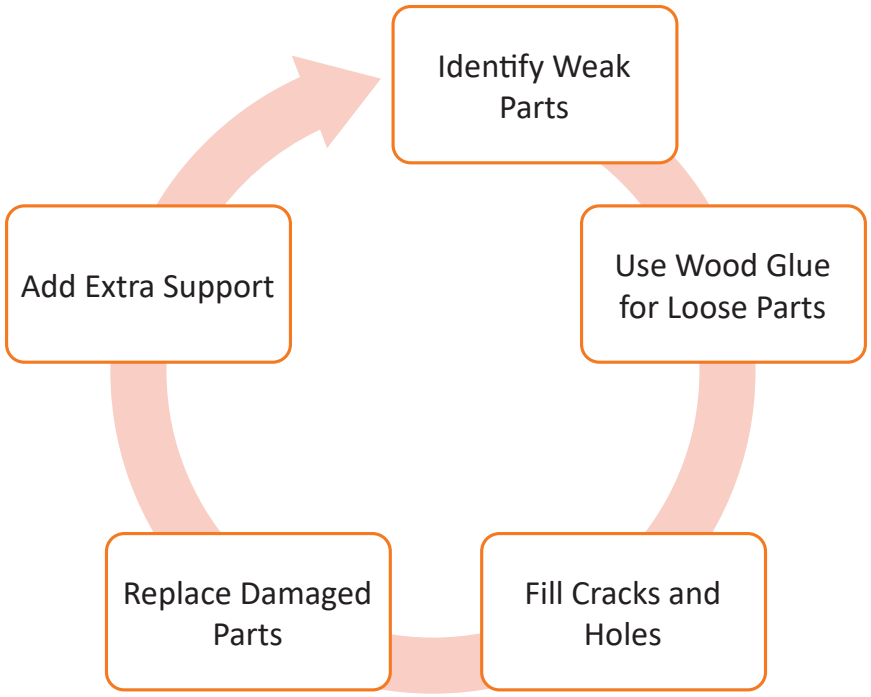


Fig. 6.7.2: Process of reworking and strengthening weak parts

a) Identify Weak Parts

Look carefully at the table to find parts that feel loose or weak. Gently push or shake the legs and joints to see if they move too much. Check for cracks or broken pieces in the wood. Finding these weak parts early helps you fix them before they cause bigger problems. This makes the table safer and stronger.

b) Use Wood Glue for Loose Parts

If some parts of the table don't fit tightly, use wood glue to join them better. Put some glue on the loose areas and press the parts together firmly. Wait for the glue to dry completely before using the table. The glue holds the parts strong so they don't move or fall apart. This makes the table more stable.

c) Fill Cracks and Holes

Small cracks or holes can make the wood weak and ugly. Use wood filler, which is a soft paste, to fill these cracks and holes. After the filler dries, use sandpaper to smooth the surface. This makes the wood strong and the table looks nice and even. Filling cracks stops damage from getting worse.

d) Replace Damaged Parts

If a part of the table is badly broken or cracked, it is better to replace it with a new piece. Using broken wood can make the table unsafe and weak. A new part keeps the table strong and balanced. It helps the table last longer and stay safe to use.

e) Add Extra Support

To make weak joints stronger, you can add more screws or corner brackets. These extra supports help hold the parts tightly together. This stops the table from shaking or moving. Adding support makes the table more steady and safe for use.

6.7.4 Final Check Before Saying the Table is Ready

Before saying the table is finished, you need to check it carefully one last time. Measure the table to make sure it is the right size. Look to see if the table is straight and not leaning or tilted. Touch the surface to feel if it is smooth and clean without any cracks, marks, or gaps. Check the legs to make sure they stand firmly and don't wobble. The top of the table should be flat and even. When all these things are correct, you can say the table is ready. A good table should be strong, neat, and safe for anyone to use. To make sure the table is truly ready, follow these detailed steps to perform a thorough final check:

- Use a tape measure or ruler to check the height, width, and length of the table. This ensures the table fits the space it is meant for and meets the required dimensions.
- Place the table on a flat surface and look carefully from different angles. The table should stand upright without leaning to one side. This shows that the parts are joined properly and balanced.
- Run your hand gently over the table top and edges. The wood should feel even and smooth with no rough spots, scratches, or holes. This helps the table look nice and avoids damage later.
- Push the table lightly from different sides. The legs should hold firm without shaking. If the table moves or wobbles, check and fix the joints or leg height to make it steady.
- Place a small object like a ball or a glass on the table top. It should stay still and not roll or tip over. A flat top means the table is properly assembled and comfortable to use.
- Go through each point carefully and fix any problems before saying the table is complete. This ensures a good-quality final product.
- A well-made table will last longer, look better, and be safe to use without the risk of breaking or causing accidents.

Unit 6.8: Documentation and Reporting

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Maintain accurate records of materials used, time spent, tool usage, and repair work for a given table fabrication job.
2. Prepare a structured job card tracking all stages from cutting and assembly to quality checks.
3. Communicate job progress, delays, or material issues clearly to the supervisor using written documentation.

6.8.1 Keeping Records of materials used, time spent, tool usage, and repair work for a given table fabrication job.

When making a table or doing any fabrication work, it is very important to keep proper records. These records help you remember what work is done, what is still pending, and if there were any problems. They also help your supervisor understand your work better. Keeping records makes your job look more professional and helps in future planning. Good records can also prevent mistakes, save time, and reduce waste. Whether it's about materials, time, tools, or repairs, writing everything down is a good habit.

1. Materials Used

When making a table, many different materials are used, such as wood, glue, nails, and paint. It is very important to keep a proper record of each material. This helps in checking how much material was used, how much is left, and if anything got wasted. These records help avoid confusion and reduce mistakes in the future. Good material tracking also helps your supervisor plan better for the next job. It saves time, money, and effort.

a. Name of material

Write down the names of all the materials you used during the work. For example, plywood, glue, nails, screws, hinges, or paint. This helps everyone understand exactly what items were needed to make the table. If something is missing or needs to be bought again, this list is very helpful.

b. Quantity used

Record the exact number or amount of each item used. For example: 4 plywood sheets, 500 grams of glue, or 2 litres of paint. This shows how much material was needed. It also helps in managing the stock and in buying the correct amount for the next job.

c. Size/type

Mention the size and type of each material. For example: 4x8 ft plywood, 1-inch nails, or stainless steel screws. This is important because the size and type affect the quality and strength of the table. It also helps in ordering the same kind again.

d. Grade/quality

If the material has a grade or quality label, note it down. For example: Grade A wood or waterproof paint. Good quality materials give better results and last longer. This record helps make sure that the same high-quality materials are used in future work too.

e. Any wastage or damage

Write if any material was broken, wasted, or damaged during the job. For example: "1 plywood sheet cracked while cutting." This helps reduce waste in future jobs and lets the supervisor know how much material was actually used properly.

2. Time Spent

Keeping track of time during each step of the table-making job is very helpful. It tells you how long each task takes, and whether the work is going as planned. Recording time also helps identify delays and manage the workload better. It supports better planning for future projects. Most importantly, it shows how much time is used for real work and how much time is lost.

a. Task name (cutting, fitting, etc.)

Write down what task you were doing at each step. For example, cutting the wood, drilling holes, sanding, or painting. This helps show how long each part of the job takes and where most of the time is spent.

b. Start and end time

Write the time when you started and finished each task. Example: Cutting started at 10:00 AM and ended at 11:00 AM. This gives a clear idea of how long each activity took and helps in checking if the work is on track.

c. Total hours/minutes spent

After writing the start and end time, calculate the total time taken for each task. For example, if assembling took from 1:00 PM to 2:30 PM, that's 1.5 hours. This helps in improving time use and comparing jobs.

d. Breaks or delays

If there were any breaks or delays, mention them. For example, lunch break from 1:00 PM to 1:30 PM or a 20-minute delay due to power cut. This helps track actual working hours and reasons for delay.

e. Total time taken for full job

At the end, add up the time spent on all tasks (excluding breaks). This gives the total time needed to complete the job. It helps in planning future jobs and setting realistic deadlines.

3. Tools Used

It is important to write down which tools and machines were used during the job. This helps in knowing what tools are needed for similar tasks in the future. It also helps check the condition of tools after use. If any tool needs repair or service, it can be identified early. This prevents work delays and ensures safety while working. Good tool records help save time and effort in future projects.

a. Tool/machine name

Write the names of all tools and machines you used. For example: hammer, screwdriver, drill machine, or hand saw. This helps you and others know which tools are required for table-making.

b. Purpose of use

Note down what each tool was used for. For example, a chisel was used for shaping wood, or a drill for making holes. This helps new workers understand which tool to use for what purpose.

c. Time used

Write how long you used each tool. For example, drill used for 30 minutes, hammer used for 1 hour. This helps know which tools are used more often and may wear out faster.

d. Any problems while using

If any tool did not work properly, mention the problem. For example, a drill got stuck or the sander did not run smoothly. This helps repair or replace the tool before the next use.

e. Need for sharpening/servicing

If a tool needs sharpening or oiling after use, write that down. For example, a saw blade may need sharpening or a machine may need cleaning. This keeps tools ready and safe for future work.

4. Repairs Done

If any tool or machine breaks or stops working during the job, it should be fixed and the repair must be written down. This helps in keeping tools safe and working well. Good repair records help prevent accidents and plan tool maintenance. They also show if any tool is getting damaged again and again. It helps track delays caused by tool problems and improves future work planning.

a. Tool/machine name

Write the name of the tool or machine that was repaired. For example: hammer, bench saw, or electric drill. This helps keep track of which tools had issues.

b. Type of damage/problem

Mention what went wrong with the tool. Example: handle broke, wire came loose, or motor stopped working. This helps in fixing the issue properly and preventing it next time.

c. Date and time of repair

Write when the tool was repaired. Example: repaired on 10th May at 3:00 PM. This helps maintain a repair history and plan regular check-ups.

d. Who repaired it

Note who fixed the tool. Was it you, a co-worker, or a technician? Example: “Repaired by Mr. Arjun, shop technician.” This keeps the record clear and responsible.

e. Was there any work delay?

If the repair caused a delay in the job, write how long the work stopped. Example: work was delayed by 1 hour due to motor repair. This helps plan better and reduce delays in the future.

6.8.2 Preparing a Job Card

A job card is a simple form that you fill while doing a job like making a table. It helps record all the work from start to finish in one place. This card shows what materials were used, what work was done, and when it was done. It also helps others know how the job was completed and if anything went wrong. A properly filled job card avoids confusion and mistakes. It is also useful for checking quality and tracking time and effort.

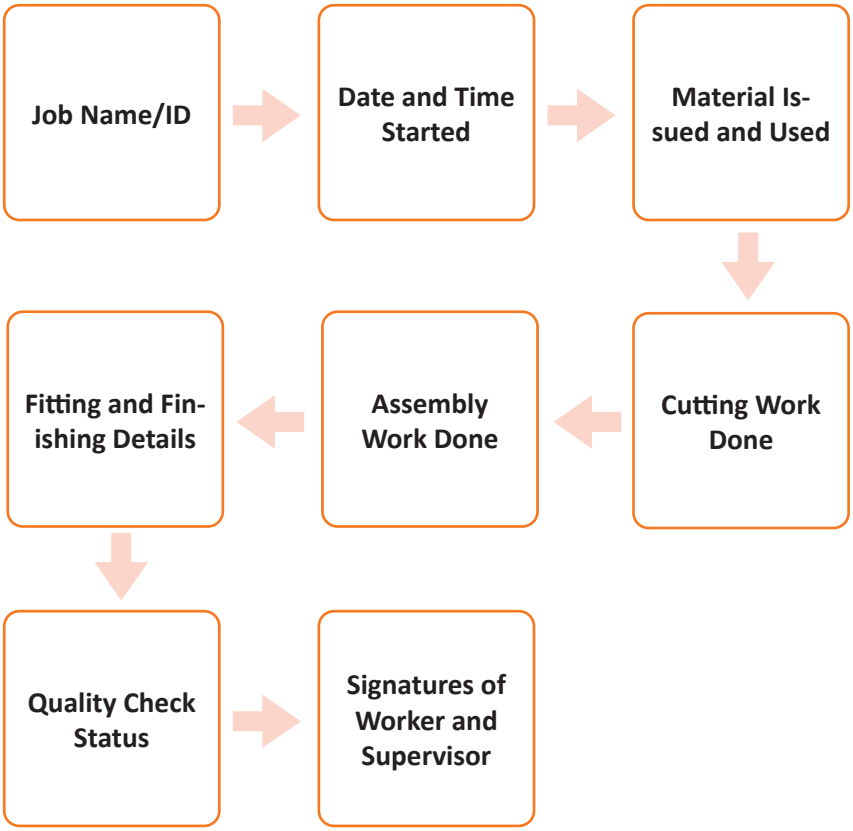


Fig. 6.8.1: Process of preparing a job card

i. Job Name/ID

This is the name or identification number given to the job you are working on. For example, you may write "Dining Table – Job 101." It helps in identifying which job the job card belongs to, especially when multiple jobs are happening at the same time. By writing the job name or ID, it becomes easy for anyone to check the details, track progress, or sort the job card later.

ii. Date and Time Started

Here, you write the exact date and time when you began the job. This information helps in understanding how much time the work is taking and is useful for planning future jobs better. It also helps the supervisor or team leader to check when the task was started and if it was done on time or not.

iii. Material Issued and Used

This section is for listing all the materials you received for the job and how much of each was used. For example, you can write that you used 3 plywood sheets and 1 litre of paint. Keeping a record of materials helps in managing stock, reducing wastage, and ensuring that the correct amount of material was used in the task.

iv. Cutting Work Done

In this part, you should write what cutting work you completed. For example, you may write, "Cut the table legs and top using a saw." This helps show what stage of work is completed. It is also helpful for others checking the job card to see what has been done and what tasks are still pending.

v. Assembly Work Done

This section is used to describe the work you did in putting the parts together. For example, you may write, "Fixed legs to the table top using screws." This step shows how the parts of the table were assembled. Writing this clearly helps in understanding how the table was built and also helps during inspection.

vi. Fitting and Finishing Details

Here you write about the final fittings and finishing work, such as adding handles or polishing the surface. For example: "Fitted drawer handles and polished the table." These small but important steps improve the look and feel of the table and make sure it is ready to use or deliver to the customer.

vii. Quality Check Status

This is where you mention if the completed work has passed the quality check. For example, you can write, "Checked by supervisor – OK." A quality check confirms that the table is properly made, strong, neat, and ready for delivery. It ensures the final product meets the required standards.

viii. Signatures of Worker and Supervisor

After the job is complete, both the person who did the job and the supervisor must sign the job card. This confirms that the work was completed properly and checked by the supervisor. Signatures add responsibility and help maintain a proper work record that can be referred to later if needed.

6.8.3 Writing and Sharing Job Reports

Writing and sharing job reports is an important way to keep your supervisor informed about the progress and any issues in your work. A clear and concise written report helps avoid misunderstandings and allows your supervisor to take quick decisions. When you report in writing, you provide a record that can be referred back to, which improves communication and transparency. It is important that your report is easy to read, free from errors, and focused only on necessary information. This helps your supervisor understand the situation quickly and respond effectively. Following are the elements to create an effective job report, that keep your supervisor well-informed and help maintain smooth workflow:

a) Progress of the Work

In your report, always mention what tasks are completed and what tasks are still pending. This shows the current status of the work and helps your supervisor track the timeline. By clearly stating the progress, you give a transparent view of your work efforts. It also helps identify if the work is on schedule or if any extra effort is needed to finish the pending tasks.

b) Any Delay

If there is a delay in the work, you should explain the reason clearly. Common reasons can be problems with tools, lack of materials, or the need for more time due to complexity. This information helps your supervisor understand why the work is behind schedule and allows them to find solutions, such as arranging resources or adjusting deadlines.

c) Material Issues

If there are problems related to materials, like missing items, damaged goods, or wrong supplies, it is important to report them immediately. Mentioning these issues in your report helps prevent delays and mistakes in the work. Your supervisor can then take quick steps to arrange the correct materials or replace damaged ones, ensuring smooth progress.

d) Characteristics of a Good Report

Your report should be short and to the point so that it can be read quickly. It must be clear without any mistakes in spelling or grammar, which keeps it professional. The language used should be simple and easy to understand, avoiding unnecessary details. A well-written report ensures that the message is delivered effectively and no important information is missed.

i. Concise and To the Point

A good report should be brief and focused only on the necessary information. Including too much detail can confuse the reader or waste their time. When you write concisely, it becomes easier for your supervisor to quickly understand the key message. Being to the point means avoiding unnecessary explanations and sticking to facts.

ii. Clear and Understandable

Clarity means your report should be easy to read and free from ambiguous language. Use straightforward sentences that clearly describe the situation or progress. Avoid vague words or phrases that could be misunderstood. A clear report helps the reader grasp the message quickly without needing to ask for more information.

iii. Free from Errors

A report with spelling, grammar, or punctuation mistakes looks unprofessional and can confuse the reader. Errors can change the meaning of what you write or make it hard to understand. Before submitting your report, proofread it carefully to catch and correct mistakes. A clean, error-free report shows that you pay attention to detail and take your work seriously.

iv. Simple Language

Using simple and common words makes your report accessible to everyone, regardless of their expertise. Avoid technical jargon or complex vocabulary unless it is necessary and understood by your supervisor. Simple language reduces misunderstandings and makes your message more direct.

v. Relevant Information Only

Include only details that are directly related to the work or issue you are reporting. Irrelevant information can distract or confuse the reader and dilute the main message. Being selective helps your supervisor focus on the important points that need attention. It also makes your report more organized and easier to follow.

vi. Effective Communication

The report should clearly convey what has happened, what is pending, and any problems faced. This helps supervisors understand the current situation without extra explanation. Good communication means the report answers questions your supervisor might have. It should also highlight what actions are needed if there are any delays or material issues.

vii. Action-Oriented

A well-written report points out issues and provides enough detail for supervisors to act promptly. By clearly stating problems like material shortages or delays, the report helps in planning corrective steps. It should also mention any requests you have made, like ordering new supplies. Action-oriented reports reduce downtime and avoid repeated problems.

Scan the QR codes or click on the link to watch the related videos

https://youtu.be/9wRGoG6Hmho?si=-Fdbtf9DAR8a_Bp_

step-by-step process of fabricating a wooden table

https://youtu.be/HOcy-KfsvAQ?si=gGi-y3qzyJ09CBzT

Router Bits and Their Cuts

https://youtu.be/ElLwRsLAhv8?si=-GTx46iuMBALuZAGP

7 Quality Control Tools

NCVET
कौशल गुणवत्ता प्रगति

Skill India
कौशल भारत-कुशल भारत

सत्यमेव जयते
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
MINISTRY OF SKILL DEVELOPMENT
& ENTREPRENEURSHIP

N·S·D·C
RE IMAGINE FUTURE

FFSC
FURNITURE
& FITTINGS
SKILL COUNCIL
कुशल • सक्षम • आत्मनिर्भर

7. Finishing and Installation of Products

Unit 7.1: Adhesives and Fastening Techniques
Unit 7.2: Clamping and Surface Finishing Methods
Unit 7.3: Cut-outs and Structural Preparations
Unit 7.4: Installation of Product Components and Hardware
Unit 7.5: Final Checks and Hygiene Practices

Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this module, the participant will be able to:

1. Identify various adhesives such as PVA glue, synthetic resin, and epoxy, and distinguish between their bonding properties, drying times, and recommended usage in carpentry applications.
2. Identify different fastening options such as screws, nails, bolts, and brackets, and explain their use for securing lightweight components, reinforcing frames, or anchoring non-structural parts during final assembly.
3. Select the correct adhesive and fastening method based on the material (e.g., MDF, plywood, hardwood), expected load, environmental exposure, and need for removability or repositioning in modular furniture.
4. Demonstrate the application of adhesives in designated areas such as corner joints or surface attachments using proper techniques for spreading, curing, and clamping without excess residue.
5. Install fasteners with tools like drills and screwdrivers, ensuring clean and tight fixing for components such as corner blocks or bottom panels of a wooden table, without revisiting structural joinery already covered in earlier modules.
6. Use different types of clamps (bar clamps, G-clamps, corner clamps) to hold table components in place during adhesive curing or when making minor adjustments during final assembly.
7. Explain the significance of surface finishing in improving product appearance, user experience, and product life span, especially in furniture exposed to human touch and household cleaning.
8. Perform different surface finishing operations such as sanding the surface smooth, applying wood filler, staining the timber to desired colour, and finishing with a protective coat like varnish or sealer.
9. Finish all visible surfaces of a wooden table (top, legs, apron) using a selected finish such as matte PU polish or glossy melamine ensuring that the application is even, streak-free, and appropriately dried.
10. Identify scenarios where structural cut-outs are needed in furniture, such as creating holes in the tabletop for electrical cable access or plumbing allowances in cabinetry.
11. Use layout tools to plan the location, size, and shape of cut-outs on furniture pieces while ensuring that the design does not compromise the structural integrity of the product.
12. Carry out a clean and accurate cut-out on a tabletop using appropriate cutting tools, maintaining a finished edge and avoiding splintering or surface damage especially when the table is designed as a study or office desk.
13. Demonstrate how to install accessories and fittings such as drawer knobs, locks, handles, gliders, hinges, or brackets with the correct screws and tools, following manufacturer specifications.
14. Install the fully finished wooden table at a site by placing and leveling it on the floor, aligning it with walls or other fixtures, and ensuring that it is secure, balanced, and functionally placed.
15. Address and rectify minor issues during on-site installation such as adjusting uneven legs, correcting tilts, or filling minor surface gaps to improve product alignment and customer satisfaction.
16. Conduct a final product inspection by checking for alignment, wobbling, surface finish quality, and functionality of all attached components like hinges, gliders, and decorative fittings.
17. Clean the product using recommended cleaning agents and tools to remove dust, fingerprints, or adhesive residues, ensuring the table is presentable and ready for use at handover.

18. Describe the hygiene protocols to be followed during product installation or delivery at residential or office locations, including personal cleanliness, use of clean tools, and workspace sanitation.
19. Practice responsible post-installation cleanup by disposing of packaging materials, wiping down surfaces, and leaving the client's space clean and organized.

Unit 7.1: Adhesives and Fastening Techniques

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Identify different adhesives (such as PVA glue, epoxy, and contact adhesive) and fasteners (screws, nails, bolts) used in non-structural fixing during final product assembly.
2. Demonstrate correct application techniques for adhesives and fasteners when attaching components like corner blocks, drawer bottoms, or surface trims on a wooden table.
3. Choose fastening techniques based on type of material, expected load, and whether future disassembly or adjustment is needed.

7.1.1 Identify Different Adhesives and Fasteners

When making or fixing furniture, we use adhesives (glues) and fasteners (like screws or nails) to join different parts. It is important to know which one to use depending on the job. Some glues are used for wood, while others are used for plastic or soft materials. Fasteners help to hold the pieces tightly together. By learning about these tools, we can make our work stronger, safer, and more long-lasting. This helps in building quality products with a neat finish.

Common Adhesives (Glues)

Adhesives, also called glues, are materials used to stick two surfaces together. In furniture work, adhesives help join wooden parts without using nails or screws. They are often used for light or medium fixing where a clean look is needed. Some glues dry quickly, while others take more time but give a very strong bond. Using the right glue makes the product stronger and helps parts stay in place for a long time. It also makes the furniture neat and smooth, without visible fasteners.

1. PVA Glue (White Glue)

PVA glue is commonly used in woodwork. It is white when wet but becomes clear when dry. It sticks wooden parts together strongly. It is easy to apply with a brush or directly from the bottle. It dries in a few hours and gives a clean look. It is best for indoor furniture and small wooden joints.

Fig.7.1.1: PVA Glue (White Glue)

2. Epoxy

Epoxy is a strong, two-part glue one part is resin, and the other is hardener. When mixed, it forms a very hard bond. It is used for heavy parts or when extra strength is needed. Epoxy takes more time to dry but becomes very strong after setting. It is useful for repairs or joints under pressure. It works well on wood, metal, and even plastic.

Fig.7.1.2: Epoxy glue

3. Contact Adhesive

This glue is used for surfaces like laminates, rubber, or foam. It is applied on both surfaces and left to dry for a few minutes. Then, the two parts are pressed together, and they stick immediately. It gives a quick bond and does not allow for adjustments after sticking. It is helpful for covering table tops, panels, and soft items. It should be used carefully to avoid mistakes.

Fig.7.1.3: Contact adhesive

Common Fasteners

Fasteners are small tools or parts used to join two or more materials together. In furniture making, fasteners like screws, nails, and bolts help hold wooden pieces tightly. They are mostly made of metal and give strong support to the structure. Fasteners are easy to use, and some can be removed if needed. Choosing the right fastener depends on the material, weight, and design of the furniture. Using good-quality fasteners ensures the furniture stays strong and lasts longer.

1. **Screws**

   Screws are metal fasteners that have threads and are turned using a screwdriver. They are used to tightly fix two pieces together. Screws can be removed and reused, which makes them good for parts that may need adjustment. They hold the material better than nails. Screws come in different sizes and are used widely in furniture making.

2. **Nails**

   Nails are straight metal pins hammered into wood. They are quicker to use than screws but not as strong. Nails are useful for simple work like fixing thin panels or trims. Once nailed, they are harder to remove. They can bend if hit the wrong way, so care is needed. Nails are mostly used for temporary or light joints.

3. **Bolts**

   Bolts are strong fasteners with nuts that are tightened from the other side. They are used when extra strength is needed. Bolts are useful for heavy furniture parts or where joints need to be very strong. They are good for work that may need to be opened and fixed again. Bolts come in different lengths and thicknesses for different jobs.

7.1.2 Apply Adhesives and Fasteners Correctly

To make strong and neat furniture, it is very important to apply glue and fasteners in the right way. If done wrongly, parts may come loose or look untidy. In this section, you will learn how to fix parts like corner blocks, drawer bottoms, and surface trims correctly. You will also follow steps like cleaning the area, applying glue or using fasteners, and fixing parts tightly. This helps in building furniture that is strong, neat, and lasts longer.

Apply Adhesives and Fasteners Correctly		
Corner Blocks	**Drawer Bottoms**	**Surface Trims**
Corner blocks are small wooden pieces placed inside the corners of tables or boxes. They give extra strength and support. These blocks are glued or screwed into place. When fixed properly, they prevent the furniture from shaking or breaking. Make sure the surfaces are clean before gluing or fastening.	Drawer bottoms are flat panels fitted at the base of drawers. They must be fixed tightly so they do not fall out when the drawer is used. You may use glue and small nails or screws to attach them. Proper fixing helps the drawer hold weight and move smoothly.	Surface trims are thin decorative pieces placed along the edges or sides of furniture. These are usually glued with contact adhesive. They give a finished and stylish look. Clean the area well, apply glue evenly, and press the trim firmly for a neat result.

Fig.7.1.4: Apply adhesives and fasteners correctly

Step-by-Step Method for Applying Adhesives and Fasteners

When working with furniture or other wooden items, it is important to join parts securely using adhesives (glues) and fasteners (like screws or nails). Following a clear, step-by-step method helps ensure strong, neat, and lasting joints. This method guides you on how to prepare surfaces, apply glue or fasteners correctly, hold parts firmly, and allow enough time for drying or tightening. Doing these steps carefully makes the final product durable and looks professional.

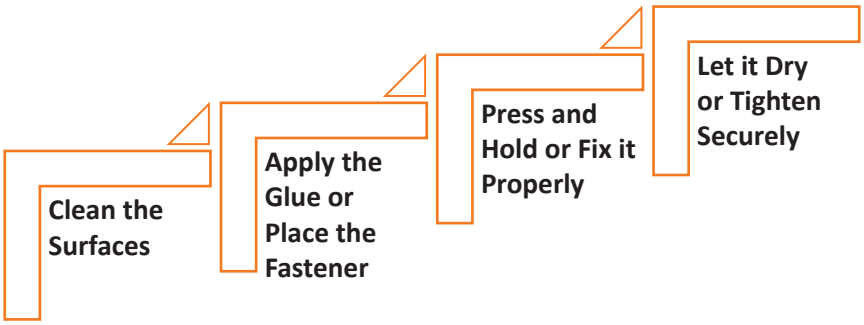


Fig.7.1.5: Steps of method for applying adhesives and fasteners

i. Clean the Surfaces

Before starting, clean the area where glue or fastener will be used. Wipe off dust, oil, or old glue using a clean cloth. A clean surface helps the glue stick better and fasteners to hold firmly. If the area is dirty, the bond may become weak. This is the most important first step in any joining work. Good preparation gives better results in the end.

ii. Apply the Glue or Place the Fastener

Use the right amount of glue too much can make a mess, and too little won't hold. Spread the glue evenly across the surface. If using screws or nails, mark the right place before inserting them. This makes the fixing straight and clean. Always use the right size of fastener based on the material. This helps in making a strong and neat joint.

iii. Press and Hold or Fix it Properly

After applying glue, press both parts together and hold for some time. This helps the glue stick better. If using fasteners like screws or nails, fix them tightly into the wood. Make sure the parts are aligned properly before pressing or fixing. This step ensures the joint is strong and does not move later. Holding the parts correctly avoids gaps or weak points.

iv. Let it Dry or Tighten Securely

After fixing, give enough time for the glue to dry completely. Do not move or shake the parts while drying. If using screws or bolts, tighten them well with a screwdriver or spanner. A loose joint can break or make the furniture wobbly. Proper drying and tightening makes the furniture last longer. Always check the joint before using the product.

7.1.3 Choose the Right Fastening Method

Choosing the right fastening method is very important to make sure parts are joined securely and last long. Different materials and uses require different types of glue or fasteners. For example, some joints need to be very strong, while others might need to be opened and fixed again later. By understanding the type of material, how much weight the joint will carry, and whether the joint needs future adjustments, you can select the best fastening method. This helps in making furniture or products safe, durable, and easy to maintain. To ensure a strong and lasting connection, it's important to understand how material, load, and the need for future changes affect your choice of fastening method.

A) Type of Material

Each material like wood, plastic, or metal needs a suitable fastening method. Wood can be joined well with wood glue and screws. Plastic might need special adhesives or bolts. Metal parts usually require strong fasteners like bolts or nuts. Choosing the correct method for the material ensures a firm and lasting hold.

i) Wood

Wood is a common material used in furniture and many products. It bonds well with adhesives like PVA glue (wood glue) that dries clear and strong. Screws and nails are also widely used for wood because they hold pieces tightly together. When using fasteners in wood, it's important to choose the right size and avoid splitting the wood. Wood can be joined permanently with glue or fastened with screws for joints that may need adjustment later.

Fig.7.1.6: Wood

ii) Plastic

Plastic is different from wood and needs special care when joining parts. Regular glue may not work well on plastic, so special adhesives designed for plastic are used. Sometimes bolts or screws with plastic anchors are needed to hold parts firmly. The surface of plastic can be smooth and slippery, so cleaning it well before applying glue helps make a stronger bond. Using the right adhesive or fastener keeps plastic parts from coming apart easily.

Fig.7.1.7: Plastic

iii) Metal

Metal parts need very strong fasteners because of their hardness and strength. Bolts, nuts, and screws made of metal are commonly used for joining metal parts securely. Adhesives for metal also exist but are less common for heavy-duty fixing. When fastening metal, it is important to tighten bolts properly to prevent loosening. Metal fasteners provide a durable, strong joint that can hold heavy loads and withstand rough use.

Fig.7.1.8: Metal

B) Expected Load

The amount of weight or pressure the joint must carry affects the choice of fastener. For heavy loads, strong fasteners like bolts or screws are needed to keep parts from breaking. For light loads, simple glue or nails may be enough. Using the right fastener based on load keeps the product safe and stable.

i) Heavy Loads

When the joint needs to carry heavy weight or pressure, strong fasteners are essential. Bolts and screws are commonly used because they provide a secure hold that can bear a lot of force. These fasteners keep parts tightly joined and prevent them from breaking or coming apart

under stress. Using strong fasteners for heavy loads ensures the safety and durability of the product, especially in furniture or machinery.

ii) Light Loads

For joints that carry little weight or pressure, simple fastening methods like glue or nails can be enough. Glue works well for small or decorative parts that don't need to support much weight. Nails are quick to use and provide enough hold for light items. Choosing the right fastener for light loads saves time and materials while still making a strong connection.

iii) Balanced Choice

It is important to match the fastener to the expected load so the joint is neither too weak nor unnecessarily strong. Using too weak a fastener for heavy loads can cause breakage, while using overly strong fasteners for light jobs can be wasteful and difficult to manage. Selecting the right fastener helps keep the product stable, safe, and cost-effective.

C) Future Adjustment

Some joints need to be taken apart or adjusted later. In such cases, screws or bolts are best because they can be removed easily without damage. If the joint is meant to stay fixed forever, glue is preferred as it creates a permanent bond. Choosing the right method helps in easy repair or modification when required.

i) Joints That Need Future Removal

Sometimes, parts need to be taken apart later for repair or changes. In such cases, screws and bolts are the best choice because they can be easily unscrewed without damaging the materials. This makes fixing or replacing parts much simpler and faster. Using removable fasteners also helps when adjustments or realignment are needed over time.

ii) Permanent Joints

If the joint is not meant to be opened again, glue is the best option. Glue creates a strong and lasting bond that holds the parts firmly together. This is useful for parts that should stay fixed for a long time without loosening. Permanent joints made with glue are neat and avoid the risk of fasteners loosening over time.

iii) Choosing the Right Method

Choosing the right fastening method based on whether future adjustment is needed saves time and effort later. It helps avoid damage to parts when repairs or changes are required. Proper planning for future needs makes the product easier to maintain and keeps it in good condition for longer.

Unit 7.2: Clamping and Surface Finishing Methods

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Demonstrate use of clamps for maintaining alignment and pressure during adhesive curing or final touch-ups on a wooden table.
2. Explain and apply multiple surface finishing methods (e.g., sanding, staining, polishing) to complete a smooth and even finish on the table surface and legs.

7.2.1 Using Clamps for Maintaining Alignment and Pressure

Clamps are tools that hold parts tightly together. When glue is applied to join wood parts, clamps keep the pieces in the right position. They press the parts firmly so the glue sticks well. Clamps stop the parts from moving while the glue dries. This helps the table stay strong and straight. You will practice how to place clamps correctly to keep everything aligned.

i. Clamps Hold Parts Firmly in Place

Clamps are used to hold wooden parts tightly together after applying glue. This prevents the pieces from moving while the glue is drying. If parts shift during this time, the joint may become weak or uneven. Keeping them in place ensures a strong bond. This is very important for making good quality furniture. The tighter the hold, the better the result.

ii. Helps in Keeping Wood Pieces Aligned

When making furniture like tables, the pieces must stay straight and even. Clamps help in keeping all the parts in the correct position during joining. Without clamps, parts may go out of line, which can make the furniture look bad or wobble. Alignment is very important for strength and appearance. Clamps make sure everything stays where it should be.

iii. Makes Joints Stronger by Firm Pressing

For glue to work properly, the surfaces must press tightly together. Clamps provide this pressure and help the glue bond the wood well. A strong joint means the furniture will not break easily. Loose joints can come apart after some time. That's why pressing parts together is very important when using glue.

iv. Correct Clamp Placement Prevents Damage

If clamps are not used properly, they can bend or damage the wood. Clamps must be placed gently but firmly in the right spots. Putting too much pressure in the wrong place can leave marks or cracks. So, it's important to learn where and how to place clamps. This helps in protecting the furniture while building it.

v. Learn to Use the Right Clamp for Each Job

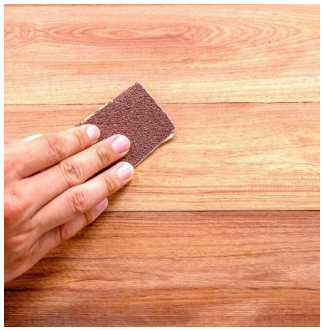
There are different types of clamps for different parts of furniture. For example, small clamps are used for corners, while long clamps are used for wide parts like table tops. You will learn how to select the correct clamp based on the shape and size of the wooden part. Using the right tool makes the work easier and better.

vi. Clamping Improves Quality and Durability

Good clamping gives a neat finish and makes the furniture stronger. It helps the parts join perfectly and stay in place for a long time. This improves the overall look and life of the product. Whether building or repairing, proper clamping is a key skill in woodworking. It leads to better results and happy customers.

7.2.2 Surface Finishing Methods

Surface finishing is the final step in woodworking. It makes the wooden surface smooth, clean, and good-looking. Finishing also protects the furniture from dust, moisture, and damage. A well-finished table looks neat and feels nice to touch. In this section, you will learn three basic finishing methods sanding, staining, and polishing. These steps are important to give furniture a high-quality and professional look.



Sanding
(Making the Surface Smooth)

Sanding means rubbing the wood with sandpaper to remove rough spots. It helps in leveling the surface and removing dirt, marks, or splinters. Sanding makes the wood soft to touch and ready for the next steps like staining or polishing. Always sand in the direction of the wood grain to avoid scratches. Start with rough sandpaper and move to finer ones for the best result. Clean the surface after sanding to remove all dust.

Staining
(Adding Colour to the Wood)

Staining is done to give color to the wood without hiding its natural look. It makes the furniture more attractive by highlighting the wood grain. You can choose light or dark shades based on the design. Apply the stain with a cloth or brush evenly on the surface. Let it dry for a few hours before polishing. Staining is useful when you want to match the wood color with other furniture.

Polishing
(Making the Wood Shine and Protecting It)

Polishing is the final step that adds a shiny and protective layer to the wood. It helps in keeping dust and water away and gives the furniture a bright look. Polish is applied using a soft cloth or brush in gentle, round motions. Once dry, the surface becomes smooth and glossy. It also makes the color of the stain look richer. A well-polished table looks new and lasts longer.

Fig. 7.2.1: Methods of surface finishing

Unit 7.3: Cut-outs and Structural Preparations

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Identify the functional requirement for structural cut-outs in furniture products such as for cable management or plumbing access.
2. Plan the location and size of cut-outs without affecting the integrity of the furniture unit.
3. Mark cut-out shapes and sizes on wooden surfaces using templates, rulers, or measuring tools.
4. Perform clean and accurate cut-outs on the tabletop (e.g., for a study desk) using tools such as hole saws or jigsaws.

7.3.1 Identify the Need for Cut-outs

Cut-outs are small openings made in furniture to allow certain items to pass through or fit inside. These are very important in modern furniture design, especially for items like study tables, kitchen cabinets, and office desks. The cut-outs make the furniture more useful and help it match the needs of daily life. It is important to understand where a cut-out is needed and what purpose it will serve. A well-planned cut-out improves both the look and function of the furniture. Following are the examples of where cut-outs are commonly needed and how they improve furniture functionality:

1) Passing Electrical Wires or Computer Cables

Study desks and office tables often need a hole for charging cables, plugs, or computer wires. Without a cut-out, the wires may hang loosely or create a mess. A round or oval cut-out at the back of the table helps in neatly passing cables through. This also keeps the tabletop clean and makes the setup safe and organized. It is useful for students, workers, and anyone using electronics.

2) Giving Space for Water Pipes in Sink Cabinets

In kitchen or bathroom cabinets, you may need cut-outs to allow space for plumbing pipes. These pipes go through the back or bottom of the cabinet. Making the right-sized cut-out ensures the cabinet fits around the pipe properly. It prevents damage and allows easy access if repairs are needed. Without the cut-out, the cabinet may not fit or may block the pipe.

3) Fitting Sockets or Switches into a Surface

Sometimes, cut-outs are needed to fit electric sockets, switchboards, or small control boxes into the furniture. This is common in workstations, headboards, or smart furniture. A neat square or rectangle cut allows the socket to sit flat with the surface. This gives a clean look and makes the socket easy to use. It also avoids loose hanging wires and adds to the comfort and style of the furniture.

7.3.2 Plan the Location and Size of Cut-outs

Before cutting any hole or opening in the furniture, it is important to plan carefully. A cut-out in the wrong place or of the wrong size can damage the furniture or make it look bad. Proper planning helps you avoid mistakes and keeps the structure strong and neat. Always think about what the cut-out is for, where it should be placed, and how big it needs to be. These steps makes sure the cut-out is useful and safe:

i. **Be in the Right Spot for Wires or Pipes**

The cut-out must be exactly where it is needed for example, near the back of a table for charging wires, or under the sink area for water pipes. If it is in the wrong spot, the wire or pipe may not reach or fit properly. This could make the furniture uncomfortable to use or even useless. So, marking the right spot is the first and most important step.

ii. **Not Weaken or Damage the Furniture**

A cut-out should never be made on a joint, edge, or support area of the furniture. These places are important for holding the weight and shape. If you make a hole in these areas, the furniture can become weak or break. Always check the furniture plan or design before deciding the location for the cut-out.

iii. **Be Big Enough for the Item to Fit, but Not Too Big**

The size of the cut-out must match the size of the item going through it. If the hole is too small, the item will not fit. If it is too big, it may look bad or leave empty space. Measure the item first, and then mark the correct size with a pencil or marker. This helps in making a clean and correct cut.

iv. **Match the Design and Shape of the Furniture**

The shape of the cut-out should look neat and match the style of the furniture. For example, round holes often look better for wires, while square or rectangle cut-outs work for switches. Matching the design keeps the furniture looking smart and professional. It also shows care and good workmanship.

7.3.3 Mark Cut-out Shapes and Sizes on Wood

After deciding where the cut-out should go and how big it needs to be, the next step is to mark it on the wood. This marking works like a guide that shows exactly where to cut. If the shape and size are marked properly, the cut will be clean and accurate. Good marking saves time, avoids mistakes, and helps you finish the work neatly.

Use Rulers or Measuring Tape for Correct Size
A ruler or measuring tape helps you measure the height and width of the cut-out correctly. This makes sure the size is just right not too big and not too small. Measuring properly is important so the object like a wire or pipe fits well. Always measure twice before drawing. This reduces mistakes. Even a small error in size can spoil the whole cut-out.

Use Templates or Stencils for Curved or Special Shapes
Some cut-outs are not square or straight they may be round or have special shapes. In such cases, templates or stencils help you draw them properly. These tools are easy to use and make the shape look even and neat. They are very useful when you need round holes for wires or buttons. Using templates saves time and gives a clean finish.

Use Pencils or Chalk for Clear and Light Markings
Mark the shape using a pencil or chalk. These make light lines that are easy to see and easy to erase or change if needed. Do not use markers or pens, as they leave permanent marks and may spoil the look of the wood. Light markings are enough to guide your cutting work. Neat lines help you stay accurate and cut in the right place.

Fig.7.3.1: Mark cut-out shapes and sizes on wood

7.3.4 Cut the Shape Cleanly with Tools

After you have marked the shape and size of the cut-out, the next step is to cut it neatly using the right tools. Each shape needs a suitable tool. The cutting must be slow and careful to avoid damage. Always hold the wood firmly and wear safety gear like gloves and goggles. Cutting properly keeps the wood strong and the furniture looking neat. Following are the tools and techniques is essential to cut the shape accurately and maintain the strength and appearance of the furniture:

i. Use a Hole Saw for Round Holes (Like for Wires)

A hole saw is a round blade used for cutting perfect circles. It is fixed to a drill and helps make clean, even round holes. This is useful for letting wires or cables pass through desks and cabinets. Make sure the wood is held tightly while drilling. Start slowly to avoid slipping, and increase speed gradually for a smooth finish.

Fig.7.3.2: Hole saw

ii. Use a Jigsaw for Cutting Square or Other Shapes

A jigsaw is a powered tool that moves its blade up and down. It is great for cutting squares, rectangles, or even curved designs. Follow the marking lines slowly to stay accurate. A jigsaw is useful when the cut-out is not a simple circle. Always keep your hands away from the blade and wear eye protection.

Fig.7.3.3: Jigsaw

iii. Use a Hand Saw for Straight, Small Cuts

A hand saw is best for short, straight cuts. It is a simple tool with sharp teeth that moves back and forth by hand. You can use it when the cut is not too big or complex. Make sure the saw is sharp, and follow the marked line gently. Use clamps to hold the wood still for better control and clean results.

Fig.7.3.4: Hand saw

Unit 7.4: Installation of Product Components and Hardware

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Install final fittings such as handles, glides, hinges, or locks using appropriate hand tools and measurement references.
2. Position and install the finished wooden table in a room or layout, ensuring balance, spacing, and levelness.
3. Troubleshoot and resolve minor fitting issues, such as adjusting leg positions or tightening hardware for better alignment.

7.4.1 Install Final Fittings

After making and finishing the wooden table, the last job is to fix the final parts like handles, glides, hinges, and locks. These parts help the furniture work properly and look complete. Fittings must be added carefully using the right tools and correct measurements. If these parts are fixed well, the table will be strong, safe, and easy to use.

A. Use Hand Tools like Screwdrivers, Measuring Tape, and Drill Machines

These tools help fix parts easily and safely. A screwdriver is used to tighten screws. A measuring tape helps check the correct place to fix the fitting. A drill machine is used to make holes in the wood if needed. Using the right tool saves time and gives a neat finish.

i) Screwdriver

A screwdriver is a hand tool used to turn screws and fasten parts together. It helps you attach handles, hinges, and locks securely. Using a screwdriver carefully keeps the screws tight without damaging the wood or the fittings. There are different types of screwdrivers, like flathead and Phillips, so choose the right one for the screws you have. This tool gives good control and makes sure parts don't come loose later.

Fig.7.4.1: Screwdriver

ii) Measuring Tape

A measuring tape is a flexible tool used to measure lengths and distances accurately. It helps you find the exact spot to fix handles, hinges, or locks on the furniture. Measuring carefully avoids mistakes like fixing parts too high, low, or off-center. Always double-check the measurement before marking to get the right fit. Proper measurement makes the furniture look neat and works properly.

Fig.7.4.2: Measuring tape

iii) Drill Machine

A drill machine is an electric tool used to make holes in wood or other materials. These holes are needed to insert screws or bolts easily without splitting the wood. Drills save time and give clean, straight holes. Using a drill helps fix parts firmly and prevents the wood from cracking. Always hold the drill steady and follow safety rules while using it.

Fig.7.4.3: Drill machine

iv) Using the Right Tools

Using the right tool for each job helps you work faster and better. For example, a screwdriver for screws, a drill for holes, and a tape for measuring. The right tools reduce damage to the furniture and give a clean, strong finish. They also make the work easier and less tiring. Having the right tools makes your work look professional and neat.

v) Safety

Safety is very important when using hand tools. Always handle tools with care and focus on your work to avoid accidents. Wear safety glasses or gloves if needed to protect yourself. Keep tools in good condition and store them properly after use. Safe working helps you finish the job without injury and keeps the furniture in good shape.

B. Mark the Correct Place Using a Pencil Before Fixing

Before fixing any part, you should mark the spot where it will go. Use a pencil to draw light lines or dots. This helps you know where to drill or screw. Pencil marks can be erased easily if something needs to be changed. It helps you avoid mistakes.

C. Check Size and Height Before Installing Handles and Locks

Every handle or lock must be placed at the correct height and in the center. If it is too high or too low, it will not look good or work well. Always measure properly before fixing. Use a scale or measuring tape to make sure both sides match.

D. Fix Hinges Tightly So Doors Don't Hang Loose or Fall

Hinges should be screwed in tightly so they hold the doors strongly. If they are loose, the door may shake or fall. Always check that the hinges are fixed straight and tight. This keeps the door opening and closing smoothly.

E. Make Sure All Parts Are Fitted Straight and Properly

All final fittings like handles, hinges, glides, and locks must be fixed in a straight line. If anything is tilted or uneven, the table will look bad and may not work well. Use a scale or level tool to check straightness. A neat finish shows good quality work.

7.4.2 Placing the Table in the Room

After installing all fittings, the table needs to be placed carefully in its final spot. Moving the table properly prevents scratches or damage. A good position also makes the table stable and easy to use. You will learn how to check the surface and adjust the table so it stands firm and looks good in the room. Following are the features for placing the table in the room:

i. Choose a Flat Surface

Always place the table on a flat, even floor. If the floor is uneven, the table may wobble or tilt, making it unstable. A flat surface helps the table stand steady and keeps it safe from damage. Check the floor carefully before putting the table down.

Fig.7.4.4: Flat surface

ii. Leave Enough Space Around the Table

Make sure there is enough room around the table for people to walk or move chairs comfortably. This space helps users work or eat without bumping into walls or other furniture. Proper spacing also keeps the room organized and easy to use.

Fig.7.4.5: Enough space around the table

iii. Use a Spirit Level Tool

A spirit level helps check if the table is perfectly straight. Place it on the table surface and see if the bubble stays in the middle. If not, the table needs adjusting. This tool helps make sure the table does not tilt forward, backward, or sideways.

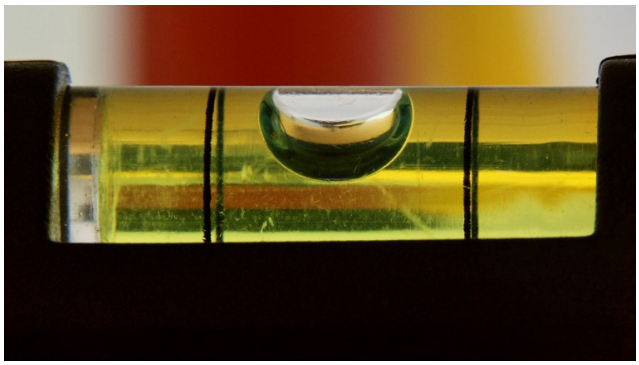


Fig.7.4.6: Spirit level tool

iv. Adjust Leg Pads or Glides

Sometimes one leg might be shorter or the floor uneven, causing wobbling. You can fix this by adjusting leg pads or glides under the legs. These small parts help balance the table so all legs touch the floor evenly. This stops shaking and makes the table safe to use.

Fig.7.4.7: Leg pads or glides

v. Make Sure the Table Stands Firmly

After placing and adjusting, check that the table does not wobble when you press on it. A firm table is strong and lasts longer. It also looks better and is safer for everyday use. Make small adjustments until the table stands steady and secure.

Fig.7.4.8: The table stands firmly

7.4.3 Fix Small Fitting Problems

After putting together a table or any furniture, small problems can sometimes happen. These issues might make the furniture less stable, noisy, or hard to use. It is important to find and fix these problems early so the furniture works well and lasts a long time. Learning how to check and correct these small fitting problems keeps the furniture safe, strong, and easy to use every day. Here are some common small problems you might find and how to fix them:

1) Tighten Loose Screws or Bolts

Screws and bolts can become loose after some use or during installation. Loose fasteners can make parts of the furniture shaky or weak, which might cause damage or accidents. Use a screwdriver or spanner to carefully tighten any loose screws or bolts. Regularly checking and tightening fasteners helps keep the furniture strong and safe for daily use.

2) Adjust Table Legs if Not Straight

If the legs of the table are uneven or not straight, the table will wobble and feel unstable. This can cause discomfort or even damage the table over time. You can fix this by adjusting the position or height of the legs. Sometimes adding or changing leg pads or glides helps balance the table properly. Straight and even legs make sure the table stays stable and safe to use.

3) Fix Misaligned Hinges or Handles

Sometimes hinges or handles might not line up perfectly when first installed. Misaligned parts can make doors hard to open or close and can look untidy. To fix this, loosen the screws carefully, adjust the hinge or handle to the right place, and then tighten the screws again. Proper alignment makes the furniture work smoothly and look neat.

4) Check Drawer or Door Problems

Drawers or doors may stick, not close fully, or feel loose after installation. This usually happens if the fittings like slides, locks, or hinges are not adjusted properly. Check these parts carefully to find the problem. Tighten or adjust the fittings so the drawer or door moves smoothly without sticking or gaps. This keeps the furniture easy and comfortable to use.

5) Ensure Smooth Operation and Safety

After fixing all parts, test everything by opening and closing doors and drawers and using handles. Make sure they work smoothly without noise or resistance. Also, check for any sharp edges or loose parts that might cause injury. Fixing these small issues improves safety and makes the furniture comfortable and reliable for everyday use.

Unit 7.5: Final Checks and Hygiene Practices

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Conduct final quality inspection of the table's structural and surface finish, and confirm all components function properly.
2. Clean and prepare the table for delivery, ensuring hygiene, client-ready appearance, and tidiness of the work area.

7.5.1 Check the Quality and Function of the Table

Before delivering the finished table, it is important to check if everything is done correctly. This final check helps to find and fix any small problems. It also ensures the table is strong, works properly, and looks good. A well-inspected table is safe to use, lasts longer, and keeps the customer happy. Quality check is the last but very important step in furniture making.

a) Check Structural Strength

Make sure the table stands firmly and does not shake. Lightly move or press the table from different sides to test its strength. All legs should be fixed tightly and should not move or bend. This ensures the table can be used daily without breaking. A strong structure is a sign of good quality.

b) Inspect Surface Finish

Carefully look at the table's top, sides, and legs. The surface should be smooth to touch and free from dents, deep scratches, or rough patches. Wipe off any dust or stains using a soft cloth. If needed, apply polish gently. A clean and even surface makes the table look attractive and ready for use.

c) Test All Components

If the table has drawers, doors, or locks, check that they open and close smoothly. Try pulling and pushing gently to see if any part is stuck or loose. Also, check that handles, glides, and hinges are fitted correctly. Working parts should move easily and not make any noise or resistance.

d) Look for Sharp Edges or Damages

Run your hand along the edges and corners of the table. Make sure there are no sharp points or broken areas that can hurt someone. If you find any cracks or chips, smooth or fix them before giving the table. This makes the product safe and professional.

e) Confirm Overall Look

Take a full view of the table and check if it looks neat and finished. The paint or polish should be even and match the design. There should be no uneven color or marks. Everything from the shape to size should match the plan given at the start. This gives a perfect final look.

7.5.2 Clean the Table and Work Area

After completing and checking the table, the last and very important step is cleaning. The table must look fresh, neat, and ready to use before it is given to the customer. Cleaning the table and your work area shows good discipline, respect for your craft, and care for the customer. It also ensures hygiene and safety. A clean product creates a good impression and keeps the user happy and safe. These are the important steps to properly clean the table and the work area:

a. Dust and Wipe the Table

Use a soft, dry cloth to remove any dust from the surface. You may use a little water or polish to clean dirt, fingerprints, or stains. Wipe gently to avoid scratching the table. Make sure all sides, edges, and corners are clean. This helps the table look fresh, shiny, and ready for use.

Fig.7.5.1: Dust and wipe the table

b. Remove Stickers or Marks

Sometimes, stickers, tape, or pencil marks are left on the table during making. Remove them gently using your fingers, cloth, or an eraser. If there are glue spots, clean them without damaging the surface. A table without marks looks more attractive and professional.

Fig.7.5.2: Remove stickers or marks

c. Clean the Corners and Gaps

Dust and dirt often get stuck in corners, joints, or small gaps. Use a small brush, dry cloth, or even an old toothbrush to clean these areas. This helps remove hidden dust and gives the furniture a neat and complete look. No spot should be left unclean.

Fig.7.5.3: Clean the corners and gaps

d. Tidy the Work Area

After finishing the table, clean up your working place. Throw away waste items like wood shavings, plastic covers, and broken screws. Put tools back in their place. A clean workspace helps avoid accidents and shows you are a responsible worker.

Fig.7.5.4: Tidy the work area

e. Follow Hygiene Rules

Wash your hands before touching the clean table. Always wear clean clothes and avoid placing dirty tools on the finished product. Do not eat or drink near the clean table. These small hygiene steps help keep the furniture safe and ready for customer use.

Fig.7.5.5: Follow hygiene rules

Scan the QR codes or click on the link to watch the related videos

https://youtu.be/bbTAG_6MMhs?si=-aQc44D6n4AjfoAza

How Adhesive Made in Factory

https://youtu.be/IBqO6aUkJSE?si=Fu_tSWj6hl1Wiiuh

functional requirement for structural cut-outs in furniture products

NCVET
कौशल गुणवत्ता प्रगति

Skill India
कौशल भारत-कुशल भारत

सत्यमेव जयते
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
MINISTRY OF SKILL DEVELOPMENT
& ENTREPRENEURSHIP

N·S·D·C
RE IMAGINE FUTURE

FFSC
FURNITURE
& FITTINGS
SKILL COUNCIL
कुशल • सक्षम • आत्मनिर्भर

8. Health, Safety, and Greening Practices at the Worksite

Unit 8.1: Personal Hygiene, Dress Code, and Work Ethics
Unit 8.2: Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) and First Aid Readiness
Unit 8.3: Safety Protocols, Fire Evacuation, and Ergonomics
Unit 8.4: Tool Handling, Inspection, and Housekeeping Practices
Unit 8.5: Waste Management and Hazardous Material Handling
Unit 8.6: Material, Energy, and Water Conservation Practices

Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this module, the participant will be able to:

1. Explain the importance of maintaining personal hygiene, wearing clean uniforms, and following a proper dress code as a professional in the carpentry and furniture installation domain.
2. Demonstrate how to maintain a well-groomed appearance and ensure a tidy presentation at the worksite, especially in client-facing or residential environments.
3. Describe how ethical behaviours such as honesty, punctuality, discipline, and responsibility contribute to a safe, respectful, and productive work environment.
4. Identify and name personal protective equipment (PPE) such as safety gloves, helmets, goggles, ear protection, dust masks, and safety shoes commonly used in carpentry and installation tasks.
5. Demonstrate the correct way to wear, adjust, and store each type of PPE depending on the nature of work being carried out (e.g., cutting wood, drilling, sanding, or chemical handling).
6. Access and use a basic first aid kit to treat minor workplace injuries such as small cuts, splinters, or abrasions, and describe situations where professional medical help must be called.
7. Explain standard safety rules for working at a furniture workshop or installation site, including rules for lifting heavy materials, bending posture, overhead work, and use of ladders or platforms.
8. Describe fire safety measures such as how to identify fire extinguisher types, read fire exit signs, follow alarm signals, and evacuate a building calmly through designated escape routes.
9. Identify common safety signs and hand signals such as those indicating danger zones, electric hazard, flammable storage, or instructions for using tools and equipment, and respond to them appropriately.
10. Demonstrate correct and safe handling of tools and machines during use and while transporting or storing them, to prevent injury to self or damage to the equipment.
11. Inspect tools before and after use for any visible damage, misalignment, frayed cords, or loose parts, and report any defects or unsafe conditions to the supervisor for action.
12. Explain proper housekeeping practices such as sweeping the area after work, stacking tools and wood neatly, and disposing of sawdust or packaging responsibly to avoid clutter and hazards.
13. Classify different types of waste generated at the worksite including wood scrap, plastic wrappers, chemical cans, and packaging materials into recyclable and non-recyclable waste.
14. Describe how to safely store and handle hazardous materials like adhesives, varnishes, thinners, and paint, ensuring containers are sealed, labelled, and kept away from heat or ignition sources.
15. Document and report any observed safety risks, unsafe acts, near-misses, or violations of protocol to supervisors using standard workplace reporting procedures.
16. Explain how to minimize material waste by accurate cutting, reusing leftover pieces, and avoiding over-application of adhesives, fillers, or coatings.
17. Describe energy-saving methods such as switching off unused tools, using LED lighting in workshops, and planning work batches to reduce repetitive tool operations.
18. Demonstrate ways to conserve water during cleaning tasks by using buckets instead of running taps, reusing rinse water where applicable, and choosing low-water-use cleaning methods.
19. Practice responsible post-job cleanup by properly washing tools, storing them dry, and using eco-friendly cleaning materials where possible.
20. Discuss the importance of regular maintenance, cleaning, and correct tool storage in extending the life of equipment, reducing resource consumption, and maintaining environmental sustainability at the worksite.

Unit 8.1: Personal Hygiene, Dress Code, and Work Ethics

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Explain the relevance of personal hygiene, appropriate dress code, and respectful conduct in professional settings like workshops and installation sites.
2. Demonstrate good grooming practices, maintenance of uniforms, and personal cleanliness while at work.
3. Describe how punctuality, honesty, and discipline contribute to team coordination, safety, and work efficiency.

8.1.1 Importance of Personal Hygiene, Dress Code, and Respectful Conduct

In any workplace, it is important to look neat, behave well, and stay clean. These habits help create a safe, healthy, and friendly working environment. Good hygiene stops the spread of illness. Wearing the right clothes protects you from injuries. Respectful behaviour keeps the team happy and avoids fights or problems. Every worker must follow these basic rules to work safely and professionally. It also helps you gain the trust of your co-workers and supervisors.

1) Personal Hygiene

Personal hygiene means keeping your body clean every day. This includes taking a bath, brushing your teeth, wearing clean clothes, and keeping your nails trimmed. Washing your hands regularly is also very important, especially after using the toilet or before eating. Clean workers do not get sick easily and also protect others from germs. It also makes you feel fresh, confident, and ready for work. Good hygiene is the first step to becoming a responsible worker.

a) Bathing Daily

Taking a bath every day helps remove dirt, sweat, and bad smell from your body. It keeps your skin fresh and reduces the risk of skin infections. A clean body feels good and looks neat. Bathing also helps you feel active and ready to start the day.

b) Brushing Your Teeth

Brushing your teeth in the morning and before bed keeps your mouth clean. It removes food particles and prevents bad breath. It also stops tooth decay and gum problems. Clean teeth help you smile confidently and talk to people without embarrassment.

c) Wearing Clean Clothes

Wearing fresh and clean clothes every day makes you look neat and presentable. Dirty clothes carry germs and smell bad. Clean clothes also show that you respect your job and the people around you. It's important to wash and dry your clothes properly.

d) Trimming Nails

Keeping your nails short and clean stops dirt from getting stuck under them. Long or dirty nails can spread germs and look untidy. Trimming nails also prevents scratching or hurting yourself or others. It shows that you take care of your personal grooming.

e) Washing Hands Often

Wash your hands before eating, after using the toilet, and after touching dirty things. Use soap and clean water to remove germs. It's one of the best ways to stop the spread of illness. Clean hands are important in every job, especially when handling food or tools.

2) Dress Code

Dress code means wearing the right and safe clothes at your workplace. This could be a uniform, safety shoes, gloves, helmet, or apron, depending on the job. Proper clothing protects you from injuries and accidents. Wearing the same uniform also shows unity among workers and makes you look professional. Always make sure your clothes are clean, well-fitted, and suitable for the work you do. Following the dress code shows that you care about safety and respect the rules.

a) Wearing a Uniform

Many workplaces give uniforms to workers. Wearing a uniform makes you look neat and part of a team. It also helps others know who you are and what job you do. Uniforms should always be clean and worn properly. This shows that you are serious about your work.

b) Using Safety Gear

Safety gear includes items like helmets, gloves, safety shoes, masks, or aprons. These protect you from getting hurt while working. For example, safety shoes protect your feet from falling tools. Wearing safety gear is a must on-site or in workshops. It keeps you safe and ready for any task.

c) Keeping Clothes Clean

Dirty or torn clothes can be unsafe and look unprofessional. Always wear clean and ironed clothes to work. This helps you feel fresh and gives a good image. Clean clothes also help stop the spread of dust and germs. They show that you respect your workplace.

d) Wearing Properly Fitted Clothes

Clothes that are too loose or too tight can cause problems while working. Loose clothes may get stuck in machines, and tight ones may feel uncomfortable. Wear clothes that fit well and allow you to move freely. It makes your work easy and keeps you safe.

e) Following Rules of Dressing

Every workplace has some rules about what to wear. Always follow these rules without fail. It shows discipline and respect for your job. Proper dress also creates a positive impression on supervisors and customers. Dressing right means you are ready and responsible.

3) Respectful Conduct

Respectful conduct means behaving in a polite and kind way with everyone at work. It includes listening to others, not shouting, and helping your teammates. Respectful workers do not fight, argue, or speak badly. This creates a peaceful and happy work environment for all. When you behave nicely, others will also treat you with respect. Good manners at work build strong teamwork and improve job quality.

a) Speak Politely

Always use kind and polite words when talking to others. Say "please", "thank you", and "sorry" when needed. Do not shout or use rude language at work. Speaking nicely helps build good relationships. It makes others feel respected and happy to work with you.

b) Listen to Others

Give others a chance to speak and listen carefully when they talk. Do not interrupt or ignore what they are saying. Listening shows that you care and respect their ideas. It also helps in avoiding mistakes and working better as a team.

c) Avoid Fights or Arguments

Never fight, argue, or blame others at work. If there is a problem, speak calmly and try to solve it peacefully. Fighting disturbs the team and slows down the work. A respectful person stays calm and finds solutions without creating trouble.

d) Help Your Teammates

Support your coworkers when they need help. Share tools, give advice, or lend a hand if someone is struggling. Helping others creates a strong and friendly team. It also shows that you care about group success, not just your own.

e) Show Good Manners

Say hello when you arrive, excuse yourself when needed, and thank people for their help. Keep your mobile on silent and do not disturb others. Good manners make the workplace peaceful. Everyone enjoys working where people are kind and respectful.

8.1.2 Good Grooming, Uniform Care, and Cleanliness at Work

Looking clean and well-groomed is very important at the workplace. It shows that you are professional and take your job seriously. A neat appearance helps others trust and respect you. Wearing a clean and proper uniform also keeps you safe and ready for work. Clean habits make the workplace safe, healthy, and pleasant for everyone.

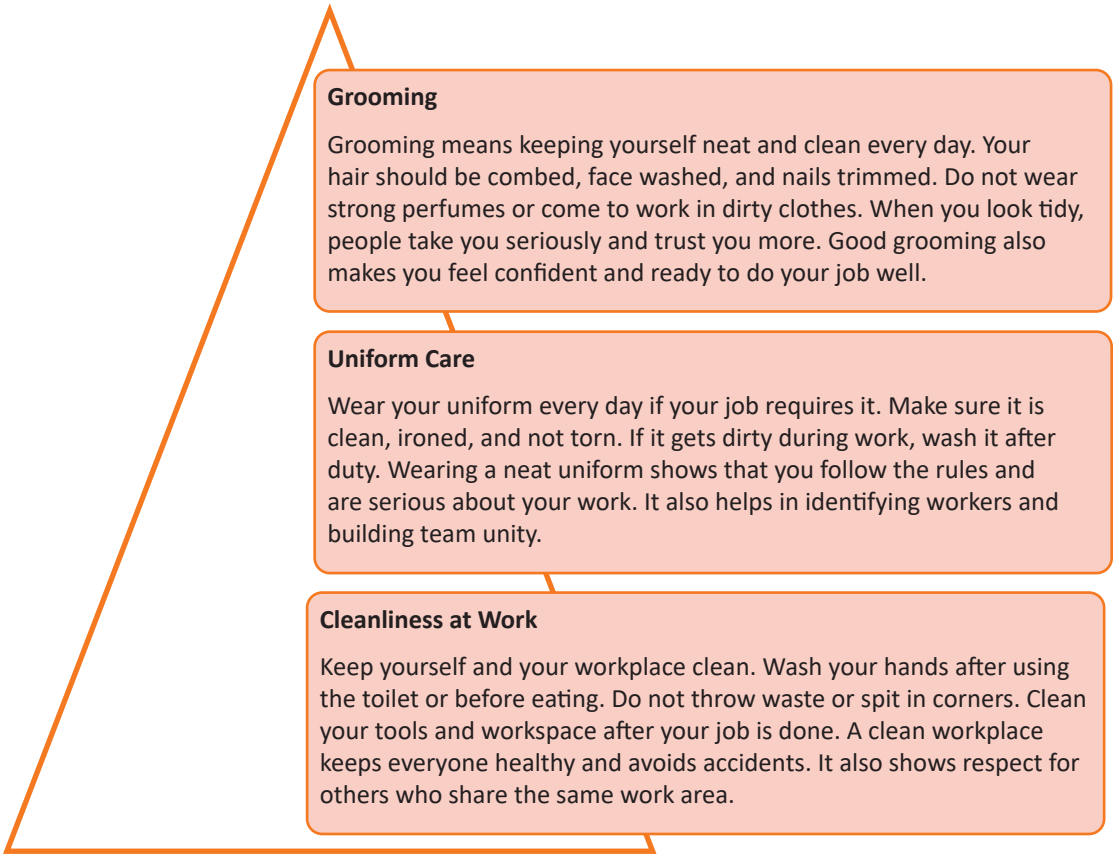


Fig. 8.1.1: Good grooming, uniform care, and cleanliness at work

8.1.3 Importance of Punctuality, Honesty, and Discipline

Good behavior at work is just as important as doing your job. Being on time, telling the truth, and following rules make you a reliable and trusted worker. These habits help the whole team work better and finish the job safely and on time. They also reduce mistakes, conflicts, and delays at the workplace. Every worker must practice these values daily to become a responsible professional.

Importance of Punctuality, Honesty, and Discipline		
Punctuality	**Honesty**	**Discipline**
Punctuality means coming to work at the right time and completing tasks within the given time. It shows that you respect your job and are dependable. When everyone is on time, the team can work smoothly without waiting. Punctual workers help the project finish faster and avoid delays. Being late can cause stress and disturb the work plan. It may also affect your image and performance at work. So, punctuality is an important habit for every worker.	Honesty means being truthful in everything you say and do at work. It includes not lying, not hiding mistakes, and not stealing anything. When you are honest, your team and supervisor will trust you more. If a mistake happens, you should tell it honestly so it can be fixed quickly. Honest workers help keep the workplace safe, fair, and positive. It also builds strong teamwork and a good reputation for you. Honesty is always the best policy at work.	Discipline means doing your work properly and following all the rules at your workplace. It includes not wasting time, not fighting, and behaving in a respectful way. Disciplined workers focus on their duties and do not cause problems. They help maintain peace and safety at the site. Following discipline also helps improve work quality and speed. It shows that you are serious and responsible about your job and your team.

Fig. 8.1.2: Importance of punctuality, honesty and discipline

Being clean, dressing properly, and behaving well are not just for looking good they are necessary for doing your job safely and correctly. Personal hygiene keeps you healthy, dress code keeps you safe, and work ethics like honesty and punctuality help you grow in your job. Every worker should follow these habits every day to become a responsible and respected professional.

Unit 8.2: Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) and First Aid Readiness

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Identify PPE items suitable for carpentry and site-based activities, including helmets, safety shoes, goggles, gloves, and hearing protection.
2. Demonstrate the correct use and storage of PPE, and access a first aid kit to treat minor injuries like cuts, splinters, or abrasions.

8.2.1 PPE Items for Carpentry and Site Work

In carpentry and other site-based work, safety is very important because workers use sharp tools, heavy materials, and loud machines. Accidents can happen anytime, so wearing Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) is a must. PPE helps protect different parts of the body such as the head, eyes, hands, feet, and ears. Using the right PPE reduces the chance of injury and keeps workers safe. Every worker should know which PPE to use and wear it properly during work.

i. Helmet

A helmet protects your head from injuries caused by falling objects like tools, wood pieces, or metal parts. It also keeps your head safe if you slip or bump into something. Helmets are made of hard material and must fit well. Always wear a helmet at the worksite to avoid serious head injuries. Never work at a site without a helmet, even for a short time.

Fig. 8.2.1: Helmet

ii. Safety Shoes

Safety shoes protect your feet from sharp nails, broken wood, or falling tools. They have strong soles and steel toe covers that stop injuries from heavy things. These shoes also stop you from slipping on wet floors. They must be worn every day on-site to prevent foot injuries. Always check your shoes and replace them if damaged.

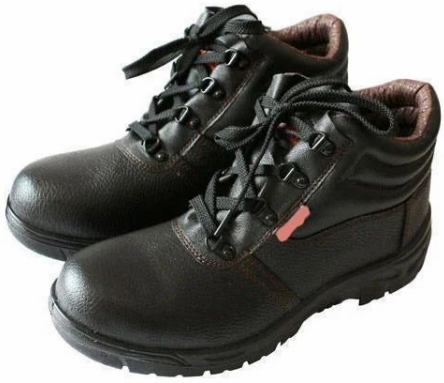


Fig. 8.2.2: Safety shoes

iii. Goggles

Goggles protect your eyes from dust, flying wood pieces, or chemical splashes. This is very important when cutting, grinding, or sanding wood. Even a small particle can hurt your eyes badly. Goggles must be clean and fit tightly on your face. Always wear them when doing any work that creates dust or debris.

Fig. 8.2.3: Goggles

iv. Gloves

Gloves keep your hands safe from cuts, splinters, heat, or harmful chemicals like glue and polish. They also give you a better grip while handling tools. Use the right type of gloves for the job—for example, rubber gloves for chemicals and leather gloves for rough tasks. Keep gloves clean and dry for best use.

Fig. 8.2.4: Gloves

v. Hearing Protection (Earplugs or Earmuffs)

Loud sounds from cutting machines or drills can damage your ears over time. To protect your hearing, use earplugs or earmuffs when working with noisy tools. These items reduce sound and prevent ear pain or long-term hearing problems. Keep your ear protection clean and wear it properly for full safety.

Fig. 8.2.5: Hearing protection (earplugs or earmuffs)

8.2.2 Correct Use and Storage of PPE

Just having safety gear (PPE) is not enough it must be used and stored in the right way. When PPE is used properly, it protects you fully. If not worn correctly or if damaged, it may not work when needed. Clean, safe, and proper use of PPE helps you stay protected at work and avoid health problems. Every worker should follow simple steps to take care of their PPE.

a) Always wear PPE before starting work

Before beginning any task, make sure you wear all required PPE like helmet, gloves, and safety shoes. Do not remove them while working, even for a short time. Remove the PPE only after finishing your job. This helps keep you safe throughout the work. Never start work without the correct safety gear.

b) Check for damage before using

Before using any PPE item, check if it is broken, torn, or worn out. For example, cracked goggles or torn gloves will not protect you properly. Damaged PPE can cause more harm than safety. If any item is broken, replace it before starting work. Report damaged PPE to your supervisor.

c) Store PPE in a clean, dry place

After work, put your PPE in a safe place where it stays clean and dry. Wet or dirty items like gloves or shoes can cause skin rashes or infections. Dust and moisture also reduce the strength of the gear. Use a storage box or shelf to keep items safe and ready for the next use.

d) Do not share personal PPE items

PPE like gloves, earplugs, or face masks should not be shared with others. Sharing can spread germs or infections between workers. Each worker should have their own set of PPE. If sharing is needed, the items must be cleaned and disinfected before use.

e) Clean reusable PPE regularly

Items like helmets, goggles, and safety shoes should be cleaned often. Dust, sweat, and dirt can collect on them and reduce their safety and comfort. Use a clean cloth and mild soap to wipe them. Clean PPE lasts longer and keeps you healthier and safer on the job.

First Aid Kit and Treating Minor Injuries

A first aid kit is a small but very important box that helps treat injuries quickly at the workplace. It should always be kept in an easy-to-reach place at the site. When someone gets hurt while working, the first aid kit is used to clean the wound and stop the bleeding. It helps in giving fast relief until a doctor is available if needed. Knowing how to use first aid items is very useful for every worker. It keeps the workplace safe and shows you care for your health and others. Even small injuries should be treated properly to avoid infection or further problems.

Common items in a first aid kit

1. **Antiseptic Cream or Liquid**

   This is used to clean wounds and kill germs. When someone gets a cut or scratch, apply the antiseptic gently using cotton. It helps stop infection and makes the wound heal faster. Always use clean hands or gloves while applying it. Never put antiseptic on a burn unless it's made for burns. Keep the bottle tightly closed after use.

Fig. 8.2.6: Antiseptic liquid

2. **Cotton and Bandages**

   Cotton is used to clean wounds and stop bleeding. After cleaning, a bandage is used to cover the wound to keep dirt and germs out. The bandage should be clean and wrapped gently but firmly. Do not wrap it too tightly as it can stop blood flow. Replace the bandage if it becomes dirty or wet.

Fig. 8.2.7: Cotton and bandages

3. Scissors

Scissors in the first aid kit are used to cut bandages, tape, or clothes around a wound. They should be clean and sharp for safe use. Always be careful while using scissors and never use them for other work. After use, clean them and keep them back in the kit properly. Avoid touching the sharp edge.

Fig. 8.2.8: Scissor

4. Plasters (Band-Aids)

These are small sticky covers used for tiny cuts or scratches. They keep the wound clean and dry. First, clean the cut with antiseptic, then apply the plaster. Change it daily or when it gets dirty. Do not reuse plasters as they lose stickiness and cleanliness.

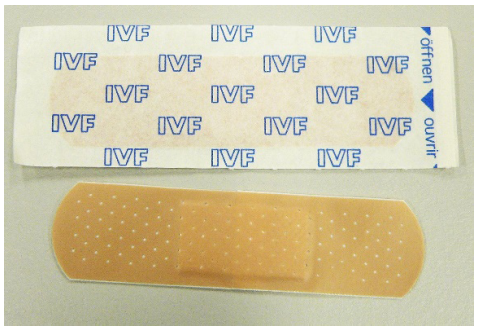


Fig. 8.2.9: Plasters (Band-Aids)

5. Tweezers

Tweezers help remove small things stuck in the skin like splinters or glass. Use them gently to avoid making the injury worse. Clean the tweezers before and after use with antiseptic. Be patient and careful while removing splinters to avoid pain. Always wash the area after removing the object.

Fig. 8.2.10: Tweezers

6. **Pain Relief Tablets (like Paracetamol)**

These tablets help reduce pain or fever. They should only be used in small amounts and with proper advice. Never take medicine without knowing the reason. Inform your supervisor if you take a tablet. Keep the tablets in a dry place inside the kit.

Fig. 8.2.11: Pain relief tablets

Treating Minor Injuries

Minor injuries like small cuts, burns, splinters, or bruises can happen easily while working on a site. These injuries are not very serious but still need to be treated properly and quickly. If not treated at the right time, even small wounds can get infected and cause more problems. Knowing how to give first aid helps you stay safe and also help others around you. It is always better to take care of minor injuries right away before they become bigger issues. First aid gives quick relief and helps the injured person feel better and continue working safely.

For Cuts
Wash the cut with clean water, apply antiseptic, and cover it with cotton and a bandage. This protects the wound and helps it heal. Keep the wound dry and clean.

For Splinters
Use tweezers to gently pull out the splinter. Clean the skin with antiseptic afterward. Do not press or dig too hard.

For Small Burns
Cool the burn under clean running water for a few minutes. Do not apply ice or toothpaste. After cooling, apply burn cream if available.

For Bruises
Apply a cold cloth or an ice pack wrapped in cloth to the area. This reduces swelling and pain. Do not press the bruise too hard.

Fig. 8.2.12: Treating Minor Injuries

Unit 8.3: Safety Protocols, Fire Evacuation, and Ergonomics

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Explain best practices for body posture, safe lifting, and bending techniques to prevent work-related injuries.
2. Describe fire evacuation protocols, emergency alarm responses, and exit route identification.
3. Recognize and interpret commonly used safety signs (e.g., danger, flammable, PPE required) and hand signals.
4. Apply the appropriate ergonomic principles while working with machines, materials, or in confined spaces.

8.3.1 Safe Posture, Lifting, and Bending Techniques

When you work for long hours, your body can get tired or hurt if you do not move the right way. Using safe posture and correct lifting methods helps protect your back, neck, arms, and legs. These techniques also help you stay strong and work better. If you lift heavy things wrongly or bend too much, it can cause pain or injury. Learning how to stand, sit, bend, and lift properly is very important for your safety and health at work.

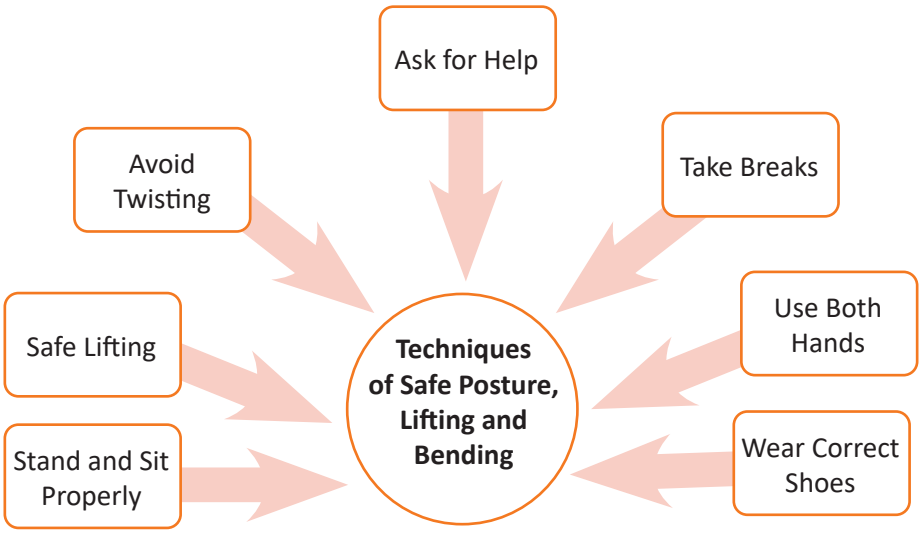


Fig. 8.3.1: Techniques of safe posture, lifting and bending

A. Stand and Sit Properly

Always keep your back straight when standing or sitting. Do not slouch or bend forward too much. Keep your shoulders relaxed and feet flat on the ground. This helps your body stay in the right position and avoids pain in the back and neck. Good posture keeps your body strong and ready to work for a longer time without stress.

B. Safe Lifting

When lifting something heavy, bend your knees first, not your back. Keep your back straight and hold the object close to your body. This helps you balance better and keeps pressure off your spine. Lifting the right way prevents back pain and serious injuries. Always lift slowly and with care.

C. Avoid Twisting

If you need to turn while carrying something, move your feet, not your waist. Turning your body while holding a heavy item can hurt your back. Step around slowly to change direction. This keeps your body safe and helps avoid strain or muscle pull.

D. Ask for Help

If something is too heavy or big to carry alone, ask a co-worker to help you. You can also use a trolley, cart, or lifting tool. Trying to carry a heavy object alone can cause injury. It is always better to be safe and share the load.

E. Take Breaks

Working in the same position for too long can make your muscles stiff. Take short breaks to stretch your arms, legs, and back. This helps your body relax and keeps your energy up. Stretching during breaks also reduces the risk of pain and tiredness.

F. Use Both Hands

When lifting or carrying something, use both hands for better control. This keeps the weight balanced and reduces the chance of dropping the item. Lifting with both hands also puts less pressure on your back and shoulders.

G. Wear Correct Shoes

Use safety shoes that have a strong grip and support. These shoes protect your feet and help you stand or walk safely on slippery or uneven ground. Good shoes also support your posture and reduce tiredness when working for long hours.

8.3.2 Fire Evacuation Protocols and Emergency Responses

Emergencies like fire can happen anytime at the workplace. Knowing what to do helps you stay safe and avoid panic. Fire evacuation means leaving the building quickly and safely when the alarm rings. Everyone should know the correct steps to follow during such times. It is important to stay calm, follow signs, and listen to instructions. Practising follwoing safety steps in advance saves lives:

What is Fire Evacuation Protocols?

Fire evacuation protocols are simple safety rules that tell people how to leave a building quickly and safely when there's a fire. They explain how to recognize a fire alarm, which exits to use, where to gather outside, and how to help others if needed. These protocols help everyone stay calm and organized during an emergency, making sure no one gets hurt. Regular practice through fire drills helps people remember what to do.

1. Know the Fire Alarm Sound

The fire alarm is a loud sound that warns you about fire or danger. It can be a bell, buzzer, or siren. You must stop working and prepare to leave when you hear it. Never ignore the alarm, even if it feels like a mistake. Reacting quickly is very important. Knowing the sound helps you act fast during real danger.

2. **Do Not Panic**

   During an emergency, stay calm and do not panic. Panicking can cause accidents and confusion. Walk quickly instead of running. Help others who may be confused or scared. Staying calm helps you think clearly and follow safety steps. A calm team moves faster and safer.

3. **Follow Exit Signs**

   Green exit signs and arrows show the way out. You should always know where the nearest exit is. During an emergency, follow these signs to leave safely. Do not take shortcuts or new routes. The marked path is checked for safety. Learning the route in advance helps during real danger.

4. **Do Not Use Elevators**

   Never use lifts during a fire or emergency. Lifts can stop working or trap you inside. Always use the stairs to go down. Walking down the stairs is the safest choice. Even if the lift is working, it is still dangerous during emergencies. Safety rules say stairs only.

5. **Go to the Assembly Point**

   After you exit the building, go to the assembly point. This is a safe place outside where everyone gathers. Wait there and do not leave. Your supervisor will check if everyone is safe. It helps to know who is missing. Do not go back inside until you are told it's safe.

6. **Report Missing Persons**

   If someone is not at the assembly point, inform the supervisor at once. Give the name and where the person was last seen. This helps rescue workers find them quickly. Never try to go inside to find them. Let the trained safety team handle the rescue.

7. **Practice Drills**

   Fire drills are practice sessions to learn what to do in real emergencies. Take part in all drills at your workplace. These drills help you remember exit routes and safety steps. Practising with your team makes you faster and safer. Take each drill seriously to protect yourself and others.

8.3.3 Safety Signs and Hand Signals

Safety signs and hand signals are important tools used to keep people safe at workplaces, construction sites, factories, and other areas where hazards exist. These signs use colors and symbols to quickly communicate dangers, instructions, or necessary actions without needing words. Hand signals are especially useful in noisy environments or where verbal communication is difficult. Knowing and understanding these signs and signals helps prevent accidents and ensures everyone follows safety rules properly.

a) Danger Sign

The danger sign is usually red, which catches attention quickly and signals a serious risk nearby. It warns people to stay away from hazardous areas or equipment that can cause injury, such as electrical wires, sharp tools, or heavy machinery. Ignoring this sign can lead to accidents or severe harm. It's important to always take extra care when you see this sign and follow any additional safety instructions provided.

Fig. 8.3.2: Danger sign

b) Flammable Sign

This sign shows that the material or area contains something that can easily catch fire, like gasoline, chemicals, or gases. It warns people to keep flames, sparks, and smoking materials away to prevent fires or explosions. Handling flammable materials requires careful attention, and safety procedures must be followed strictly to avoid dangerous accidents.

Fig. 8.3.3: Flammable sign

c) PPE Required Sign

The PPE (Personal Protective Equipment) required sign means that in this area, you must wear safety gear such as helmets, gloves, goggles, or masks. This equipment protects you from injuries caused by falling objects, harmful substances, or flying debris. Wearing PPE correctly reduces the risk of accidents and keeps you safe while working.

Fig. 8.3.4: PPE required sign

d) Exit Sign

The exit sign shows the quickest way out of a building or area during emergencies like fires, earthquakes, or other dangers. It is usually green with an arrow or running person symbol. In an emergency, following the exit signs helps you leave safely and avoid dangerous situations. Knowing where the exits are ahead of time is very important.

Fig. 8.3.5: Exit sign

e) No Entry Sign

The no entry sign tells people that they are not allowed to go into a specific area. This might be because the area is dangerous, restricted, or only accessible to authorized personnel. Ignoring this sign can lead to accidents or security issues. Always respect the no entry sign and stay out of those areas.

Fig. 8.3.6: No entry sign

f) Hand Signals

Hand signals are simple movements used to communicate when it is too noisy to talk or when working near machines. Common signals include waving a hand to stop, pointing to move forward, or lifting hands to signal lifting heavy objects. Learning these basic signals helps workers stay coordinated and avoid accidents when working in teams or around equipment.

Fig. 8.3.7: Hand signals

8.3.4 Ergonomic Principles for Safe Work

Ergonomic principles for safe work help protect your body from strain and injury while working. By setting up your workspace and using tools correctly, you can work comfortably and avoid problems like muscle pain or tiredness. These principles focus on making sure your body is supported, movements are easy, and the environment is safe. Following them keeps you healthy and helps you do your job better without hurting yourself.

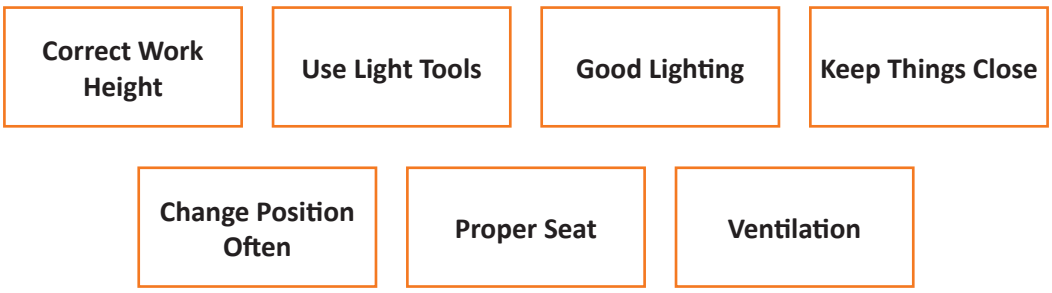


Fig. 8.3.8: Ergonomic principles for safe work

What is Ergonomic?

Ergonomic means designing the workplace, tools, and tasks to fit the worker's body in a way that reduces strain and makes work comfortable and safe. It focuses on making sure that people can work without hurting their back, neck, hands, or eyes. For example, sitting on a chair that supports your back, using tools that are easy to hold, or keeping your computer screen at the right height are all part of ergonomics.

i. **Correct Work Height**

Keep your worktable or tools at a height that lets you work without bending your back or stretching your arms too much. If the table is too low, you might have to bend forward, causing back pain. If it's too high, your shoulders and arms can get tired. Adjusting the height properly helps you keep a good posture and work comfortably for longer periods.

ii. **Use Light Tools**

Using tools that are light and easy to hold helps reduce the strain on your hands and arms. Heavy or poorly balanced tools can cause muscle fatigue or pain over time. When tools are comfortable to handle, you can work more efficiently and with less risk of injury like carpal tunnel or tendonitis.

iii. **Good Lighting**

A well-lit workspace helps you see what you are doing clearly. Poor lighting can cause eye strain, headaches, and mistakes that might lead to accidents. Make sure your work area has enough light, either natural or artificial, so you can focus on your tasks safely.

iv. **Keep Things Close**

Arrange your tools and materials within easy reach so you don't have to stretch or twist your body to get them. Overreaching can strain your muscles and increase the risk of falls or accidents. Keeping everything close helps you work smoothly and reduces unnecessary movements.

v. **Change Position Often**

Sitting or standing in the same position for a long time can make your muscles stiff and tired. Changing your posture regularly relaxes your body and improves blood circulation. Take short breaks or move around to avoid discomfort and stay alert during work.

vi. **Proper Seat**

If your job requires sitting for long hours, use a chair that supports your lower back and encourages good posture. A good chair helps prevent back pain and improves comfort. Avoid chairs that are too soft or don't provide enough support.

vii. **Ventilation**

Working in a space with fresh air is important, especially if you use chemicals like glue or polish. Good ventilation helps reduce harmful fumes and keeps you breathing clean air. This protects your lungs and overall health while working.

Unit 8.4: Tool Handling, Inspection, and Housekeeping Practices

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Demonstrate proper tool handling before, during, and after operations, ensuring safety for self and others.
2. Conduct inspection of machines/tools for signs of wear, damage, or malfunction, and report any issues.
3. Follow proper housekeeping practices such as workspace cleaning, dust control, and organized tool storage.

8.4.1 Tool Handling Before, During, and After Use

Using tools in the correct way is very important for your safety and the safety of others around you. When you handle tools properly, it also helps the tools stay in good condition and work better. Poor handling can lead to injuries or damage to the tool. You should always be careful at every step before using the tool, while using it, and after finishing your work. Each stage needs attention and care to avoid accidents. This habit will also help you become more organized and professional at work.

Before Use	Check the tool before you start. Look for cracks, broken parts, or dirt. Make sure it is clean and working well. If it is a machine, check the wires and plug. Use the right tool for your job. Do not use a tool that is broken or not made for the work you are doing. This will help avoid accidents.
During Use	Hold the tool properly with your hand. Keep your hand dry so it does not slip. Use the tool the right way do not press too hard or go too fast. Stay focused while using it. Do not talk or play around. Always wear safety gear like gloves or goggles if needed. This will keep you safe from injury.
After Use	When you are done, turn off the tool and unplug it if needed. Wipe the tool clean with a cloth. Do not leave the tool on the floor or on the edge of a table. Someone might trip or get hurt. Keep the tool back in its place like a toolbox or shelf. This keeps the tool safe and ready for next time.

Fig. 8.4.1: Tools handling before, during and after use

8.4.2 Tool and Machine Inspection

Before using any tool or machine, it is very important to check it properly. This is called inspection. It helps to find problems early, like broken parts, loose wires, or strange sounds. If we find any problem before using the tool, we can stop accidents and keep ourselves and others safe. Tools that are not checked can break during work or hurt someone. Regular inspection also helps the tool work better and last longer. Everyone should know how to check tools in a simple and safe way. It is a good habit that should be followed every day at work. The steps to follow while inspecting tools and machines to ensure safety and proper use:

a. **Look for signs of wear**

   Before using a tool or machine, look at it carefully. See if there are any cracks, rust, or broken parts. Check handles, sharp edges, wires, or plugs. If anything looks loose or damaged, do not use it. Using broken tools can be very risky. A good tool should look clean and in good condition. If you find a problem, tell your supervisor.

b. **Check for strange sounds or shaking**

   When the machine is on, listen to how it sounds. If you hear a loud, strange noise or feel it shaking too much, stop using it. These are signs that the tool is not working properly. Tools should run smoothly and quietly. Do not ignore any unusual sound. Tell your supervisor or trainer quickly. It's better to be safe than sorry.

c. **Check safety covers and guards**

   Some machines have covers or guards to keep you safe. These protect your hands, eyes, or body from sharp or moving parts. Before using a machine, make sure these safety covers are not broken or missing. Never use a machine without its guard. It can be very dangerous. Always check safety parts before turning the machine on.

d. **Report any problem to supervisor**

   If you see any damage or if something does not feel right, stop using the tool. Do not try to fix it yourself. Tell your supervisor or trainer about the problem. They will check and repair it safely. This helps to avoid accidents. Always speak up when you find a problem—it keeps everyone safe.

e. **Do not fix tools unless trained**

   Fixing a tool may look easy, but it can be dangerous if you are not trained. You might make the problem worse or hurt yourself. Only trained people should repair tools and machines. Your job is to report the issue, not fix it. Let the experts handle repairs to keep everyone safe.

8.4.3 Housekeeping Practices

Housekeeping means keeping the work area neat, clean, and well-organized. A clean workspace helps you do your job faster and more safely. It also prevents accidents like slipping, falling, or getting hurt by sharp tools. Good housekeeping keeps tools in the right place and saves time while working. It also helps reduce dust, waste, and other health risks. A tidy place looks better and helps everyone stay focused. That's why every worker should follow good housekeeping habits every day.

i. **Clean the Work Area**

   Always clean your work area after finishing your task. Wipe down tables, machines, or surfaces to remove dirt and dust. Pick up leftover materials, broken items, or trash. Use proper cleaning cloths or brooms. A clean space helps avoid accidents. It also keeps your tools and work area in good shape.

ii. Dust Control

Dust can make you sick and is also a fire risk. Use a vacuum, mop, or damp cloth to clean dust from the floor, tables, and machines. Never blow dust using air it spreads in the air and causes breathing problems. Clean regularly so dust doesn't build up. Wear a mask if needed when cleaning dusty areas.

iii. Organized Tool Storage

After using tools, always put them back in their proper place. Use toolboxes, hangers, or racks to store them safely. This prevents tools from getting lost or damaged. It also helps you find them easily next time. Never leave tools lying around as someone may trip or get hurt.

iv. Clear Walkways

Make sure the floor and walkways are clean and free of tools or waste. Do not keep wires, boxes, or bags in the walking area. Wet or dirty floors can cause slips and falls. Keep all paths open and dry. This helps people move safely without any risk.

Safe tool handling, regular inspection, and good housekeeping are very important in any workplace. These simple practices protect people from accidents, keep tools working well, and make the work area clean and ready for use. Learning and following these habits every day will help you become a safe and smart worker.

Unit 8.5: Waste Management and Hazardous Material Handling

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Classify worksite waste into recyclable (e.g., wood offcuts) and non-recyclable (e.g., plastic wraps), and dispose of them using the correct bins.
2. Explain safe handling procedures for flammable or toxic substances like adhesives and thinners, and describe how to report breaches of safety.

8.5.1 Classifying and Disposing of Waste

In every workplace, different types of waste are created. Some of this waste can be reused, while some must be thrown away. Knowing how to separate waste correctly is important to keep the environment clean and safe. Recyclable waste helps save resources, while non-recyclable waste must be handled properly. If waste is not managed the right way, it can cause pollution, accidents, or health problems. That's why workers must learn how to classify waste and put it in the correct bins. Always follow color codes and instructions near the bins. Keeping the area around bins clean is also part of safe waste handling. These are the aspects of recyclable and non –recyclable waste:

Aspect	Recyclable Waste	Non-Recyclable Waste	Correct Disposal
What it is	Waste that can be cleaned and reused or processed into new materials.	Waste that cannot be reused or recycled because it is dirty, damaged, or harmful.	Putting waste in the right bins to keep the workplace clean and safe.
Examples	Wood offcuts, paper, cardboard, metal scraps.	Used plastic wraps, food leftovers, dirty tissues.	Sorting waste properly and following color codes.
How to handle	Keep separate from regular trash; always use recycling bins (often green).	Dispose in general waste bins (often black or blue).	Use color-coded bins: green for recycle, black/blue for general waste, red for hazardous waste.
Why it matters	Saves natural resources, reduces landfill waste, protects environment.	Prevents contamination of recyclables and reduces health risks.	Prevents mixing waste, keeps work area clean, controls pests and smells.
Important tips	Make sure recyclables are clean and dry before disposal.	Never put non-recyclables in recycling bins to avoid spoiling the whole batch.	Report full or damaged bins quickly to supervisors or cleaners for timely maintenance.

Table 8.5.1: Aspects of classifying and disposing of waste

8.5.2 Handling Hazardous (Dangerous) Materials Safely

Hazardous materials are things that can be harmful to people or the environment. They might catch fire easily, cause health problems, or be poisonous if not handled carefully. Many common workplace substances like glue, paint, or cleaning sprays are hazardous. It is very important to know how to handle these materials safely to protect yourself and others. Following safety rules helps prevent accidents and keeps the workplace safe.

1. **Always Wear PPE**

   When working with dangerous materials, it is very important to wear protective equipment like gloves, masks, and goggles. Gloves protect your hands from chemicals that can hurt your skin. Masks stop you from breathing in harmful dust or fumes. Goggles keep your eyes safe from splashes or sprays. Wearing PPE reduces the chance of injury or sickness while handling hazardous materials.

2. **Work in a Well-Ventilated Area**

   Hazardous materials often release fumes that can be harmful if breathed in. To stay safe, always work in places where fresh air can flow, such as near open windows or using fans. Good ventilation helps remove dangerous gases and reduces the risk of breathing problems or headaches. Never work with these chemicals in closed or stuffy spaces.

3. **Keep Away from Flames and Heat**

   Many hazardous materials like paint or thinner catch fire very easily. To prevent fires or explosions, keep these materials far from any flames, sparks, or sources of heat. Do not smoke near them or use electrical tools that might cause sparks. Handling these materials carefully helps keep everyone safe.

4. **Do Not Touch with Bare Hands**

   Some chemicals can burn or irritate your skin if you touch them directly. To avoid skin damage, always use gloves or tools when handling hazardous substances. Never pick up or pour these materials with bare hands. Taking this precaution helps prevent injuries and keeps you safe.

5. **Keep Containers Closed**

   When you are not using hazardous materials, make sure their containers are tightly closed. This keeps harmful fumes inside the container and stops spills or leaks. Leaving containers open can make the air unsafe and increase the risk of accidents. Properly closing containers also helps keep the chemicals fresh and usable.

6. **Label All Containers Clearly**

   Always put clear labels on bottles and cans that hold hazardous materials. Labels tell everyone what is inside and how to handle it safely. Without labels, people might accidentally use or mix dangerous chemicals. Clear labeling helps prevent accidents and makes emergency response easier if needed.

7. **Clean Spills Immediately or Report Them**

   If any hazardous material spills, it can cause accidents or health problems. Clean up spills right away using safe methods like absorbent cloths or special cleaners. If you don't know how to clean it properly, tell your supervisor immediately. Reporting spills quickly helps keep the workplace safe for everyone.

Unit 8.6: Material, Energy, and Water Conservation Practices

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, the participants will be able to:

1. Explain how to reduce material wastage through accurate cutting, optimal planning, and reuse of offcuts.
2. Describe methods to conserve electricity through efficient tool usage, natural lighting, and switching off idle equipment.
3. Demonstrate responsible use of water during tool cleaning and workstation washdowns.
4. Discuss the role of regular tool maintenance in prolonging lifespan and reducing environmental impact.

8.6.1 Reducing Material Wastage

Reducing material wastage means using only what you need and not throwing away good materials. When you waste less, you save money and help protect the environment. Careful cutting and good planning make sure you use materials well. Also, saving leftover pieces can help you in future work instead of buying new materials. Learning these habits keeps your work neat and saves resources for everyone. Here are some simple ways to reduce material wastage and use resources wisely:

A. Always Measure and Cut Materials Carefully

Before cutting any material, always measure it carefully using a ruler or tape measure. Check the measurement twice to avoid mistakes. Cutting without measuring can cause wrong sizes, and then the material will be wasted. Taking your time to measure correctly helps you use the material exactly as needed. This way, you avoid throwing away pieces that are cut too big or too small.

B. Plan Your Work Before Starting

Planning your work means thinking ahead about what materials and tools you will need. When you have a clear plan, you only use the amount of material required. This stops you from cutting or using too much material. Planning also helps you work faster because you know what to do next. Good planning reduces waste and makes your work more organized.

C. Use Leftover Pieces (Offcuts) Again

Leftover pieces of material are called offcuts. Instead of throwing them away, save these pieces for later jobs. Offcuts can be used for small repairs or other projects. Keeping and using offcuts helps reduce waste and saves money because you don't need to buy new materials. Make sure to store offcuts safely so they don't get lost or damaged.

D. Avoid Cutting or Breaking Materials Unnecessarily

Be careful when handling materials so you don't cut or break them by mistake. Using the wrong tool or being rough can damage the materials and cause waste. Always use the right tools and cut slowly and steadily. Avoid rushing because mistakes can waste good materials. Handling materials gently helps keep them usable for longer.

E. Save Offcuts Neatly for Future Use

Keep all leftover pieces (offcuts) in one place, like a box or a rack. Organizing offcuts neatly makes it easier to find them when you need them. If offcuts are thrown around or mixed with trash, you might lose useful pieces. Saving offcuts neatly means less waste and more materials to use later. It is a simple way to save money and reduce trash.

8.6.2 Methods of Saving Electricity

Saving electricity is important to reduce waste and protect the environment. There are many easy ways to use electricity wisely at work and home. Using tools and machines only when needed, switching off lights and equipment when not in use, and making the best use of natural daylight can help save a lot of power. Choosing energy-efficient bulbs and keeping machines in good condition also saves electricity. These small actions help lower electricity bills and keep the planet safe. Learning and following good habits makes saving electricity easy for everyone.

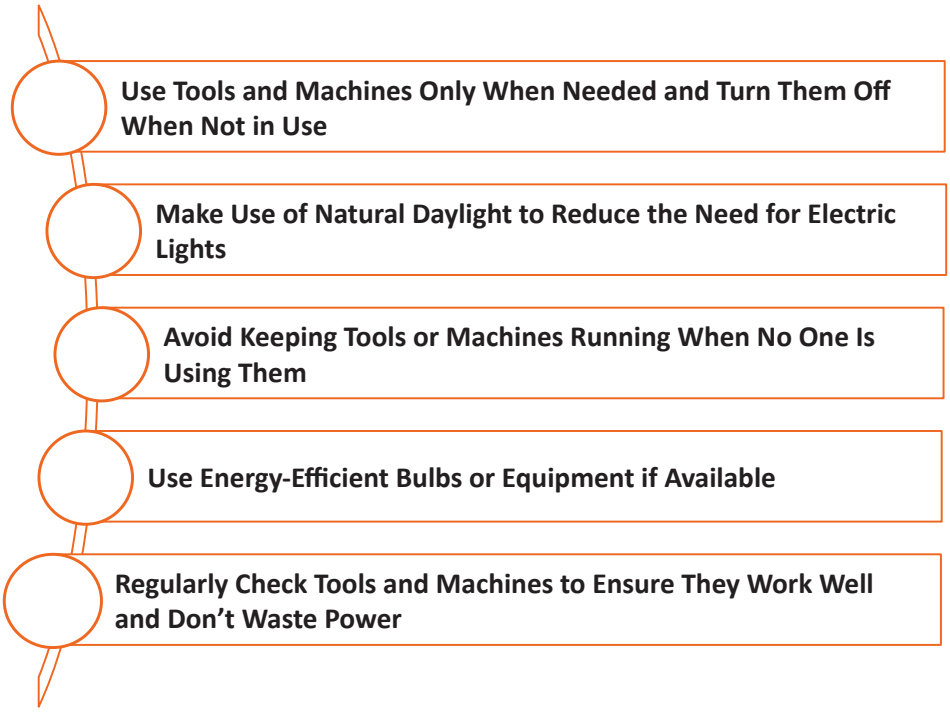


Fig. 8.6.1: Methods of saving electricity

a) Use Tools and Machines Only When Needed and Turn Them Off When Not in Use

Only switch on tools or machines when you really need them. Leaving machines on when not in use wastes electricity. After finishing your work, always turn off the power. This simple action saves energy and reduces electricity bills. Being careful about when you use power helps the environment by lowering pollution caused by power plants.

b) Make Use of Natural Daylight to Reduce the Need for Electric Lights

Try to work near windows or during the daytime to use sunlight instead of electric lights. Sunlight is free and bright, which helps save electricity. Turning off lights during the day when natural light is enough lowers energy use. Using daylight is good for your eyes too. It is a simple and effective way to save power without affecting your work.

c) Avoid Keeping Tools or Machines Running When No One Is Using Them

Don't leave machines or tools running if no one is using them. Sometimes people forget and leave them on, which wastes power. Always switch off machines when taking breaks or waiting for something. This prevents unnecessary energy use. It also helps keep the machines from getting too hot or damaged.

d) Use Energy-Efficient Bulbs or Equipment if Available

If possible, use energy-saving bulbs like LED lights. These bulbs use less power than regular ones and last longer. Using energy-efficient tools and machines helps reduce electricity bills. Even small changes, like replacing old bulbs, can save a lot of energy over time. Energy-efficient equipment is better for the environment.

e) Regularly Check Tools and Machines to Ensure They Work Well and Don't Waste Power

Check your tools and machines often to make sure they are working properly. Machines that don't work well may use more electricity than needed. Fix any problems quickly to keep tools running efficiently. Regular maintenance saves energy and makes tools last longer. Well-kept equipment helps save electricity and reduces repair costs.

8.6.3 Using Water Responsibly

Water is very important, and using it carefully helps save this valuable resource. At work and home, small actions can reduce water waste. By using only the water needed, turning off taps when not in use, and fixing leaks quickly, we protect water for everyone. Using water wisely also helps save money and keeps the environment safe. Everyone should learn good habits to use water responsibly every day.

i. Use only the amount of water needed

When you clean tools or wash the work area, use just enough water to do the job. Don't pour or run more water than necessary because extra water gets wasted. Using the right amount helps save water and keeps the work area clean without wasting resources. Being careful with water also helps reduce your water bill. Always think about how much water you really need before starting.

ii. Avoid leaving taps running

Never leave taps open when you don't need water. If taps are left running, water keeps flowing and gets wasted. Even if it's just a small drip, over time it adds up to a lot of water lost. Always remember to turn off taps tightly after using them. This small habit can save thousands of liters of water every year.

iii. Use buckets or basins to catch water

Instead of washing things under running water, use a bucket or basin to collect water. This helps you control how much water you use. You can also reuse the water collected for other cleaning tasks or watering plants. This method reduces water waste and helps you save water for other uses.

iv. Fix any leaks quickly

If you notice any leaks in taps, pipes, or hoses, get them fixed immediately. Leaks may seem small but they waste water continuously, even when you are not using them. Fixing leaks stops water from dripping and helps save a lot of water over time. Always report leaks to your supervisor or maintenance team if you cannot fix them yourself.

v. **Reuse clean water where possible**

If the water used for cleaning is still clean, don't just throw it away. Use it again for other purposes like watering plants or cleaning floors. Reusing water reduces the amount of fresh water you need. This helps save water and protects the environment by reducing waste.

8.6.4 Maintaining Tools Regularly

Maintaining tools regularly is very important to keep them working well and to make them last longer. When tools are clean, sharp, and in good shape, they are safer and easier to use. Taking care of tools also helps avoid accidents caused by broken or faulty equipment. Regular maintenance saves money because you don't have to buy new tools often. It also helps reduce waste and protect the environment. These are some easy ways to take care of your tools and keep them in good condition:

a. **Clean tools after each use**

Always clean your tools after you finish using them. Dirt, dust, and leftover materials can damage the tool if left on. Cleaning stops rust and keeps the tools working smoothly. Use a dry cloth, brush, or water if needed, and dry tools well before storing. Clean tools are safer to use and last longer.

b. **Check for any damage or wear**

Look carefully at your tools to see if they are broken, cracked, or worn out. If you find any problem, fix it right away or tell your supervisor. Small damages can become big problems if ignored. Regular checks help prevent accidents and keep tools working properly.

c. **Sharpen blades and oil moving parts**

Blades and cutting tools should be sharp to work well and safely. Dull blades need more force and can cause injuries. Also, put oil on moving parts like hinges or joints to stop rust and keep them moving smoothly. This makes the tools easier to use and lasts longer.

d. **Regular maintenance helps tools last longer**

When you take care of tools often, they stay in good condition for many years. This means you don't have to spend money on new tools all the time. Well-maintained tools also work better, making your job easier and faster.

e. **Taking care of tools means less waste and harm**

By keeping tools in good shape, you reduce the number of tools thrown away. Less waste helps protect the environment because fewer materials are used to make new tools. Proper care of tools supports a cleaner, safer workplace and a healthier planet.

Scan the QR codes or click on the link to watch the related videos

https://youtu.be/UxskKQ9W-OTE?si=SKSL_ntvlaQ04xIG

Personal Health Hygiene

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CRd16pBRt2w

safe lifting techniques

NCVET
कौशल गुणवत्ता प्रगति

Skill India
कौशल भारत-कुशल भारत

सत्यमेव जयते
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
MINISTRY OF SKILL DEVELOPMENT
& ENTREPRENEURSHIP

N·S·D·C
RE IMAGINE FUTURE

FFSC
FURNITURE
& FITTINGS
SKILL COUNCIL
कुशल • सक्षम • आत्मनिर्भर

9. Employability Skills

Scan the QR codes or click on the link for the e-books

https://www.skillindiadigital.gov.in/content/list

Employability Skills

NCVET
कौशल गुणवत्ता प्रगति

Skill India
कौशल भारत-कुशल भारत

सत्यमेव जयते
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
MINISTRY OF SKILL DEVELOPMENT
& ENTREPRENEURSHIP

N·S·D·C
RE IMAGINE FUTURE

FFSC
FURNITURE
& FITTINGS
SKILL COUNCIL
कुशल • सक्षम • आत्मनिर्भर

10. Annexure

Annexure - III

Chapter Name	Unit No.	Topic Name	Page No.	Link to QR code	QR code
Module 1: Overview of the Furniture and Allied Industries & Assistant Carpenter Role	Unit 1.1: Introduction to the Furniture Industry and Its Scope	1.1.1: national and global scope of the furniture industry and its contribution to economy and employment.	47	https://youtu.be/VxX43jRXE-_A?si=CQP-jXcs-U8tRHmIMW	national and global scope of the furniture
Module 1: Overview of the Furniture and Allied Industries & Assistant Carpenter Role	Unit 1.3: Interior Design and Furniture Integration	1.3.3 Use storyboards to communicate visual ideas effectively to team members or clients.	47	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4tuNDg-FmVhU	importance of aligning furniture design with interior layout
Module 1: Overview of the Furniture and Allied Industries & Assistant Carpenter Role	Unit 1.5: Role and Responsibilities of an Assistant Carpenter	1.5.1: the typical day-to-day duties of an Assistant Carpenter in a workshop and on-site.	47	https://youtu.be/q7_YLxQt8RI?si=3F-ninx-SQu_H6bTx	day-to-day duties of an Assistant Carpenter in a workshop
Module 2: Organizational Structure, Communication, and Digital Literacy	Unit 2.1: Understanding Organizational Structure and Workplace Protocols	2.1.1: the difference between flat, functional, and hierarchical organizational structures used in carpentry and installation businesses.	90	https://youtu.be/rrBvD-cM1quc?si-=gab4h4u-Jt8i7Tbiw	Types of Organisational Structure
Module 2: Organizational Structure, Communication, and Digital Literacy	Unit 2.3: Conflict Resolution and Professional Behaviour at Workplace	2.3.1: typical workplace conflicts in carpentry settings, including tool sharing, task overlap, and miscommunication.	90	https://youtu.be/4k-H1o6rShx8?si-=3KE_69d-dcXWyb3bk	Conflict Resolution
Module 2: Organizational Structure, Communication, and Digital Literacy	Unit 2.5: Financial Transactions and Online Payments	2.5.1: various payment methods used in site-level purchases or reimbursements including UPI, cash, and mobile wallets.	90	https://youtu.be/2ugB_KI7ZR8?si=Vo-CTCMUM-JbJKjqku	payment methods used in site-level purchases
Module 3: Raw Materials, Tools, Equipment, and Hardware Handling Techniques	Unit 3.1: Raw Materials and Timber Classification	3.1.2: different types of raw materials used in furniture making such as hardwoods, softwoods, plywood, MDF, and particle boards.	131	https://youtu.be/QM-MEPaxPh-1o?si=elm-8pui_FMm7qaTy	types of raw materials used in furniture making

Chapter Name	Unit No.	Topic Name	Page No.	Link to QR code	QR code
Module 3: Raw Materials, Tools, Equipment, and Hardware Handling Techniques	Unit 3.3: Safe Handling and Operation of Tools and Equipment	3.1.1: proper handling and operation of carpentry tools and machines, following safe usage techniques and posture.	131	https://youtu.be/vMoqfAD2y1M?si=-EY-ZIipQN54eJxu4w	Introduction to tools and Equipment (Introduction to Carpentry)
Module 3: Raw Materials, Tools, Equipment, and Hardware Handling Techniques	Unit 3.5: Maintenance and Organization of Tools and Workspace	3.1.1: regular cleaning, sharpening, and lubricating methods to keep tools functional.	131	https://youtu.be/7rG4f-1BvC9M?si=-Y0QJNWUl-p9uB6Rxr	Lubrication Methods
Module 4: Understanding Drawings and Job Planning	Unit 4.1: Types and Components of Architectural and Product Drawings	4.1.1: the differences between architectural layout drawings and product-specific views used in carpentry and furniture fabrication.	166	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CDnzaE-7j0cE	differences between architectural layout drawings
Module 4: Understanding Drawings and Job Planning	Unit 4.3: Component Breakdown and Bill of Materials (BOM) Preparation	4.3.2: detailed bill of materials (BOM) listing sizes, materials, finishes, and quantities for each part needed in the table project.	166	https://youtu.be/_2TSRs4_9F-E?si=D-DpF9lV_azbmEOb3	Bill Of Materials
Module 5: Site Recce, Materials, and Measurement Techniques	Unit 5.1: Tools and Equipment for Site Recce	5.1.1: essential tools and equipment used for conducting a furniture installation site recce, including both digital and manual instruments.	200	https://youtu.be/hQA0dd_0rq8?si=-GX-cPsw0U3pZsb1L4	Tools Name with Pictures
Module 5: Site Recce, Materials, and Measurement Techniques	Unit 5.3: Site Recce Checklist and Safety Assessment	5.3.2: potential safety risks such as loose tiles or live wiring and apply caution signage or physical markers to highlight hazards on site.	200	https://youtu.be/WDoVGQKHWsE?si-=rz-RK8l1PavrRUiJE	Safety Procedures for Tiling (English)
Module 6: Joinery, Fabrication, and Assembly of Components	Unit 6.1: Product Fabrication and Material Planning	6.1.1: step-by-step process of fabricating a wooden table — from selecting raw material to pre-assembly.	250	https://youtu.be/9wR-GoG6Hmho?si=-Fdbtf-9DAR8a_Bp_	step-by-step process of fabricating a wooden table

Chapter Name	Unit No.	Topic Name	Page No.	Link to QR code	QR code
Module 6: Joinery, Fabrication, and Assembly of Components	Unit 6.3: Processes to Build Wood Joints	6.3.1: how to mark, cut, and shape joints using chisels, routers, and drills, ensuring accuracy in depth, angle, and width.	250	https://youtu.be/HOcy-KfsvAQ?si=gGi-y3qzyJ09CBzT	Router Bits and Their Cuts
Module 6: Joinery, Fabrication, and Assembly of Components	Unit 6.8: Documentation and Reporting	6.8.1: accurate records of materials used, time spent, tool usage, and repair work for a given table fabrication job.	250	https://youtu.be/ElLwRsLAhv8?si=-GTx46iuMBALuZAGP	7 Quality Control Tools
Module 7: Finishing and Installation of Products	Unit 7.1: Adhesives and Fastening Techniques	7.1.1: different adhesives (such as PVA glue, epoxy, and contact adhesive) and fasteners (screws, nails, bolts) used in non-structural fixing during final product assembly.	277	https://youtu.be/bbTAG_6MMhs?si=-aQc44D6n4AjfoAza	How Adhesive Made in Factory
Module 7: Finishing and Installation of Products	Unit 7.3: Cut-outs and Structural Preparations	7.3.1: the functional requirement for structural cut-outs in furniture products such as for cable management or plumbing access.	277	https://youtu.be/IBqO6aUkJSE?si=Fu_tSWj6hl1Wiiuh	functional requirement for structural cut-outs in furniture products
Module 8: Health, Safety, and Greening Practices at the Worksite	Unit 8.1: Personal Hygiene, Dress Code, and Work Ethics	8.1.1 the relevance of personal hygiene, appropriate dress code, and respectful conduct in professional settings like workshops and installation sites.	308	https://youtu.be/Uxsk-KQ9W-OTE?si=SKSL_nt-vlaQ04xIG	Personal Health Hygiene
Module 8: Health, Safety, and Greening Practices at the Worksite	Unit 8.3: Safety Protocols, Fire Evacuation, and Ergonomics	8.3.1: best practices for body posture, safe lifting, and bending techniques to prevent work-related injuries.	308	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CRd16p-BRt2w	safe lifting techniques

NCVET
कौशल गुणवत्ता प्रगति

Skill India
कौशल भारत-कुशल भारत

सत्यमेव जयते
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
MINISTRY OF SKILL DEVELOPMENT
& ENTREPRENEURSHIP

N·S·D·C
RE IMAGINE FUTURE

FFSC
FURNITURE
& FITTINGS
SKILL COUNCIL
कुशल • सक्षम • आत्मनिर्भर

Address: 407-408, 4th Floor, DLF City Court, Sikanderpur
Gurgaon 122002, Haryana, India
Email: info@ffsc.in
Web: www.ffsc.in
Phone: +91 124 4513900

Prices: ₹